

KIM JONG IL

BIOGRAPHY

4

PYONGYANG, KOREA
JUCHE 106 (2017)

KIM JONG IL

BIOGRAPHY

4

**Foreign Languages Publishing House
Pyongyang, Korea
Juche 106 (2017)**

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 42. CELEBRATING THE 90 TH BIRTH ANNIVERSARY OF PRESIDENT KIM IL SUNG	1
1. With Proud Results in Building a Thriving Country	1
2. As a Grand Political Festival in Praise of the Sun.....	4
3. <i>Arirang</i> , a World-Class Masterpiece Singing the Praises of the Leaders	10
CHAPTER 43. WITH A STEADFAST WILL FOR SONGUN.....	16
1. Advancing Guideline for the Songun Revolution	16
2. Demonstrating the Might of the Powerful	
Revolutionary Army of Paektusan.....	20
To Train the Service Personnel to Be Strong in Ideology and Faith	20
To Bring About a Fresh Turn in Increasing	
the Combat Efficiency of the Army	27
With Paternal Feeling and Affection.....	31
3. Further Consolidating the Unity between the Army and the People	36
To Strengthen the Army into an Army for the People	36
To Imbue the Whole Society with the Spirit	
of Prioritizing Military Affairs.....	40
4. Building the Country into a Dignified Nuclear State	44
5. Meting Out a Resolute Punishment to the Provokers.....	48
CHAPTER 44. DEMONSTRATING THE COUNTRY'S MIGHT AS A POLITICO-IDEOLOGICAL POWER.....	53
1. Adding Eternal Brilliance to the History of a Harmonious Whole.....	53

2. Developing Party Work as Demanded by the New Century	58
Establishing the Party's Unified Leadership System.....	58
Effecting a Fresh Turn in Ideological Work.....	64
Making the Party Apply the Revolutionary Art of Leadership.....	72
3. Improving the Work of Working People's Organizations	77
4. Directing Great Efforts to Strengthening the Government of the DPRK.....	82
CHAPTER 45. TO ADD LUSTRE TO THE REVOLUTIONARY	
TRADITIONS OF PAEKTU	90
1. Preserving the Revolutionary Battle Sites and Other Historic	
Places in Their Original State	90
2. Conducting a Wider and Deeper Study of the Revolutionary Traditions	94
3. Promoting Tours of Revolutionary Battle Sites and Other Historic Places	98
4. Effecting a Fresh Turn in the Educational Work at the Bases	
for Education by Means of Revolutionary Relics	100
5. Looking Round the Historic Sites in Hoeryong.....	106
CHAPTER 46. TO BUILD AN ECONOMIC GIANT	111
1. Stepping Up the Modernization of the National Economy	111
2. Advancing the Line of Economic Construction in the Songun Era	117
3. Kindling Flames for a Great Leap Forward and Innovations	124
CHAPTER 47. HOLDING FAST TO THE LINE OF PRIORITIZING	
SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY	131
1. Inspiring Scientists and Technicians to Further Efforts.....	131
Arranging a Grand Meeting of Scientists and Technicians	131
Visiting Research Institutes.....	135
2. For a Fresh Leap in Developing Science and Technology	141
Directing Close Concern to Developing Cutting-Edge	
Science and Technology	141
Arousing Scientists and Technicians to the Modernization	
of the National Economy	144

For More Sci-Tech Achievements Conducive to the Improvement of the People's Livelihood.....	148
3. Successful Launch of Artificial Satellite Kwangmyongsong 2.....	152
CHAPTER 48. USHERING IN A GOLDEN AGE OF CULTURAL CONSTRUCTION IN THE SONGUN ERA.....	156
1. To Train the Dependable Backbone of the Songun Revolution.....	156
2. For a Fresh Turn in the Development of Art and Literature.....	162
3. Carrying Out the People-Oriented Healthcare Policy.....	169
4. To Turn Songun Korea into a Sports Power.....	174
5. Preserving and Sustaining National Traditions.....	178
6. Establishing a Sound and Cultured Way of Life.....	183
CHAPTER 49. TO MARK THE CENTENARY OF THE BIRTH OF PRESIDENT KIM IL SUNG.....	186
1. Kindling the Flames of a New Revolutionary Upsurge.....	186
Torch of Kangson.....	186
Historic 150-Day Campaign and 100-Day Campaign.....	191
2. Leading the Vanguard Sectors of the National Economy to Bring About an Upswing in Production.....	196
For a Great Leap Forward in Building the Huichon Power Station.....	196
To Establish the Juche Orientation in Metallurgical Industry and Develop Coal-Mining Industry and Rail Transport.....	201
3. To Push Back the Frontiers of Science and Technology.....	206
Industrial Revolution in the New Century—Introduction of CNC Technology.....	206
Cascades of Vinalon and Fertilizer and Juche Orientation of the Refractory Industry.....	208
4. For a Radical Improvement of the People's Livelihood.....	214
Boosting Agriculture and Fishing Industry.....	214
For the Betterment of the People's Lives.....	219

CHAPTER 50. PROVIDING A FIRM GUARANTEE FOR CARRYING FORWARD THE REVOLUTIONARY CAUSE OF SONGUN	226
1. Inheritance of the Revolution Means Inheritance of Arms	226
2. Ensuring That Kim Jong Un Stands at the Helm of the Songun Revolution.....	230
CHAPTER 51. UNFOLDING A NEW ERA OF THE MOVEMENT FOR NATIONAL REUNIFICATION	235
1. Providing a Correct View of Nationalism	235
2. Mounting Enthusiasm for Independent Reunification	240
3. October 4 Declaration for the Improvement of North-South Relations, and Peace and Prosperity	251
4. Leading Overseas Compatriots to Cherish National Dignity and Pride.....	256
CHAPTER 52. CONDUCTING ENERGETIC EXTERNAL ACTIVITIES	264
1. Developing the DPRK-China Friendship	264
2. Ever-Developing DPRK-Russia Friendship	270
3. For the Development of Relations of Friendship and Cooperation with Several Countries.....	275
4. Leading the DPRK-US Showdown to Victory	281
5. Confronting Japan's Hostile Policy with a Harder Line	287
CHAPTER 53. WITH A SINGLE MIND OF PATRIOTISM	293
1. Motherland and the People He Loved Most	293
With an Ennobling View of the Motherland, People and Future Generations	293
Cherishing the Country and the People in His Heart.....	298
2. Long Journey of Patriotic Devotion	302
Following the Road of Songun without Interruption.....	302

For the Prosperity of the Country	305
CHAPTER 54. HIS LAST YEAR OF GREAT DEVOTION.....	311
1. At the Outset of the Year 2011.....	311
2. To Solve the Food Problem.....	317
3. Kindling the Flames of Hamnam	322
4. To His Last Day in December.....	329
CHAPTER 55. IMMORTALIZATION OF THE SONGUN	
SUN OF JUCHE.....	333
1. Great Loss to the Nation	333
2. The News Shakes the World	340
3. Funeral Ceremony and Demonstration of the Integrated Whole	346

CHAPTER 42

CELEBRATING THE 90TH BIRTH ANNIVERSARY OF PRESIDENT KIM IL SUNG

1. WITH PROUD RESULTS IN BUILDING A THRIVING COUNTRY

The 90th birth anniversary of President Kim Il Sung fell on 2002.

The Korean people eagerly wished, with ardent yearning for their eternal President, to celebrate the holiday in the most meaningful and grandest way.

Mindful of the wish of the progressive peoples of the whole world as well as of the Korean people, Kim Jong Il saw to it that preparations were made full steam from the turn of the new century to celebrate the anniversary in a way unprecedented in the history of Korea.

He ensured that organizational and political work was conducted in an aggressive manner to greet the holiday with high political enthusiasm and labour achievements.

On June 6, 2001, the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, Central Military Commission of the WPK, National Defence Commission of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK and Cabinet of the DPRK adopted a joint resolution, *On Greeting the 90th Birth Anniversary of the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung with High Political Enthusiasm and Brilliant Labour Achievements*.

On July 17 a Pyongyang mass rally to implement the resolution was held in Kim Il Sung Square in Pyongyang, attended by 100 000 citizens, followed by similar meetings in all provinces, cities, counties, organs, enterprises, cooperative farms and schools including universities and colleges. And such slogans as *Let us greet the 90th birth anniversary of the*

great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung with high political enthusiasm and brilliant labour achievements! and *Let us hold the great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung in high esteem for all eternity!* were hung in streets, villages and workplaces across the country. These fanned the people's political enthusiasm.

Noting that the 90th birth anniversary of President Kim Il Sung and the 70th founding anniversary of the Korean People's Army, which would be celebrated in the historic period when all the people were striving to build a thriving country under the leadership of the Party, were meaningful holidays to be etched in the history of the Party, Kim Jong Il said to senior officials of the Party Central Committee, **“Party organizations should make scrupulous organizational and political arrangements to implement the joint resolution of the Central Committee and the Central Military Commission of the Party, the National Defence Commission, the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly and the Cabinet and thus make next year a more meaningful and significant year.”**

He continued that good preparations should be made for the military parade to be held in celebration of the holidays, the land realignment project in South Hwanghae Province and the Kaechon-Lake Thaesong Waterway project completed before the next year's farming season, production of light-industry goods increased and food problem solved, so as to translate into reality the wish of President Kim Il Sung, who wanted to make the country one in which people would lead an abundant life envying nothing in the world.

Later he inquired about the work of Party organizations for implementing the joint resolution and took relevant measures.

His leadership brought about the eye-opening success of opening an avenue for building a thriving country, and the year 2002 dawned amid seething political atmosphere and national jubilation.

Kim Jong Il ensured that all the sectors held fast in their work to the slogan *Glorify the greatest national holiday with brilliant success in the building of an economic giant!* advanced in the joint editorial of January 1, 2002 issues of *Rodong Sinmun*, *Joson Inmingun* and *Chongnyon Jonwi*, titled, *Glorify This Year of President Kim Il Sung's 90th Birthday as a Year of a New Upsurge in the Building of a Thriving Nation.*

He thought that a politico-ideological offensive aimed at making the whole society seethe with a revolutionary atmosphere was prerequisite to effecting a fresh leap forward in building a thriving country by implementing the tasks set out in the joint editorial. He made the Party's ideological work designed to lead Party members and other working people to live and work in the fighting spirit of the 1950s, the core of which is the spirit of death-defyingly defending the leader, the spirit of safeguarding the country and the spirit of creation and innovation, which was fully displayed in the days of grim trials decisive of the destiny of the country.

And he raised the single-hearted unity as the great foundation and the most powerful weapon of the Korean revolution, and ensured that more people were rallied behind the Party.

He led all the fronts where a thriving country was being built to make fresh miraculous achievements by effecting a revolutionary upsurge.

He started his inspection for the year 2002 with that of the then Kim Jong Thae Electric Locomotive Factory on January 5, and visited many military and civilian units in various parts of the country, regarding his field car as his office.

When inspecting these units, he would say to the officials: If you are going to bring pleasure to me, you must try hard to perform at least one more thing for the benefit of the people; my pleasure is in their pleasure and my happiness is in their happiness; you should be well aware of my intention and work devotedly for the people together with me.

Inspired by his ceaseless field inspection tours, the Korean people rose up in the struggle for increased production.

In the run-up to the Day of the Sun (President Kim Il Sung's birthday–Tr.) the crop fields of 100 000 hectares in South Hwanghae Province were realigned as befits those of a socialist country, and the torch of Ranam flared up, with the result that coal production increased, construction of hydraulic power stations was promoted in several parts of the country, and the major factories and enterprises pushed ahead with the projects for normalizing production and modernizing equipment. Modern production bases conducive to improving the people's living standards were built and went into operation, and large-scale poultry farms were renovated.

The gravitational Kaecheon-Lake Thaesong Waterway project, which was capable of supplying hundreds of millions of cubic metres of water from the Taedong River to 20 reservoirs to irrigate 100 000 hectares of paddy and non-paddy fields, was nearing its completion.

2. AS A GRAND POLITICAL FESTIVAL IN PRAISE OF THE SUN

Kim Jong Il led the work to celebrate the 90th birth anniversary of President Kim Il Sung as the greatest national holiday, a grand festival common to mankind.

On February 3, 2002 he said: The prosperity of the country and nation and the wellbeing of its future generations lie in arming ourselves with and applying the idea of excellence of our leader, our ideology, our army and our system. He continued, **“What is fundamental in this is the idea of excellence of our leader. As the leader is excellent, our ideology, our army and our system are excellent. Party organizations should bring the greatness of the Party and the leader home to Party members and other working people, so that the ideological feeling that our leader and our Party are excellent pervades the whole society.”**

He led the work of exalting the brilliance of the greatness of President Kim Il Sung and his imperishable revolutionary exploits and intensifying education in them.

Statues of President Kim Il Sung were set up at the Kaecheon Revolutionary Site on the course of the 1 000-*ri* Journey for National Liberation and in Ranam District, Chongjin, monument to field guidance by the peerlessly great persons of Mt Paektu at the then Pyongyang Textile Mill and monument to field guidance by Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il at the Mangyongdae Chicken Farm.

Also in the lead-up to the 90th birth anniversary of President Kim Il Sung, publication of classical works including volumes 41-46 of *Kim Il Sung’s Complete Works* was promoted vigorously. Many books on the history of the leader’s revolutionary activities and books on his greatness and the

history of his guidance to each sector were compiled and published to be used in education. Party-wide lectures, workshops and question-and-answer contests were organized, and recollections of the leader by people at home and abroad were broadcast through TV.

In making preparations for the celebration of the 90th birth anniversary of President Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il directed great efforts to holding all the events as befits a grand political festival in praise of President Kim Il Sung, the Sun, and making them historic occasions for demonstrating the genuine appearance of Korea that was determined to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche true to the behests of President Kim Il Sung.

A variety of political and cultural events took place to celebrate the holiday in grand style.

On April 2, a national seminar on the Juche idea was held in the People's Palace of Culture with the attendance of thousands of people including leading cadres of the Party and state, officials of Party, administrative and working people's organizations in the capital and provinces, and those in the fields of science, education, art and literature, the press and administration of revolutionary relics. Those who took the floor demonstrated the ideological and theoretical exploits of President Kim Il Sung, who elucidated the correct path for carving out the destiny of the masses of the people by authoring the Juche idea and rendered outstanding contributions to carrying out the Korean revolution and the cause of global independence in the 20th century by applying the Juche idea in the revolution and construction.

Those who took the floor in the seminars held for each sector also spoke highly of President Kim Il Sung for having achieved imperishable exploits for the country and people and for the times and history by leading to victory the Korean revolution and the cause of global independence, and expressed their determination to continue to hold him in high esteem as the eternal leader of the Party and revolution and struggle more stoutly for the reunification of the country and accomplishment of the revolutionary cause of Juche under Kim Jong Il's Songun-based revolutionary leadership.

The various political and cultural events opened in the lead-up to the Day of the Sun, such as the National Sci-Tech Festival, national singing contests

of workers, office employees and families, National Photo Exhibition, Pyongyang Fine Art Festival, National Book Exhibition, agricultural workers' gathering *Songs in Praise of the Sun* and Mangyongdae Prize Sports Festival added yearning for President Kim Il Sung to the April festival.

On April 12 a ceremony of the officers and men of the then ground, air and naval forces of the Korean People's Army paying the noblest tribute to President Kim Il Sung and pledging their loyalty to him and Kim Jong Il was held on the plaza of the then Kumsusan Memorial Palace, followed by a rally of the young vanguard for making a pledge to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche under the leadership of Kim Jong Il as intended by President Kim Il Sung. The following day a joint national meeting of the Korean Children's Union was held, at which its members pledged to become true pillars of Kim Il Sung's Korea.

Reverence and praise for President Kim Il Sung grew intense with the approach of the Day of the Sun.

On April 14, one day before the holiday, the opening ceremonies of the Kimilsungia-Kimjongilia Exhibition House and the Fourth Kimilsungia Exhibition were held.

It was Kim Jong Il who had proposed, with a plan to add eternal brilliance to the greatness of President Kim Il Sung through dissemination and exhibition of the immortal flower, to build the exhibition house as a monumental structure of the new century so that it could host national exhibitions and international horticultural expositions.

In June 2001 he went over the formation plan of the building and said that its construction should be stepped up so that it could be open to the public by the Day of the Sun the following year and the Fourth Kimilsungia Exhibition be held in the building. And in March 2002 he inquired about the construction project and the preparations for the flower festival, before taking necessary measures. Thus, the exhibition house of unique style was built.

The venue of the exhibition presented a spectacular scene with 5 500 pots of Kimilsungia and Kimjongilia and other various beautiful flowers grown by people of all walks of life, including service personnel and children. Also on display were pots of the immortal flower sent from Indonesia, a large basket made of Kimilsungia of 90 pots and other flowers

sent from 25 countries, and pots of Kimilsungia and Kimjongilia sent from foreign embassies resident in Pyongyang. More than 400 000 visitors including Koreans, overseas compatriots and foreigners viewed the exhibition, which ran between April 14 and 19, recalling the benevolent image of President Kim Il Sung and reaffirming their belief that he lives for ever in the hearts of mankind.

On April 14, a national meeting was held in celebration of the holiday. Kim Jong Il attended the meeting. The meeting expressed the steel-strong will of the Korean people to hold President Kim Il Sung in high esteem for ever and accomplish, under the Party's Songun-based revolutionary leadership, the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by President Kim Il Sung. That day similar meetings were held in provinces, cities, counties, industrial complexes and ground, air and naval units of the KPA.

At the hour of 00:00 on April 15, Kim Jong Il, together with the commanding personnel of the KPA, visited the Kumsusan Memorial Palace and paid the highest tribute to President Kim Il Sung. That day leading cadres of the Party and state, people from various walks of life, service personnel, overseas compatriots, party delegations and delegates and Juche idea study group delegations and delegates from many countries, the diplomatic corps and military attaché corps in Pyongyang, anti-Japanese revolutionary war veterans in China and bereaved families of the Chinese associated with the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle visited the palace and paid homage to President Kim Il Sung.

The Korean people and service personnel and foreigners laid floral bouquets and baskets in front of the statues of President Kim Il Sung on Mansu Hill and in various parts of the country.

Meanwhile, service personnel of the Ministry of People's Security, working people in Chongjin and people of various social strata in Kaesong staged choruses, and the people in Kangwon Province a chorus and dance performance. Similar artistic performances were held in other parts of the country.

Amid a spectacular fireworks display a soiree of youth and students was held at Kim Il Sung Square in Pyongyang. And similar soirees were held deep into the night in the plazas in front of the Tower of the Juche Idea and

April 25 House of Culture and other parts of Pyongyang, in the seats of provinces and in cities, counties, factories, enterprises, cooperative farms and KPA units.

The climax of the celebration of the 90th birth anniversary of President Kim Il Sung was the parade of the then Worker-Peasant Red Guards held in Kim Il Sung Square.

Kim Jong Il had had the NDC of the DPRK issue an order on holding a parade of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards in celebration of the 90th birth anniversary of President Kim Il Sung and the 70th founding anniversary of the KPA, and inquired into its preparations on several occasions, giving detailed instructions so that it could be held in a characteristic way on the highest level.

On April 25, 2002, the parade was held with Kim Jong Il on the rostrum of Kim Il Sung Square.

Amid the playing of *Song of General Kim Il Sung*, an immortal revolutionary song, a 21-gun salute was fired and a characteristic ceremony of the KPA band was held. Then amid the playing of *The Leader Will Always Be with Us*, a flag bearing the beaming image of President Kim Il Sung entered the square escorted by motorcycles and in the middle of a red flag column. All the paraders paid the highest tribute to him.

Then amid the playing of military songs, columns of paraders marched past in fine array, demonstrating the might of the Juche-based revolutionary armed force. These columns were followed by the columns of civilians, forming such letters as *Kim Il Sung*, *Kim Jong Il*, *Songun Politics*, *Death-defying Defence* and *Arming All the People*.

After the parade was over, *Song of General Kim Il Sung* and *Song of General Kim Jong Il*, immortal revolutionary songs, were played, and the square was filled with crowds, who raised cheers and released thousands of balloons. They extended the greatest glory to Kim Jong Il.

Kim Jong Il waved his hand to the cheering crowds in acknowledgement.

Impressed by the parade, a foreigner said, "The DPRK is a socialist power, independent, self-sufficient and self-reliant in defence, that can repulse any of the imperialists' surprise attacks in time. No one can match the strength of its army and people that are rallied firmly behind the great

Kim Jong Il.” Another foreigner said, “Seeing the columns of paraders marching past Kim Il Sung Square, I could not suppress an excited emotion. The columns marching with the flag bearing the portrait of the great President in front demonstrated the genuine image of the DPRK united single-heartedly. Reflected on the faces of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards was their determination to defend their Supreme Commander unto death. Looking at them and hearing their resounding footsteps, I was reminded of the exploits of President Kim Il Sung, who built the DPRK and developed it, and felt a growing yearning for him.”

The holiday was celebrated as a worldwide political festival. Delegations and delegates numbering 290 from 60 countries and delegations of overseas compatriots came to Pyongyang.

Kim Jong Il, attaching great significance to the international events to be held in the country on the occasion of the Day of the Sun, said that the foreign visitors should be provided with opportunities for experiencing the viability and validity of the Songun politics of the WPK and the struggle of the Korean people that were carrying forward President Kim Il Sung’s idea of attaching importance to arms, and that a seminar of political parties should be arranged, so as to instil in them confidence in the victory of the cause of independence of the masses, the cause of socialism.

On April 16, a seminar of political parties of various countries on the immortal exploits performed by Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il was held in the People’s Palace of Culture, followed by the Ninth Session of the Executive Committee of the Council of the International Institute of the Juche Idea. Those who took the floor at these meetings unanimously said that President Kim Il Sung, who authored the Juche idea, the guiding ideology of the era of independence, and wisely led the cause of independence of mankind, the cause of socialism, was the most prominent veteran statesman recognized by the 20th century and benevolent mentor of revolutionaries of the world, stressing that his name, the guiding light of the era of independence, would shine century after century along with the immortal Juche idea.

Kim Jong Il paid his concern also to the 20th April Spring Friendship Art Festival. The festival, the first round of which was held in April 1982,

became grander in scale amid the will and wish of the world's people to hold President Kim Il Sung in high esteem for ever as the Sun of Juche. On several occasions Kim Jong Il clarified the direction and method of work related with the organizing of its 20th round and frequently acquainted himself with the work of the Festival Organizing Committee, taking relevant measures.

At the 20th April Spring Friendship Art Festival that ran between April 14 and 20, 2002, national and international contest winners from 60 countries as well as Korean artistes staged colourful artistic works.

Revolutionary peoples of the world celebrated the Day of the Sun as a holiday common to mankind. Leaders of many countries and 110 progressive parties sent congratulatory messages, letters, flower baskets and gifts to Kim Jong Il. And 70 political parties in 50 countries organized preparatory committees for celebrating the holiday by involving high-ranking government officials, political and social figures and senior officials of solidarity organizations; these committees organized celebration rallies, remembrance gatherings, public lectures, seminars, film shows, book and photo exhibitions, artistic performances and various other political and cultural events, 280 in total, amid great social interest.

The celebratory events held on a grand scale in the country and other parts of the world demonstrated that as there was Kim Jong Il, President Kim Il Sung would live for ever and his revolutionary history would continue in the new era of the Juche revolution, the Songun era.

3. *ARIRANG*, A WORLD-CLASS MASTERPIECE SINGING THE PRAISES OF THE LEADERS

The greatest fortune the Korean nation enjoyed in the 20th century was that they were led by the peerlessly great persons of Mt Paektu.

In the early 20th century, Koreans were a weak, colonized nation that had to accept worship of big countries and their ruined country as their fate though they were proud of their time-honoured history spanning 5 000 years and brilliant culture.

The epochal events that put an end to this history full of distress and raised the prestige of the country and its people to the highest level possible in their history were not a coincidence of the passage of time, but an inevitable outcome of history wrought by Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il. The Korean people deeply felt that the fortune of having these great leaders was the greatest of the fortunes that guaranteed their present happiness and brighter future.

Kim Jong Il unfolded a plan to produce a masterpiece singing the praises of this fortune on the occasion of the 90th birth anniversary of President Kim Il Sung, as the first representative work in the 21st century.

It was on October 25, 2000, when he made this plan public. That day, after enjoying for the third time the grand mass gymnastics and artistic performance *The Ever-Victorious Workers' Party of Korea* held in celebration of the 55th founding anniversary of the Party, Kim Jong Il called officials concerned. Speaking highly of that day's performance, he said that President Kim Il Sung had said the performances held for the opening and closing ceremonies of the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students were masterpieces, and that he would have been very pleased if he had seen this mass gymnastics and artistic performance.

He continued:

“It would be a good idea to review the 100 000-strong mass gymnastics and artistic performance held in celebration of the 55th founding anniversary of the Party and make preparations in advance for presenting a better work of the same genre on the occasion of the 90th birth anniversary of President Kim Il Sung and the 70th founding anniversary of the Korean People's Army.”

Then he indicated the ways for creating the work.

From then on, the creative work was conducted full steam.

Kim Jong Il gave solutions to all the problems arising in creating the work as a masterpiece, ranging from its seed to its contents.

In the initial period the creative workers failed to go beyond the conventional methods of creative work. So they titled the work *Song of the Sun*, and tried on the director's script to show in an epic way the exploits of President Kim Il Sung in building the Party, the state and the army.

On July 10, 2001, Kim Jong Il called a senior official of the Information and Publicity Department of the Party Central Committee. After inquiring into the work done so far, he said, **“The contents of the work should comprehend one whole century, from 1900s to the turn of the new millennium.”**

Kim Jong Il was going to have the past, present and future of the nation portrayed in the history of the peerlessly great man, President Kim Il Sung, against the background of the 100-year history of the nation, not his exploits in building the Party, the state and the army, ie, in the style of political essays. His world of artistic portrayal and its philosophical depth moved the official.

Looking at him, Kim Jong Il stressed that the work should not become a review of the history of President Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary activities on the plea that it would be dedicated to the latter’s 90th birth anniversary.

The creative workers buckled down to this task, but they were at a loss as to the seed and title of the work.

On September 4, 2001, Kim Jong Il again called the relevant officials and creative workers. After acquainting himself with their work, he emphasized that not only the contents and form of the work but its title should be different from those of the previous works, and said, **“The work should be titled *Arirang*.”**

He continued that the work should contain *Arirang*, a folk song the Korean people had sung in tears of blood in the past as a ruined nation, and *Arirang of Prosperity*, a folk song produced recently, and that only then could the work carry a profound philosophical meaning that the doleful *Arirang* could be developed into *Arirang* filled with delight and happiness as the nation acclaimed the outstanding leader.

The creative workers stood up abruptly before they knew. The title was a great discovery as it could serve as a historic, philosophical seed capable of dealing with the destiny of the Korean nation in the previous century, capable of unfolding a wonderful artistic portrayal.

This helped the creative workers clarify the essence of the modern history of Korea that the history of the *Arirang* nation was the history of them carving out their destiny independently, set up the ideological

principle of the work that Songun means independence and create the work dealing with one century in an intensive and concentrated way.

Kim Jong Il also gave instructions on the musical portrayal of the work and selection of the songs to be portrayed in it.

At first the creative workers planned to have the variations of the melody of *Arirang* played in almost all the scenes.

Informed of this, Kim Jong Il said: The song should be used in the work, but not over three times; first, it should be sung in the prelude indicating the overall mood and theme of the work, and then in the chapter *Arirang of Reunification* dealing with national reunification, a vital task in shaping the destiny of the nation in the new century; it should be sung last in the finale *Arirang of Prosperity*. His instructions on the song that would run through the work and the method of its use provided a musical pillar of the work.

However, if songs that could portray the development of doleful *Arirang* to *Arirang of Prosperity* did not support the contents, the work, however excellent it might be, would not be able to sustain its characteristics.

While discovering such songs, one day the creative workers were informed of what Kim Jong Il had told officials when crossing the Tuman on his way back from a visit to the Russian Federation. He said, **“When my mother was crossing this river following her parents, the water reflected the misery of the ruined nation. At that time it was called a river of wrath, a river of tears of blood. When Comrade Kim Il Sung was waging the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, this river became a river of struggle, a river of hope, and now it has become a river of fairyland, a river of happiness.”**

The creative workers selected *The Tuman Filled with Tears* as a song that was capable of mirroring the realities of the past days, and tried to select songs that could mirror the present reality.

Around this time Kim Jong Il called them again, and said: I have been told that you are having a hard time solving that problem; I think it would be a good idea to use in the work the famous songs produced when President Kim Il Sung was alive, including *With a Single Heart*.

The creative workers were awakened. Whereas *The Tuman Filled with Tears* reflected the ardent yearning of the people for a man who would lead

them as they were wandering with the feeling of a ruined nation, *With a Single Heart* sang their pride in having great leaders who provided today's happy life and guaranteed a happier life for tomorrow and their determination to hold the leaders in high esteem for ever with a single heart.

Thus, the work could contain *Nostalgia*, which President Kim Il Sung enjoyed signing in his lifetime, and many famous songs like the immortal revolutionary hymn *Song of General Kim Il Sung* and *With a Single Heart*, with the feeling of happiness of the Korean people in being led by outstanding leaders running through it.

Kim Jong Il also gave an original definition of the contents and composition of the work, and gave his opinion of its ideological and artistic qualities so that it could become a world-class masterpiece. He paid primary concern to reflecting in the work the Workers' Party of Korea's philosophy of arms that the destiny and development of the nation and the building of a powerful socialist country and an independent new century are guaranteed by Songun. He gave the creative workers his opinion on which scenes should portray the contents of the work in bold relief in line with the demands of its seed and on how to portray the scenes artistically.

He ensured that the work properly preserved the national character. He stressed the need to include several folk dances and sustain the movements unique to them. He reminded the creative workers of a part of a folk song, which reads, *12-fathom-long tassels dance*, saying that the peasant dance of Korea was characterized by the long tassels on the hat of the dancer and giving his opinions on the dance movements, national costumes and hand props.

He also shed light on the composition of the work. How to compose the work was an uphill challenge for the creative workers as the work had to portray the history of the Korean nation spanning a century in less than one hour and a half. He said that the historical facts should be grouped together by content and sector and portrayed in a perfect ideological and artistic fashion.

Lighting the cauldron for the performance was a ceremony that would have a bearing on explaining the theme of the work. As for this, Kim Jong Il said: If the flames on the cauldron are to be portrayed as

clarifying the truth of the struggle to carve out the destiny of the nation, the cauldron should be lit in the scene *Star of Korea*; when the joy of the Korean people of having acclaimed an outstanding leader reaches climax, the morning star glittering on the backdrop should ignite the fuse, the perpendicular line of which burns sparkling before igniting the cauldron.

He also ensured that equipment and technical force were enlisted for the introduction of illuminations and other latest scientific and technical instruments as suited to the quality of the work of the 21st century.

The grand mass gymnastics and artistic performance *Arirang* was finished as a world-class masterpiece, and premiered on April 14 on the eve of the 90th birth anniversary of President Kim Il Sung.

Foreigners who enjoyed the Kim Il Sung Prize-winning performance unanimously praised it as a pioneer masterpiece, saying: No one can say he has seen the world without seeing *Arirang*; the work shows the road travelled by the “Arirang” nation, the Korean nation; the Korean nation that had been shedding tears of blood has now become a people who are full of happiness as they have acclaimed great leaders and building theirs into a powerful socialist country with confidence in their future; it is unquestionable that the leader decides the destiny and future of his nation.

Having furthered the festive atmosphere of President Kim Il Sung’s 90th birthday, the work was performed over 90 times between May and August, enjoyed by some 4 million people in total—Koreans at home and abroad and foreigners from 60 countries and international organizations.

Later the work was re-presented on several occasions under Kim Jong Il’s guidance, demonstrating the solidity and might of the single-hearted unity of the Korean society and the dignity of its nation. In August 2007 it was inscribed on the Guinness Book of World Records for its contribution to the development of history of human culture.

CHAPTER 43

WITH A STEADFAST WILL FOR SONGUN

1. ADVANCING GUIDELINE FOR THE SONGUN REVOLUTION

In his State of the Union Address on January 30, 2002, US President George Bush designated the DPRK as part of the “Axis of Evil” and a “country threatening the United States and global peace.” This drove the situation on the Korean peninsula to extremes. Availing themselves of this opportunity, Japan removed the legal blocks, which had existed though in form only restraining it from waging war, and designated the DPRK as the first target in its overseas aggression and the south Korean authorities, behind the curtain of dialogue and exchange, introduced latest military hardware without letup and tried to consolidate its collaboration with the United States and Japan, claiming that they would confront their fellow countrymen in the north.

With deep insight into the prevailing situation, Kim Jong Il held the banner of Songun higher, frustrating the anti-DPRK, anti-socialist moves of the United States and other reactionary forces and assuring the cause of building a powerful socialist country.

On January 2, 2003, he, pointing out that Songun politics had already been recognized by the world and had become a universal political mode of socialism, said that the Workers’ Party of Korea’s Songun politics was the most precious sword with which to defeat any enemy, however formidable, and it was guaranteeing most reliably the victorious advance of the cause of socialism. Ascribing the victories the country had been winning in the fierce showdown with the haughty US imperialists to Songun politics, he continued, **“The more intense the US imperialists’ schemes to isolate and**

stifle our country, the more firmly we must hold fast to Songun politics and the more highly we must demonstrate its might.”

In order to consolidate the might of Songun politics to the maximum as required by the new century, he, first of all, systematized the Songun idea and the Songun-based revolutionary line in a scientific way and ensured that they were applied in a thoroughgoing way in all sectors of the revolution and construction.

On January 29, 2003, he made public a talk, titled, *The Songun-based Revolutionary Line Is a Great Revolutionary Line of Our Era and an Ever-victorious Banner of Our Revolution*.

In the talk he clarified the fundamentals and essential characteristic of the Songun-based revolutionary line and Songun politics, the basis and starting point of Songun politics, and the reason why the Songun-based revolutionary line and Songun politics constituted a scientific line and mode of politics that reflect most correctly the requirements of the times and the revolution. He did so with the experiences of the Korean revolution as a practical example.

As for the originality of Songun politics and its invincibility, he said:

“The Songun politics of our Party is a unique socialist mode of politics that gives a new scientific clarification and solution to the issue of the main force of the revolution.

“On the basis of its deep analysis of the development of the times and the changed social and class relations, our Party put forward, for the first time in the history of the revolutionary movement, the idea of precedence of the army over the working class, giving prominence to the People’s Army as the core unit and main force of the revolution. The originality of Songun politics and its invincibility lie in the fact that it gives prominence to the People’s Army as the core unit and main force.”

He continued: The question of the main force of the revolution cannot remain invariable in any era, society or revolution, nor is it a question that can be solved only on the basis of class relations. Unfettered by any established theories or formulas, our Party strictly rejected any expression of dogmatic attitude to and revisionist distortion of the preceding theories, and strengthened the army and upgraded its role as required by the development

of the situation and the revolution, thus leading the revolution and construction to victory. The high sense of revolution and organization of the People's Army is reflective of the characteristic of the armed forces and the mettle unique to the revolutionary army, and constitutes a basic factor of upgrading the combat efficiency of our army and improving its politico-ideological might. Our People's Army has grown up into a genuine revolutionary armed force, an invincible army that can perform its honourable mission and duty with credit as the hardcore unit and main force of the revolution, thanks to the leadership of President Kim Il Sung and the great Workers' Party. The noble politico-ideological traits, revolutionary spirit and fighting mettle of the People's Army are expressed in a concentrated way in the revolutionary soldier spirit. In the Songun era the working class, too, can perform its duty and mission only when it is equipped with the revolutionary soldier spirit, and all the other working people can maintain and add lustre to their honour of being the masters of the state and society, their honour of being the socialist working masses, only when they learn from the revolutionary soldier spirit. When the entire army and all the people live and struggle with the revolutionary soldier spirit and fighting spirit, united single-heartedly behind the Party, there will be no enemy in the world we cannot defeat and no fortress we cannot conquer. Songun politics is the most powerful and dignified politics of independence which embodies the Juche idea. Our Songun politics that relies on the invincible revolutionary armed forces is a principled and righteous politics of anti-imperialist independence and politics of love for the country, the nation and the people, the politics which reliably defends and guarantees the independent demands and interests of the masses of the people, and the sovereignty and dignity of the country and the nation from the infringement by the imperialist reactionaries. Thanks to Songun politics we are conducting the revolution and construction fair and square in our own way and as suited to the reality of our country and the interests of our revolution, and according to our own ideology and faith, holding up the banner of independence in spite of such complicated and acute situation as today.

Kim Jong Il then stressed that the Workers' Party of Korea's Songun idea and Songun politics had proved their validity, superiority and great

vitality, and were demonstrating them all the more with each passing day in the practice and reality of the Korean revolution.

Last, saying that in the Songun revolution lay the building of a powerful nation, national reunification and the victory of the cause of the Juche revolution, he put forward the tasks facing the whole Party, the entire army and all the people for supporting the Party's Songun-based leadership.

On April 18, 2007, in his talk to senior officials of the Party and the army, titled, *Let Us Victoriously Accomplish the Cause of Comrade Kim Il Sung, the Cause of the Juche Revolution, Holding High the Great Banner of Songun*, Kim Jong Il gave ideological and theoretical answers to questions arising in carrying out the cause of Kim Il Sung, the cause of the Juche revolution, by intensifying Songun politics.

Pointing out that the Korean people were greeting the 75th anniversary of the founding of the heroic Korean People's Army after celebrating in a grand way the 95th birth anniversary of President Kim Il Sung in a stirring period, when they were ushering in a great heyday of their Juche-oriented socialist country, Songun Korea, he stressed that the Songun-based revolutionary leadership, Songun politics, pursued by the Party was a new, higher level of revolutionary leadership, an inheritance and development of President Kim Il Sung's Songun idea and exploits of his Songun-based leadership in the changed circumstances of the times and actual situation, and the basic way of carrying forward and accomplishing victoriously the cause of President Kim Il Sung, the cause of the Juche revolution, lay in defending and implementing in a thoroughgoing way the Songun-based revolutionary leadership. He then gave an ideological and theoretic analysis of the essence of the Party's Songun-based revolutionary leadership, Songun politics, its righteousness, advantages, great viability and invincible might expressed in the revolution, construction and all other realms of social life, and of the fact that Songun politics was a comprehensive and profound political mode, strategy and tactics that developed the idea, theory, leadership method and leadership art of Juche onto a new high as required by the era of independence, the era of Songun, and embodied them in an all-round way.

As for the ideological root of Songun politics, he said:

“The Songun politics of our Party is rooted in the immortal Juche idea.”

He continued that Songun politics gave a fresh answer, on the basis of the Juche-based stand, to the question of the main force of the revolution, that it is a mode of politics of thoroughgoing independence that is based on the Juche-oriented theory on ideology, and that it is based on, and closely related with, the benevolent politics of the Party.

He also underlined that Songun politics is a Juche-oriented art of leadership that skilfully combines the revolutionary principles, creativeness and adroitness, and that revolutionary faith, will and courage are essential in administering Songun politics.

Advancing the tasks for accomplishing the cause of the Juche revolution in loyal support of the Party's Songun politics, he said that the Party should be strengthened and its leadership role enhanced, the defence capability of the country should be made rock-solid and the single-hearted unity of the revolutionary ranks cemented in every way with the People's Army as the core and main force, and the line of economic construction in the Songun era should be carried out.

Concluding his talk, he emphasized: The future of our revolution advancing under the unfurled banner of Songun is optimistic and it is sure to emerge victorious; the entire Party, the whole army and all the people should successfully accomplish the cause of President Kim Il Sung, the revolutionary cause of Juche, by striving vigorously with confidence under the Songun-based revolutionary leadership of the Party and thus perform with credit the historic mission they have assumed for the times and the revolution.

2. DEMONSTRATING THE MIGHT OF THE POWERFUL REVOLUTIONARY ARMY OF PAEKTUSAN

TO TRAIN THE SERVICE PERSONNEL TO BE STRONG IN IDEOLOGY AND FAITH

In holding higher the banner of Songun Kim Jong Il continued to channel great efforts to making the country's defence capabilities steel-strong with the Korean People's Army as the core, the main force.

On February 26, 2002, he said that what President Kim Il Sung had handed over to him first for the succession of the revolutionary cause was the supreme commandship of the KPA, continuing:

“I will accomplish the cause of the Juche revolution while directing primary effort to strengthening the army true to his instructions.”

Having expressed his unshakeable intention to continue to direct primary effort to strengthening the army in the new century, he opened a new heyday in building the army into a powerful revolutionary army of Paektusan.

On February 10, 2003, and several other occasions he said that in order for the army to give full play to its political and ideological superiority, it should further intensify political and ideological education among its service personnel. He ensured that the army vigorously conducted political and ideological education centred on the education in loyalty, revolutionary spirit and class consciousness, so as to train the service personnel to be strong in ideology and faith.

He saw to it that the army conducted the education in loyalty forcefully to train all service personnel to defend the leader death-defyingly with the faith that they recognize the Supreme Commander alone.

Whenever he had an opportunity he told officials that they must never forget President Kim Il Sung’s exploits in building the powerful army and munitions industry. When visiting many units on his Songun march, he first inspected the monuments to the field inspection by President Kim Il Sung and the halls for education with revolutionary relics set up in those units, recollecting with deep emotion the imperishable exploits performed by President Kim Il Sung in army building and stressing the need to intensify education in the greatness and exploits of the Party and the leader among the service personnel.

He paid close attention to the education of the army in unfailing loyalty to the unified leadership of the Supreme Commander.

On May 20, 2003, he said to the commanding officers of the army: As the Workers’ Party of Korea directs primary effort to strengthening the army on the principle of giving precedence to it over the working class and encourages the civilians to learn from the ideological spirit and way

of work and life of the service personnel, the army must never slight the work of intensifying Party guidance over it; what must not be overlooked here is to inform the service personnel of the harmful effects of the erstwhile anti-Party, counterrevolutionary elements and educate them never to forget them.

After reminding them of the serious lessons of the past, he stressed that the more the revolution and construction became intensified, the more effective the work of establishing the Party's leadership of the army should be.

In order to build up the KPA into the army of the leader and the Party, into the army faithful to the leader's ideology and command, he saw to it that the ranks of its cadres were built with elite persons with thoroughgoing revolutionary faith and they continued to step up tempering their Party spirit and transforming themselves on a revolutionary pattern. He ensured that the army conferences of frontrunners in the movement for winning the title of O Jung Hup-led 7th Regiment held in March 2003 and in March 2006 stoked up the movement, which was proving effective in turning the army into a body of death-defying defenders of the leader. He saw to it that education in loyalty to the leader was conducted through living examples so as to train the service personnel into fighters who would trust in and follow their Supreme Commander alone.

On May 5, 2008, he inspected an army unit honoured with the title of O Jung Hup-led 7th Regiment. After instructing that the unit should intensify political and ideological education among its soldiers while looking round the hall of soldiers, library and other facilities for cultural education, he met a soldier. Two years previously, with another soldier he had drifted on the sea before ending up in the enemy area. In the face of enemy's tenacious threat and appeasement, they had remained true to their revolutionary faith and creed, saying, "We are revolutionary fighters of the great General Kim Jong Il." They had returned in triumph.

Kim Jong Il said: Though they were recruits, they lived up to their revolutionary creed in trials with faithfulness to the Party; they are true sons of the country; as the People's Army, which is a collective of persons as strong in ideology and faith as these soldiers, is buttressing

the revolution, our socialism is invincible.

Kim Jong Il ensured that revolutionary education and class education were intensified further among the service personnel so as to build up the army as the first and foremost pillar on the anti-imperialist, military front.

Whenever inspecting the army units and sub-units, he inquired into how these types of education were conducted and instructed that they should be intensified in line with the preparedness and characteristics of their soldiers. He said that these types of education should be conducted in various forms and by various methods by relying on the facts and vivid materials which the soldiers could see and feel, after making full preparations so that they could pluck the soldiers' heartstrings.

On March 10, 2007, he said to the commanding personnel of the army: *Song of the Sea of Blood* and *Don't Cry, Ul Nam* sung in the revolutionary opera *The Sea of Blood* answer the questions of history as to why we must wage the revolution and why we must not lose the grip on the weapons; these songs make us recollect the tearful history of our people's suffering of exploitation and oppression and harden our revolutionary and class consciousness; but nowadays our young people do not sing them; we must encourage them, soldiers in particular, to sing them; only then can the soldiers hold their weapons more firmly with a determination to settle accounts with the Japanese imperialists, the sworn enemy, without fail by force of arms.

When he was inspecting an army sub-unit on his visit to frontline units on November 21, 2007, he saw a gathering of the company soldiers for class education before entering guard duty, saying that full preparations should be made for class education to be conducted in a theoretically deep-going way and that every session of class education should be conducted after full preparation to awaken the soldiers to their class consciousness.

On August 11, 2009, he said that the drama *Soldiers under Neon Lights* staged by the National Theatrical Troupe portrayed in a truthful, vivid way the law-governed process of the revolutionary, class struggle, suggesting that the drama be shown to soldiers not only in Pyongyang but also in provinces.

And after seeing with the commanding personnel of the army a skit *On*

the Day of Vaccination staged during the third round of the second artistic competition of the KPA officers' wives in June 2010, he stressed: The ideology and culture infiltrated by imperialists and non-socialistic ideological elements are a narcotic that benumbs people's revolutionary, class consciousness; if people are to ward off diseases and keep themselves healthy, they should be vaccinated; likewise, they should be ideologically "vaccinated" to carry out the revolution with a sound ideology without being infected by ideological "diseases."

He also paid attention to increasing the effectiveness of education of the service personnel by conducting political and ideological education in the army in a fresh way.

On December 18, 2002, instructing that all the officers in the army should conduct ideological education of the service personnel in conformity to their psychology and demands, he said: If officers say what they have to say without knowing what the soldiers think and what they wish, they can never move the latter; if they are to have a good understanding of the psychology and demands of the soldiers, they have to share their feelings; solving in time the problems the soldiers have is a powerful form of education and is political work; education separated from solving their problems is pointless.

Later while inspecting army units, he inquired into how political and ideological education was being conducted in the army and when he found exemplary units in conducting the work in various forms and by various methods, he made sure that their experiences were popularized across the army.

On February 10, 2003, he inspected a military academy and learned the state of Party political work conducted in the academy. On his way to the hall of soldiers, he came to stop in front of the sculptures of animals executed in a characteristic way. In the course of enlisting the collective wisdom of the cadets, officers of the academy had conceived the idea of setting up those sculptures. Every work was inscribed in brief with the problems arising in carrying out the Party's policies on supply service, and around the sculptures were benches on which one could read the words. The soldiers' opinions of the artistic works, as well as the educational effect of these works, were good.

Speaking highly of the academy for being sensitive to the Party's policies and striving to conduct political and ideological education in line with the cadets' psychology, he stressed that the education should be conducted in an effective way in conformity to the level and preparedness of the people, the prevailing situation and their revolutionary tasks.

He conceived a new form of education—education in the history of army units—as required by the new century, and had the units of the army set up spaces devoted to their history. In mid-October 2002 he met the commanding personnel of the army. To them who were not clear how to conduct the education in the history of army units, he said: The units should teach their service personnel the road travelled by their units; when they are well aware of the history of their units, the service personnel will cherish pride and respect for their units and fight bravely to add glory to the honour of their units; the units should allocate a room in the Hall for Studying the Revolutionary Ideology of Comrade Kim Il Sung and display in it materials related with their history, like why and how they were formed and who their commanders and other major cadres were in those days.

When inspecting army units, he looked round without fail the halls devoted to their history, giving his opinions on the laying out of the halls and stressing the need to steadily push ahead with education in the history of army units.

On January 13, 2004, while inspecting an army unit, he looked round the hall devoted to its history.

Instructing that army units should intensify education in their history, he said: The history of army units comprehends the wise leadership and painstaking efforts of President Kim Il Sung and the exploits of the Party for building the present powerful revolutionary armed force that is capable of defeating any enemy, however formidable, and supporting the implementation of the cause of the Juche revolution by force of arms and the proud history of the units recorded with victories and feats; education in the history of army units is political work aimed at bringing the exploits of President Kim Il Sung and the Party in army building home to the officers and men and encouraging them to add lustre to their military service days like their predecessors who staunchly defended their country and revolution by force of arms.

Kim Jong Il also had books sent to the units and sub-units of the army so that soldiers could read them.

One April day in 2004 he said to the commanding personnel of the army: Apparently the libraries in the army units do not have many excellent novels; we need to print novels in large numbers; we must print not only our novels but Soviet novels of high ideological qualities and send them to the soldiers.

Later he gave his opinions on which novels should be printed and how many and ensured that the various materials needed for their printing were supplied so that printing of large numbers of books could be finished in the shortest period. He even placed aircraft at disposal for the printing.

Next year these books were sent to the units and sub-units of the army as gifts from the Supreme Commander.

In late February 2005, on hearing the report that the soldiers were delighted to receive the books, Kim Jong Il said: Revolutionary novels are a powerful means for educating people; I am going to have more novels printed for soldiers; then the People's Army can conduct education by means of these books in an aggressive and persistent way.

On several occasions later he had many books including the novels of the cycle *Immortal History* and the reminiscences *Among the People* and DVDs of President Kim Il Sung's memoirs *With the Century* and *Reminiscences of the Anti-Japanese Guerrillas* sent to army units. He also ensured that the contents of educational materials of the daily pad calendar style were renewed with wide-ranging materials and re-printed periodically and sent to army units.

All these materials played a great role in educating the soldiers in a revolutionary way and training them politically and ideologically.

On January 8, 2011, Kim Jong Il called the commanding personnel of the army and instructed them to continue to step up consolidating the strength of the army, saying that by further intensifying Party political work in the army they could lead all the officers and men to cherish unshakeable faith in their Supreme Commander and sense of revolutionary obligation. He continued: As I have stressed time and again, all political work in the army should be conducted in a militant way, in the way it was conducted on

the burning heights and trenches during the Fatherland Liberation War when it encouraged the soldiers to pledge their loyalty to the leader and then fight life-and-death battles.

He ensured that the commanding personnel brought about a radical turn in their ideological viewpoint and way of thinking, working and living so as to be bold in planning all their undertakings, perform them in a big way and clear up the difficulties and hardships by their own efforts by giving full play to the spirit, mettle and temperament appropriate to soldiers.

Having already instructed that the information and motivation workers in the army should radically improve their role as standard-bearers and buglers for advance, giving full play to the spiritual strength of the soldier masses, he led them to equip themselves with the exploits of the Party in building up the army to be strong in ideology, and raise a wind of ideological work in the army as intensive as in the 1970s when the foundation for carrying forward the Juche cause was being laid, a fresh wind of ideological work in the Songun era. And guiding many creative works by the State Merited Chorus, Korean People's Army Song and Dance Ensemble and amateur art groups of the army, he encouraged them to create a large number of artistic works with a great power of influence and perform them not in theatre but in the training grounds, at construction sites, on remote islands and heights where there were soldiers, including the construction site of the Huichon Power Station.

TO BRING ABOUT A FRESH TURN IN INCREASING THE COMBAT EFFICIENCY OF THE ARMY

Kim Jong Il led the army to bring about a fresh turn in stepping up preparations for possible war with a Juche-oriented view on it.

He paid primary attention to intensifying combat training in the army.

On March 11, 2002, while inspecting an army unit he looked round the general training ground the unit had built recently, and said: This training ground is clear proof of how officers of the unit have strived to perfect its combat preparations; it can be a model training ground for the entire army; only real fighters think about building such training ground; the commanding

officers of the army should think, awake or asleep, about a possible fight with the enemy, and subordinate all their work to intensifying training.

On February 3, 2003, while inspecting a naval unit, he was very pleased to see various equipment for training, which the unit had developed as suited to the actual conditions of the country and to cope with the enemy's reckless moves to ignite a war in the new century. Seeing the sailors skilfully operating the equipment, he spoke highly of the unit for striving to perfect its combat preparations, saying, **“The People’s Army must focus on intensifying training as the first and foremost task. As I have already said, in peacetime the soldier who is good at training is a hero while in wartime the soldier who is good at fighting is a hero.”**

He also directed efforts to modernizing military equipment based on cutting-edge science and technology as required by the new century and putting military training on a scientific basis.

When inspecting an army unit in January 2008, he learned that the unit not only was conducting training in a real war atmosphere but had won the first prize on several occasions in the festival of military science and technology by developing equipment that can be used in modern warfare through the introduction of the latest achievements of military science and technology, and he spoke highly of it. On August 11, 2008, he inspected a sub-unit, and instructed that modern technical means should be utilized proactively to improve the scientific effectiveness of training. On January 8, 2011, he told the commanding personnel of the army that modern war was a war of science, a war of technology, and so training should be conducted accordingly. While guiding fire strike drills in the combat training ground of a unit on December 13, 2011, he said that if the work of introducing the latest achievements of military science and technology in the operations and combat training is neglected, one cannot cope with the enemy's changing mode of war performance nor emerge victorious in operations and combat, stressing that the latest achievements of science and technology should be introduced into training.

He ensured that the army raised a strong wind of improving unit command and management and establishing thoroughgoing military discipline.

Viewing the establishment of ordering and commanding system as a primary task in improving unit command and management and establishing military discipline in the army, he ensured that a strict system was set up of the entire army moving as one under the command of the Supreme Commander, that the commanding personnel and staff officers at all levels improved their role decisively to take a grasp of their subordinates, and that the military and political officers made coordinated arrangements to this end.

On his inspection of an army unit on May 8, 2008, he expressed his satisfaction at the smooth progress of all work at the unit. Seeing the weapons and other combat and technical equipment as flawless as if they had been painted recently, he said that its soldiers were taking good care of their weapons and equipment and were fully ready for enlistment.

When guiding on the spot the work of Kim Il Sung Military University, Kim Il Sung University of Politics and other military academies, he said that these institutions should train many officers skilful in unit command and management and in establishing military discipline. He also ensured that not a slightest element detrimental to establishing military discipline was revealed in the work and life of the service personnel.

He channelled efforts into strengthening companies in the new century, too, so as to improve the combat efficiency of the army.

With an insight into the importance of the role of youth league organizations in further strengthening the companies politically and militarily, on October 30, 2002 he sent a letter *On Improving Youth Work in the People's Army as Demanded by the Songun Era* to the Korean People's Army Conference of Active Secretaries of the Youth League Primary Organizations in Companies. And he inspected many companies to bring the service personnel up to be a-match-for-a-hundred combatants.

When inspecting a company of the army in November 2004, he saw a gathering of its soldiers for poem recital. It was a Hero Company with the proud history of having produced seven Heroes of the DPRK during the Fatherland Liberation War. Those who took the floor recited the poem written by Hero Ri Su Bok and each pledged that he would become the eighth Hero in the company. When the gathering was over, Kim Jong Il

clapped his hands before anybody else and said: It is not easy for a company to produce seven heroes; the company, as befits a unit that has produced several heroes, should conduct among its soldiers the education to learn from the heroes in an original way and adopt various forms and methods in this respect so as to train them all to be heroes in the Songun era; at today's gathering every soldier pledged to become the eighth hero; I am sure that the eighth hero will be produced in the near future; the company should produce not only the eighth, but 15th and further 20th hero.

On August 5, 2008, Kim Jong Il inspected a company. While inquiring into the soldiers' training and life, he learned that the soldiers were not only exemplary in the political and combat training and observing military discipline but were living a worthwhile life: They were tending a 500-year-old poplar tree with care and doing everything in the barracks by electricity; they had created good living conditions—even a site for bath shower. After looking round the company, he called it **Poplar-Tree Company**, saying that all the companies of the army should learn from the experience of this company.

In strengthening companies he ensured that officers including commissioned ones improved their role so as to turn all companies into dear homes for soldiers, and that the commanding personnel, regarding strengthening companies as a starting point of and key to strengthening the entire army, rendered active assistance to the work of companies.

At a meeting of the Central Military Commission of the Party held on February 11, 2009, he referred to the importance of strengthening companies.

He said:

“A company is the main combat unit in the People's Army. Pledging to step up combat preparations of the army without strengthening its companies is empty talk. Strengthening companies is immediately making preparations for war by the army.”

Saying that the army should raise a wind of strengthening companies, he stressed that its officers should all go down to companies and share sweets and bitters with their service personnel.

As he instructed, all the commanding personnel listened to the recording

of the instructions President Kim Il Sung had given on October 11, 1973 at the Conference of Commanders and Political Instructors of Companies of the Korean People's Army, and went down to companies as the commanders of the anti-Japanese guerrilla units had done.

Hearing the report on it, Kim Jong Il spoke highly of it, saying: The People's Army must hold fast to the work of strengthening its companies as an undertaking to be conducted without letup, and push ahead with it vigorously; if it buckles down to the undertaking determinedly, the army is fully able to strengthen companies; it must work out a long-term work plan for the undertaking and execute tasks one by one.

The commanding personnel, who had gone down to companies, shared sweets and bitters with the soldier masses, regarding it as rule to solve their problems without fail even if it meant they had to forgo sleep and meal. In the course of this, the traditional trait of unity between officers and men came into fuller bloom, and all companies were prepared as ranks of elite soldiers.

WITH PATERNAL FEELING AND AFFECTION

Kim Jong Il always mingled with the soldier masses and bestowed on them paternal feeling and affection, thus turning the army into ranks of comrades-in-arms who formed an integral whole with the Supreme Commander.

With regard to his view of the soldiers, he said to the commanding personnel of the army:

“I regard the soldiers as my own sons and daughters, as comrades-in-arms who should share life and death with me. There is no limit to my affection for them.”

On January 4, 2003, while talking to senior officials of the Party Central Committee over the problem of supplying greater amounts of meat and eggs to people, he instructed that the meat produced by a cattle farm should be supplied to the soldiers of an engineering unit, whom he had been acquainted with at the site of repairing the Mujigae Tunnel during the period of the Arduous March. Recollecting the day, he said:

“I cannot forget those soldiers who repaired the Mujigae Tunnel in such difficult conditions during the days of the Arduous March. I passed through the tunnel several times on my way to and back from frontline units. Once I saw them, as dear as my own sons, taking a meal sitting on piles of rocks in the unlit tunnel. I felt so painful to see it that I had the headlights of my car turned on for them. They did not know that I was inside the car, and asked for the headlights to be on. The headlights were on for some more minutes, and the soldiers were delighted. They lived optimistically even in such arduous conditions. I can never forget the soldiers of the engineering unit, who repaired the Mujigae Tunnel true to the order of their Supreme Commander even though they could not eat their fill in the most trying days.”

Once when he met officials of the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan and compatriots from Japan, he told them that the mode of his politics was Songun, continuing that he frequently inspected army units because his sons and daughters were serving there and that it was natural for a father to go to see his children.

On April 7, 2004, he said that nearly 40 years had passed since he started working on the Party Central Committee, and that he could conduct his revolutionary work successfully since then as many comrades had sincerely supported and helped him decade after decade and from one century into the next. Stressing that Songun politics pursued by the Party fully embodied the idea of revolutionary comradeship, he said, **“I view our soldiers not in the context of the relationship between men and their Supreme Commander, but as revolutionary comrades who share my ideas and will, and I love them boundlessly.”** He continued that he went to the places, however remote and unpleasant, if soldiers were there, bestowing trust and affection on them and putting them forward as his comrades in the Songun revolution, and the soldiers called him, the Supreme Commander, their dearest comrade, trusting and following him without reserve.

On April 15 that year he said: As President Kim Il Sung said, there are various kinds of love between human beings, like those between father and his children, between husband and wife and between friends, but what is

most precious is that between comrades; all the soldiers of the People's Army, be they rank and file or generals, are my invaluable comrades.

During his inspection of army units, he established special relationship with the rank and file and bestowed paternal feeling and affection on them.

On April 1, 2004, he inspected a women's company under a unit stationed in a remote mountain.

After learning about their health first, he stayed in the company for a long time, listening to how the girls had built their wonderful barracks by their own efforts and looking after their living conditions.

Saying that he had been acquainted with the company long before, he recollected what he had witnessed on a mountain road some years ago.

One day on his way back to Pyongyang after inspecting a frontline unit, he saw some women soldiers with bouquets of flowers in their hands standing by that mountain road, making a salute. He wondered why the girls were standing by the remote mountain road, holding bouquets of flowers. After listening to the explanation by officials, he was quite moved. The girls had made the bouquets with flowers they tended and those in the mountain and were waiting for the cars going to Pyongyang, so that they could send the bouquets there to be laid in front of the bronze statue of President Kim Il Sung on Mansu Hill. They had been sending the flowers to Pyongyang over the past ten years after the demise of President Kim Il Sung.

He had not forgotten the girls, and now he was inspecting their company, speaking highly of their ideological and spiritual preparedness, combat training and high level of material and cultural life.

Later giving an account of his impression of the company, he said to the commanding personnel of the army: Out of their ardent yearning and reverence for President Kim Il Sung, the girls have prepared bouquets and sent them to Pyongyang over the past ten years; this is quite laudable; the company will live in the memory of our service personnel and people as Field-Flower Company together with the Persimmon-Tree Company and Dwarf-Pine Company.

One early spring day in 2006, Kim Jong Il, on an inspection tour of frontline units, received a report that a girl of the Persimmon-Tree Company

had had her eye injured by accident.

He felt painful for the mishap to the girl, and had her sent to a famous hospital in a foreign country for medical treatment. And one day in April that year he said: It is a laudable thing that the girl had devoted her precious youth to defending the country; I cannot remain doing nothing when I know that she had had her eye injured during military service; I will feel at ease only after she is cured of the injury.

He then took necessary measures of preparing daily necessities for her, sending a prior notice to the DPRK embassy in that country so that she could spend her days in the hospital without any inconvenience, and inquiring into her medical treatment regularly. When he was inspecting her company in November that year, he asked when the accordion player in a foreign country for medical treatment was expected to come back. And the other day he showed his concern for her future life.

Thanks to his paternal care, the girl had her face cured of the injury completely.

Determined to improve the diet of soldiers, he had army units cultivate beans on a wide scale, and even concerned himself with how to make the soldiers prepare delicious dishes with the beans.

True to his intention, army units raised the wind of cultivating beans and preparing various dishes with the beans they had harvested.

One day in December 2006, while inspecting an army unit, he heard that as the girls ate nutritious dishes, many of them had become as sturdy as male warriors.

He was so happy with this that on his return he tasked relevant officials with taking the photos of the girls so that he could compare their present state to that just after their joining the army.

Some days later photos of several girls as sturdy as male soldiers arrived. He was so pleased to see the girls, who had gained weight and become more beautiful, that he looked at the photos over and over again, saying that they were all beautiful and looked like the girl, who had been cast in the film *The Flourishing Village* as a farmer who worked 600 man-days a year. Saying that it was too regretful that he saw the photos alone, he had the commanding personnel of the army and officials of Party

and government organs visit the native homes of the girls and hand their photos over to their parents.

He ensured that officials meticulously resolved the problems arising in soldiers' living with a view that attention should be paid to all these problems, be they more or less important, and personally inquired into the soldiers' living conditions. Saying that he was going to make the People's Army a smart, fine-looking army without parallel in the world true to President Kim Il Sung's intention, he gave his opinions on the colour and buttons for the military uniform and went over their samples several times. When looking round the barracks on his inspection tour of army units, he would feel the quality of the soldiers' blankets, and took measures to produce fine blankets for them.

He also paid attention to ensuring that soldiers lived full of revolutionary optimism and militant spirit.

With the aim of improving their cultural attainments, he guided art workshops arranged for recruits and saw artistic performances staged by soldiers on his inspection tour of army units.

On March 30, 2008, he told the commanding personnel of the army that soldiers would not feel weary but lively during their military service including training only when they were provided with full conditions for cultural and leisure life, adding that to this end he was going to have DVD players for karaoke and DVDs recorded with songs sent to all the companies of the army.

When the players and DVDs were supplied and the commanding personnel of the army expressed thanks to him, Kim Jong Il said: We should spare nothing if it is for the cultural and leisure life of the soldiers; this is why I ensured that those needed for the cultural and leisure life of the soldiers were sent to them even in the days of the Arduous March and forced march when everything was in short supply.

When inspecting a sub-unit under the Seoul Ryu Kyong Su Guards 105th Tank Division on January 5, 2010, he looked round its education room, inquiring into when the sub-unit had been supplied with the large-screen TV set and how good the DVD player was. He expressed his satisfaction over the fact that the various means for cultural

education were proving effective in soldiers' life.

On January 8, 2011, he said to the commanding personnel of the army:

“In order to develop the People’s Army into the army of President Kim Il Sung, the army of the Party, I have been to various places, be they remote mountains or islands, if soldiers are there. And in order to improve its capabilities, I have done everything within my reach. I have crossed all the passes and climbed most of the mountains in the country to see the soldiers. Literally speaking, I have devoted my life for the sake of the soldiers.”

3. FURTHER CONSOLIDATING THE UNITY BETWEEN THE ARMY AND THE PEOPLE

TO STRENGTHEN THE ARMY INTO AN ARMY FOR THE PEOPLE

Kim Jong Il ensured that the great army-people unity was consolidated to the maximum and an atmosphere of prioritizing military affairs created across society so as to lead the army and the people to strengthen the politico-ideological position and military position of the Korean revolution rock-solid.

He advanced the idea that what was fundamental in developing the army-people unity in line with the demands of the Songun era was for the army to help the people effectively, and ensured that political and ideological work was conducted briskly with an aim to educate the soldiers to regard it as a duty due to them to help the people.

On April 25, 2003, he said to the commanding personnel of the army, **“The People’s Army is, as its name indicates, an army that exists for the people and fights for the people.”**

He continued: As I emphasize whenever I have an opportunity, an army that is not supported by the people cannot win victory in war; in his early years President Kim Il Sung advanced the aphorism that as fish cannot live without water, so guerrillas cannot live without the people; though they

have to eat scanty meals, the soldiers must never make a burdensome demand upon the people; if they do, it will only bring the consequence of their forsaking of the people's support; to consolidate the army-people unity, the People's Army must render effective political and labour assistance to the people; it must conduct positive political work among the people, make breakthroughs in the areas of major thrust in building a powerful country and help the people in terms of labour.

The army conducted political and ideological education among the soldiers so that they could cherish the view that the people are their blood relatives and at the same time their precious revolutionary comrades who will share life and death with them in the same trench at times of emergency, and regard it as their natural duty to love the people, value their lives and property and do good things for their benefit. By employing the method of education through positive examples, it induced them to give fuller play to the traditional trait of the army-people unity. It also ensured that all the units set up billboards devoted to the relationship between them and the people and conducted education through them.

While inspecting an army unit on December 21, 2007, Kim Jong Il looked round a company's education room. Hanging on a wall was a billboard for the honoured. Looking at the photos of soldiers on the board, he said to the commanding officers he could not see photos of the soldiers taken with the people, continuing: There is an army only when there is the people; our People's Army, true to the meaning of its name, is an army of the people; when the soldiers are seconded to help farmers in their work, snaps of them helping the people and sharing sweets and bitters with them can be taken; and it would be a good idea to hang a board and display the snaps on it.

One day in early January 2008, Kim Jong Il inspected a sub-unit under the Seoul Ryu Kyong Su Guards 105th Tank Division. In the education room at the sub-unit he saw a billboard used for educating the soldiers in the spirit of army-people unity. This type of education had been introduced across the army.

After going over the posters on the beautiful deeds for army-people unity performed by soldiers and squads with their photos, he said he could see the company was effective in helping the people. He then continued,

“In the future, too, the soldiers should maintain good relations with the people and help them positively. A source of the invincible strength of our revolutionary cause lies in the soldiers and people helping and leading each other forward.”

In February that year he inspected another sub-unit of the army. Displayed on the billboard in the education room of the sub-unit were the outline of the reminiscence *The Commander Is Also a Son of the People* and the posters on the beautiful deed performed by the soldiers for the people. Speaking highly of this type of education, Kim Jong Il said, **“The People’s Army is an army of the people, so the soldiers must help the people and vice versa. Army-people unity is not something special; when the soldiers help the people and the people support the soldiers, that is army-people unity. Such sub-units as companies should hold up the slogan ‘Let us help the people!’”**

He then suggested to the officers accompanying him that the slogan should be the title of the billboard, with which the officers all agreed.

Thus the slogan **“Let us help the people!”** became the title of the billboards in the education rooms of all the army units.

Kim Jong Il instructed that the soldiers should take the lead in achieving army-people unity, that the people would help the soldiers sincerely if the soldiers helped them sincerely, and that the soldiers should share good times and bad with the people doing good things for them.

In early February 2004, when inspecting a frontline army unit, he put to rights the view of its officers on the living of the people in the nearby village.

Three years ago, on learning that soldiers of the unit had been experiencing difficulties in their life for the shortage of electricity, he had had a wind farm built for them.

That day the commander of the unit told Kim Jong Il that the electricity produced by the wind farm was being used for lighting at the headquarters, sub-units under the direct command of the headquarters and the houses of the officers serving at the headquarters and for heating the barracks of the sub-units.

Kim Jong Il asked him the amount of electricity the unit was supplying to the houses of civilians living nearby. Hearing that it had failed to supply

them with electricity, he said: You should send the electricity produced by the wind farm to these civilians; you should feel guilty conscience for not doing so; the army should do things properly in such situation.

He then had another set of generating equipment installed at the wind farm for the civilians.

Whenever an accident or natural calamities occurred, putting the people's lives and property in danger, he would dispatch the soldiers first.

In April 2004 a large-scale accident happened in Ryongchon County, North Phyongan Province. According to measures taken by Kim Jong Il, the soldiers soon moved to the county. They rescued the local people and their property and rebuilt the county town in a short period.

In August 2007, torrential rains, the first ever in 100 years, fell in many parts of the country. Kim Jong Il enlisted the soldiers in the efforts to overcome the aftereffects of the natural disaster. On arriving at the designated destinations, the soldiers buckled down to their tasks in spite of the continuous rain. They also fully displayed the beautiful traits of the revolutionary army, visiting the tents of the disaster victims to set up under-floor heating system and hand them fuel and even their rations.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the army rendered assistance to the major sectors of the national economy under the slogan **“Let us help the people!”**

On learning that the army, in support of the Party's intention of having designated 2011 as a year for light industry aimed at improving the people's standard of living, was working out an operation plan in early that year to render assistance to light industry, he spoke highly of it.

On May 28, 2011, he visited the construction site of the Huichon Power Station on his return from a visit to China. He looked round the magnificent buildings and the surroundings as clean and fine as a park. He spoke highly of the pavilion the soldiers had built on a peak in the inundated area so that the people could enjoy themselves there, saying the people would love it. He also expressed his satisfaction over the fact that the soldiers had transformed the structures in the construction site into houses, were building a hall of culture and bridge in the Ryongnim county town and were planning to build facilities for public welfare services.

Ordering the officers to pave the road between the dam and Jonchon

county town with the materials they had saved while building the dam, he stressed that the soldiers should round up the construction of the Ryongnim Dam with finishing the paving of the road and then withdraw from the construction site in fine array sounding the bugle of victors.

True to the Supreme Commander's order, the soldiers paved the road between Ryongnim and Jonchon and built the hall of culture, facilities for public welfare services, and a wading pool in Ryongnim County in a short period, thus renovating the appearance of the county.

On August 30 that year, after returning from a visit to Russia and China, Kim Jong Il looked round Ryongnim County and spoke highly of the feats of soldiers who had scored another success in their struggle for the wellbeing of the people.

As the soldiers were taking the lead in improving the relationship between them and the people, the people rendered sincere assistance to the soldiers. The people donated even their bones and blood for the wounded soldiers, and sent them material supplies permeated with their sincerity. In collaboration with the soldiers, they built many structures like army-people fish farms and army-people power stations.

TO IMBUE THE WHOLE SOCIETY WITH THE SPIRIT OF PRIORITIZING MILITARY AFFAIRS

In strengthening the defence capabilities of the country in every way, Kim Jong Il attached great importance to imbuing the whole society with the spirit of prioritizing military affairs.

He ensured that the compulsory military service system was enforced for the first time so as to make all the people support the Party's idea of prioritizing military affairs by force of arms.

Upon issuing the order of the Central Military Commission of the Party on enforcing the compulsory military service system from 2003, a great number of young men and women, determined to take up the posts of national defence, joined the army one after another.

On May 30, 2003, while inspecting an army unit on the frontline, Kim Jong Il met five soldiers who had joined the army while working at

civilian posts after graduating from university. Though recruited a few months ago, they looked soldierly as they gave a salute to the Supreme Commander.

Saying that he was quite pleased to see them, he congratulated them on their joining the army, adding that it was praiseworthy that they, though not so young, joined the army with the consciousness that national defence is the highest form of patriotism and ennobling obligation due to citizens.

He then asked them what they had been before joining the army, how old they were and what they learned in the army.

Hearing what they had to say, he stressed, **“We have enforced compulsory military service system to create an atmosphere of prioritizing military affairs across society and arm all the people with the revolutionary soldier spirit.”** He then said that they should adorn their military service days with feats.

He initiated holding the first-ever National Conference of Activists in Aiding the Army and inquired on several occasions into the preparations for the gathering, taking relevant measures. He also ensured that in the lead-up to the meeting an intensive information campaign was conducted aimed at rendering a more positive support to the Songun politics of the Party.

On November 5, 2002 the conference was convened in the April 25 House of Culture.

The Party Central Committee sent a message of congratulations to the conference, and watches inscribed with President Kim Il Sung’s autograph, title of Labour Hero and other commendations were conferred on those participants who had performed outstanding services in aiding the army. Kim Jong Il personally ensured that spreads were arranged for the 70-odd participants who greeted their birthdays during the conference.

After the conference was over, Kim Jong Il acquainted himself with how it had proceeded, and said he had been so busy that he had failed to meet them, saying all of them should be called back to Pyongyang.

So those who had gone to their respective workplaces after the conference came back to Pyongyang.

On November 19, Kim Jong Il had a photo session with them, and said that the Party members and other working people who were standing in the

vanguard of aiding the army were genuine revolutionaries and patriots of the present era, who were supporting the Party and the leader with revolutionary faith and sense of obligation and devoting their all to the strengthening of the revolutionary armed forces and the development and prosperity of their country. He expressed his belief that the conference participants would continue to love the soldiers and take care of their living as they would do with their own kith and kin, leading the efforts to make the trait of aiding the army prevail across the country.

He led the work of aiding the army to be oriented, to all intents and purposes, to supporting the soldiers politically and ideologically.

On October 17, 2002, he said to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, **“Aiding the army in the Songun era should focus on supporting the soldiers politically and ideologically, in the course of which civilians learn from the revolutionary soldier spirit. We are pursuing Songun politics in order to step up the revolution and construction with the People’s Army as the hard core, as the main force, and induce all Party members and other working people to learn from the revolutionary soldier spirit, not to ensure that aid materials are sent to the army.”** He continued that during the trying days of the Korean war the civilians on the home front sent letters to the fighting soldiers encouraging them to fight valiantly for the Party, the leader, the country and the people.

On April 25, 2004, the people of Ryongchon County sent daily necessities and letters to the soldiers, who were celebrating the day of army founding in the county while removing the aftermath of an accident and rebuilding the county. Many of them had lost their houses and been wounded, and their sincerity moved the soldiers to tears. In the letters the people wrote that as there was the army of General Kim Jong Il, they had nothing to be afraid of and their faith and will grew firmer, that as long as there were the soldiers as dear as their kith and kin they would overcome any difficulties however trying they might be, and that they would dedicate their all to realizing the General’s plan for building a thriving country.

With the whole society prioritizing military affairs, Kim Jong Il energetically led the efforts to develop the paramilitary forces and turn the

whole country into an impregnable fortress.

Under his leadership political and ideological work was conducted in various forms and by various methods among the commanding personnel and members of the paramilitary forces with an aim to make them strong in faith and will. Party organizations at all levels posted ex-soldiers, prepared politically, ideologically, militarily and technically, as commanding personnel and primary officers of the paramilitary forces, and a larger number of competent officers were trained; the units and sub-units were formed in a way that they could perform their combat tasks with credit, the level of their military and technical preparedness was improved as required by modern warfare through implementation of the Party's policy on training, and they perfected their preparations for possible mobilization.

In January 2009 a national meeting was held to mark the 50th anniversary of the founding of the then Worker-Peasant Red Guards; the National Conference of Active Commanding Officers of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards held in early February set up a new milestone in strengthening the paramilitary forces.

The parades of paramilitary forces held to mark the 60th and 63rd anniversaries of the founding of the DPRK and on several other occasions demonstrated the strength of the country's paramilitary forces.

The military delegates from many countries of the world, who saw the parades, said that the Worker-Peasant Red Guards founded by President Kim Il Sung and led by Chairman Kim Jong Il was less inferior to the regular armed forces in terms of organization and discipline, and that parade of paramilitary forces was inconceivable in other countries.

After reviewing the parade of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards held in celebration of the 63rd anniversary of the founding of the DPRK on September 9, 2011, Kim Jong Il told the senior officials of the civil defence sector that the parade was held on a high level, and that the Worker-Peasant Red Guards developed into part of the revolutionary armed forces was a reliable armed force of the Party.

Attaching importance to implementing the Party's policy on turning the whole country into a fortress, he ensured that the effort to this end was made on the principle of prioritizing military affairs and giving precedence

to them, and exemplary units and their officials were given prominence and their successes and experiences propagated. And as the United States was steadily developing new-type weapons by relying on cutting-edge science and technology, he ensured that the defence structures were built up against enemy's possible attacks of various forms so as to turn the whole country into a more impregnable fortress.

4. BUILDING THE COUNTRY INTO A DIGNIFIED NUCLEAR STATE

Having openly declared the policy of military confrontation with the DPRK after seizing power in 2001 and strained the situation around the country, US President Bush visited south Korea in February 2002. He went as far as Panmunjom and said that it was natural that the United States regarded north Korea as a cancer, revealing his ambition to stifle the DPRK. In particular, by making public the Nuclear Posture Review in March 2002, he declared the change of nuclear deterrent strategy which the United States had so far pursued to nuclear preemptive strategy, and designated the DPRK as a major target of attack. The United States was back-peddalling on its obligations to the June 1993 DPRK-USA Joint Statement and the October 1994 DPRK-USA Agreed Framework, in which it provided assurances to the DPRK against the threat or use of nuclear weapons; it meant an official declaration of its will to use nuclear weapons against the DPRK.

This precipitated a critical situation reminiscent of the nuclear crisis in the 1990s.

In early October 2002 an assistant secretary of the US State Department visited the DPRK in his capacity as special envoy of the US President. He brought forward a groundless claim that the DPRK was pushing forward the "enriched uranium project" in violation of the DPRK-USA Agreed Framework. He asserted that if the DPRK refused to cancel this project the United States would no longer have talks with it and its relations with Japan and south Korea would deteriorate.

The DPRK side responded by stating that to cope with the nuclear threat by the United States, it would possess nukes and something more powerful to defend the sovereignty of the nation, its right to existence and dignity.

Following the September 11 Incident in 2001, the United States defined the “war on terrorism” as the major strategy for realizing its ambition of world supremacy. In October that year it invaded Afghanistan. Soon afterwards, it set Iraq as its next target and deployed a huge force near the Persian Gulf, spreading misleading information that the country was hiding weapons of mass destruction.

Many countries were overawed by this sabre-rattling: Those which were vehemently opposed to its invasion of Iraq took a conciliatory stand towards the US, and even some Arab countries with strong anti-US feelings seemed to be yielding to its pressure.

In his talks with the officials concerned, Kim Jong Il expressed his view of these international developments: The US plan for the invasion of Iraq is partly aimed at browbeating other nations, which are standing up to it, into obeying its demands. Some countries dare not express disapproval of the US policy of hostility towards Iraq. This is not because they are not aware of its unjust nature but because they are not strong enough militarily. Whether a country defends its sovereignty or not is not decided by the size of territory, population and level of economic development. It depends entirely on the country’s military strength.

At the time the United States turned a deaf ear to the DPRK’s demand that a non-aggression treaty be adopted between the two sides. On November 14, 2002, it announced suspension of the heavy oil supplying to the DPRK in December in violation of the DPRK-USA Agreed Framework. In doing so, it completely broke its commitments to the agreed framework.

As a response to this arbitrary measure running counter to the international law, Kim Jong Il ordered the immediate unfreezing of the nuclear facilities and the resumption of their operation and construction and had the Ministry of Foreign Affairs make public this fact through a statement of its spokesman on December 12, 2002.

Accordingly, the relevant sector of the DPRK removed the seals from its nuclear facilities and the cameras monitoring them, and expelled the

inspectors of the IAEA, before switching on the nuclear power station.

The United States stated that it was ready to unleash a nuclear war on the Korean peninsula and it could win victory in the war, while at the same time engaging in the Iraqi war.

It inveigled the IAEA into adopting another resolution on January 6, 2003. Criminalizing the DPRK, it forced the sovereign country to give up its nuclear programme without delay by a verifiable method.

The director-general of the IAEA, at the instigation of the US, sent an ultimatum to the effect that if the DPRK did not implement the resolution in a few weeks, it would refer the case to the UN Security Council to impose sanctions on it.

The government of the DPRK countered it by issuing on January 10, 2003 its statement on the complete withdrawal from the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty.

Kim Jong Il described the statement as the DPRK's just measure for self-defence to cope with the US imperialists' isolate-and-stifle moves and the IAEA's subservient schemes.

He said:

“We clearly demonstrated, by declaring our withdrawal from the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty, that we were not making empty talk when we warned that we would never tolerate any attempts by the United States and its vassal forces to violate the sovereignty and dignity of our Republic.”

On April 6, 2003, three days before the opening of the UN Security Council meeting to discuss the DPRK's withdrawal from the NPT, a spokesman for the DPRK Foreign Ministry, in a statement, declared that if the UNSC continued to be used by the United States in its policy of hostility towards the DPRK, the DPRK would mobilize its entire potential to create a war deterrent.

As the US administration was attempting to bring the issue to the UN in order to put international pressure on the DPRK, the DPRK stated that it successfully finished reprocessing over 8 000 spent fuel rods and had no other option than to weaponize the plutonium thus obtained. In January 2004 it allowed American nuclear experts to see its nuclear facilities with their own

eyes, making them admit that the DPRK's warning was not a bluff.

In 2005, upon its taking office, the second-term Bush administration grew undisguised in its moves to isolate and stifle the DPRK. The latter declared, through its Foreign Ministry statement, that now that the United States made it clear that it was attempting to disintegrate its system by wielding the nuclear stick, the DPRK would take steps to expand its nuclear arsenal in order to defend its own ideology and system, freedom and democracy, and officially stated that it manufactured nuclear weapons for self-defence.

On July 5, 2006, the Korean People's Army launched several missiles of varying ranges into the Pacific Ocean, as part of its routine drills.

The United States branded it as "illegitimate" and brought the issue to the UN. The UN Security Council on July 15 adopted a sanctions resolution wantonly violating the DPRK's dignity and sovereignty. With the carrier strike group centred on *Enterprise* entering Pusan Port, the United States intensified military drills and increased armaments in and around the Korean peninsula, in a bid to unleash another war. It sent an ultimatum to the DPRK, warning that if the latter refused to yield within the set period, it would mete out a punishment.

On October 3, 2006, a DPRK Foreign Ministry statement declared that the DPRK would launch a nuclear test.

The United States inveigled the UNSC into opening an emergency meeting and issuing the "chairman's statement," which threatened sanctions and pressure in case of its launching the test.

On October 9, however, the DPRK succeeded in its underground nuclear test by relying entirely on its efforts and technology.

On October 20 an army-people rally was held in Kim Il Sung Square, Pyongyang, to celebrate the historic event, and celebrations continued until the end of the month in all provinces, cities and counties of the country.

Commenting on these celebrations, people over the world said that the DPRK's weapon of ideology, the single-hearted unity of its people, would be more powerful than nuke.

The DPRK succeeded in its second underground nuclear test in May 2009 and developed nuclear-fusion technology in May 2010, thus consolidating its status as a nuclear power.

5. METING OUT A RESOLUTE PUNISHMENT TO THE PROVOKERS

Kim Jong Il ensured that the Korean People's Army meted out a resolute punishment to the United States and its stooges whenever they were committing military provocations against the DPRK.

In early 2003, when the DPRK adopted a self-defensive measure of withdrawing from the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty, the US Department of Defense began to draft a contingency plan for a new war against the DPRK under the guise of "preparation for emergency circumstances." And the US 7th Air Force Command, the pivot of the GIs stationed in south Korea, went into a semi-war state on February 3.

According to this, the US imperialists mobilized hundreds of fighter-bombers and assault planes every day to conduct various kinds of aerial exercises—an aerial exercise aimed at enhancing the capability of preemptive strike and a joint air raid exercise aimed at suddenly striking the rear of the DPRK in times of emergency. They perpetrated over 180 acts of aerial espionage and aerial war exercises in January and February, respectively. They declared that they would conduct Foal Eagle joint military exercise simulating a war against the DPRK from March 4 to April 2 and RSOI exercise from March 19 to 25 with an objective of promptly dispatching and deploying the US reinforcements to the Korean front in times of emergency.

To cope with this hair-trigger situation Kim Jong Il took steps to drive the enemies into a tight corner by heightening vigilance against their acts of espionage and dealing blows to them promptly.

On March 1, 2003, he listened to a report from a member of the General Staff of the KPA about the enemies' military manoeuvres which might escalate into a real war. He said that their moves were very dangerous, noting that according to a source the US imperialists were attempting to take their forces in south Korea out of the range of the KPA's gun fire.

The United States was aware that if a war broke out the KPA would first

strike the GIs in south Korea. This clearly showed that war was a fait accompli in the Korean peninsula and that it entered a practical stage.

Making an analysis of the enemies' plot, Kim Jong Il said that they were prioritizing acts of espionage against the DPRK as part of war preparations.

Then he continued, **“The enemies have kept a watchful eye on our country by putting reconnaissance satellites constantly above its territorial airspace. Recently they are conducting aerial reconnaissance against it more often than ever before.”**

And he emphasized that the KPA should not only maintain full combat readiness to cope with the prevailing situation but also heighten vigilance against the enemies' acts of aerial espionage.

At dawn on March 5, 2003, one day after launching the Foal Eagle joint military exercise against the DPRK, the US imperialists sent RC-135 to the aerial space of the East Sea of Korea.

RC-135 was a strategic reconnaissance plane that was newly attached to the Kadena Air Base in Japan when the 7th US Air Force shifted to a semi-war state. The state-of-the-art electronic reconnaissance plane was equipped with an electromagnetic wave signal detecting system and infrared telescope. 17 US intelligence officers were on board the plane, which specialized in identifying any possible launch of ballistic missile within the range of over 1 000km deep into the opponent's position.

Upon receiving the alarm signal, the KPA planes made an immediate sortie to follow the enemy plane.

The crew on board RC-135 saw the KPA planes dogging 15 metres behind and then gestured at the windows to stop following it.

The KPA pilots shook their fists at the crew and chased the fleeing plane for 22 minutes, swivelling around it several times.

After this incident, all the crew refused to board the plane and demanded that they be sent back to the US mainland. This resulted in RC-135 being locked in and the Foal Eagle joint military exercise floundering from the beginning.

A foreign military commentator said: US reconnaissance planes are committing aerial espionage with impunity in almost all the countries of the

world but, overawed by the US military power, they dare not respond, although they find its spy planes swaggering about in their airspace; such criminal actions, however, are not accepted by north Korea; the RC-135 Incident showed that north Korea alone is dealing a blow at the United States.

Kim Jong Il highly praised the pilots of the pursuit planes for having demonstrated the might of the KPA once again by driving away the US reconnaissance plane committing acts of espionage against the DPRK.

He said, **“The incident is now producing a great sensation throughout the world. The enemies say that it is difficult to understand how the north Korean planes approached to the strategic plane without being detected by it, that it would have been shot down if the north Korean pilot had opened fire, and that he did not apparently because he was restraining himself. That this time we taught the US aggressors’ strategic reconnaissance plane RC-135 a lesson is of greater political and military significance than the shooting down of their spy aircraft EC-121.”**

He led the KPA to deal a heavy blow to the United States and its vassal forces who were perpetrating reckless provocations after the DPRK launched the artificial satellite Kwangmyongsong 2.

When the DPRK officially stated that it would launch the artificial satellite Kwangmyongsong 2, the United States and its followers labelled it as a missile launch and deployed many warships on the East Sea of Korea, clamouring about “interception” and “punishment” and straining the tension. Making much ado about intercepting the artificial satellite for peaceful purposes was a clear manifestation of the policy of hostility towards the DPRK pursued by the United States and its vassal forces. It was an intolerable provocation against the sovereign country.

To cope with the prevailing situation Kim Jong Il roused all the service personnel to deal a merciless blow to the enemy in retaliation of their reckless manoeuvres.

On March 9, 2009, a spokesman for the General Staff of the KPA stated that it would retaliate any act of intercepting the DPRK’s artificial satellite for peaceful purposes with immediate counter-strike by the most powerful

military means and that if the enemy recklessly turned to intercepting the satellite, the country's revolutionary armed forces would launch without hesitation a just retaliatory strike not only against all means of interception involved but the strongholds of the United States and Japanese aggressors and the south Korean puppets that hatched plots to intercept it.

Kim Jong Il issued an order to all the service personnel to be fully ready for combat, following every move of the aggressors with vigilance, and deal merciless retaliatory blows to them, if they violated the airspace, territory and waters of the country even an inch.

On March 14, 2009, he inspected a firing drill by the KPA service personnel.

After the drill was over, he said that it would be a heavy blow to the enemy who were frantic in their moves for a new war.

He continued, **“Now the enemy is threatening that if we launch our artificial earth satellite, they will intercept it. If they do so, we must make an immediate counter-strike.”**

He stressed: The enemy have deployed their warships near our territorial waters, threatening to intercept our satellite there. The People's Army should be fully prepared to launch an immediate counter-strike against their warships on land, in the air and at sea. If the enemy dare to intercept our satellite for peaceful purposes, we should, as stated by the spokesman for the General Staff of the KPA, retaliate mercilessly on them to teach them a serious lesson.

On April 5, 2009, at the Satellite Control Centre, he saw the artificial satellite Kwangmyongsong 2 blasting off, and told officials that it was successfully launched and if the enemy had attempted to intercept it, the base for interception and other major targets would have been razed.

He led the KPA to strike back at the enemy when they violated the territorial waters of the DPRK.

The United States and its south Korean puppets cranked up tension in the waters off Yonphyong Island in the West Sea of Korea, where there had been several skirmishes with the KPA.

As early as June 1999, the enemy orchestrated a skirmish in this area, only to be hit hard by the sailors of the KPA. In June 2002 and November

2009 they engineered similar skirmishes and, with these as an excuse, deployed a huge force on Yonphyong Island and four other neighbouring islands and in the surrounding area.

On the occasion of *Cheonan* sinking on March 26, 2010, they brought the situation in the Korean peninsula to the brink of war.

The United States instigated Lee Myung Bak of south Korea to submit to the UN Security Council the “result of investigation” charging the DPRK with the sinking of the naval vessel. On the other hand, it clamoured about “punishment” and “retaliation.” At the end of July it enlisted legions of its and south Korean naval and air forces in staging and escalating combined naval drills near the demarcation lines on the West Sea and the East Sea. Encouraged, the south Korean army staged the Hoguk military exercise on an extensive scale and worked out a plan to launch an artillery fire into the territorial waters of the DPRK.

The KPA sent a notice to the south Korean army, warning that if it did not cancel its reckless firing plan immediately, it would face a resolute physical response by the KPA. On November 23, 2010, however, the south Korean army fired dozens of shells from Yonphyong Island into the waters of the DPRK.

The KPA artillery units, which had been constantly on the alert, fired back immediately. The major targets on Yonphyong Island, including radars, shell depots, artillery positions and barracks, were blown up.

The world media commented: That the north turned the military base on Yonphyong Island into a lake of fire implies that now it is firmly resolved to settle accounts with the United States and its forces. If they persist in confronting it, the north will move its artillery and missile launchers closer to them. The DPRK responds by firing artillery when the United States is shooting a rifle, and by launching a ballistic missile when it is firing artillery. Now the United States is unable to lull the angry tiger. It should not have disturbed the giant.

CHAPTER 44

DEMONSTRATING THE COUNTRY'S MIGHT AS A POLITICO-IDEOLOGICAL POWER

1. ADDING ETERNAL BRILLIANCE TO THE HISTORY OF A HARMONIOUS WHOLE

The sacred Korean revolution had been pioneered on Mt Paektu by dint of the unity of the revolutionary ranks based on revolutionary comradeship, and advanced victoriously on the strength of single-hearted unity. On the road of victory it traversed the source of its invincibility was the single-hearted unity based on comradeship.

Kim Jong Il, regarding consolidating the single-hearted unity as the fundamental key to demonstrating the country's might as a politico-ideological power, worked hard to add eternal brilliance to the history of a harmonious whole strengthened on the basis of comradeship.

On February 26, 2002, he said, **“Among our songs I have a special fondness for *Song of Comradeship*. It is very meaningful. So I like the song best.”**

On March 10 he said that these days *Song of Comradeship* was being widely publicized on TV and over the radio, stressing that the people should be encouraged to sing the song in the future too. On March 20 he told a senior official of the Rodong Sinmun Offices that the newspaper was carrying good articles about the song, adding that the revolution should be advanced while singing it all the time.

True to his intention Party and working people's organizations focused on upholding the tradition of revolutionary comradeship and bringing into full play the collectivist spirit of helping and leading one another forward.

As a result, an increasing number of Party members, service personnel and other working people did laudable deeds; some sacrificed themselves or donated their skin and blood to save their comrades, and some others volunteered to marry disabled soldiers.

On April 7, 2004 Kim Jong Il gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, titled, *Revolutionary Comradeship Is the Basis of Single-Hearted Unity and the Driving Force of Our Revolution*.

Recalling the revolutionary comrades who followed the Party invariably through trials and difficulties, he said that he had been able to conduct the revolutionary work successfully because innumerable comrades had sincerely supported and assisted him through the decades and from one century to the next.

He then went on, **“Always mindful of the revolutionary comrades who have been faithful to the Party I will, by dint of comradeship, carry out to the end the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered and led by President Kim Il Sung.”**

He stressed that revolutionary comrades are those who share the same ideas, will and destiny, who share life and death in overcoming difficulties and trials together and who share weal and woe on the road of revolution. He added that since revolutionaries fight to realize their common aims, sharing the same ideas and will, so the relationship between parents and their children, if they are all revolutionaries, should be that between comrades, and surpass the blood relationship.

He continued to tell about the view of comrades cherished by the Mangyongdae family: When the President was young, the indomitable revolutionary fighter Kim Hyong Jik took him, on his birthday, to a shop and bought him a pocket watch, saying, “Happy birthday, Comrade Song Ju!” The President kept the vocative *comrade* in his heart, considering it as his father’s request that he become a revolutionary and fight against the Japanese aggressors to win back the country without fail. He treated me in his lifetime as his revolutionary comrade, and I, too, always regarded myself as a revolutionary, a comrade, of the President. Love between comrades is unity, and there is no power stronger than that of the unity of revolutionary comrades. Without revolutionary comradeship, we could

conceive of neither the existence and development of our Party, nor our single-hearted unity, nor the victorious advance of our revolution.

Kim Jong Il stressed, **“Revolutionary comradeship is the basis of single-hearted unity, the mental strength of our Party and the driving force of our revolution.”**

Noting that the history of the Korean revolution is a history in which it began, advanced and won victories, by dint of comradeship, he said that the President had regarded the idea of gaining comrades as his life-long motto, leading the revolution to victory on the strength of comradeship. He underlined that while he displayed the dignity of a brilliant, valiant commander in front of the enemy, the President spared no affection for his comrades and shed tears for them.

That the revolution starts by gaining comrades is a precious truth I have inherited, he emphasized, adding that since he valued this truth, he loved his revolutionary comrades most and believed in them as he did in himself.

He said, **“Because he has comrades, Kim Jong Il exists; without them Kim Jong Il could not exist—this is my ideological creed. The belief that my comrade is me and I am him—this is my view of a comrade.”**

Then he specified some important tasks arising in educating the service personnel and other people in revolutionary comradeship. He said that effective education in the Juche idea should be conducted among them and they should be equipped with the Party’s tradition of comradeship, so that all of them could become comrades in the Songun revolution who would defend the Party with their lives and faithfully support its Songun idea and leadership. Models of revolutionary comradeship should be held up and their examples popularized to encourage the full flowering of the virtue of comradeship across society, he stressed.

Thanks to his ardent love for his revolutionary comrades, the virtue of comradeship was brought into full bloom.

He paid close concern to immortalizing the revolutionaries who had performed brilliant exploits with unflinching loyalty to the Party and the leader at important periods of the Korean revolution.

He had the remains of the anti-Japanese revolutionary war veterans, who

passed away not long ago, interred and the busts of them set up in the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery on Mt Taesong and the photographic images put on the tombstones in the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery in Hyesan, providing all conditions necessary for the projects. He also sent a delegation of the government to Vietnam on a mission of carrying back to the country the remains of the martyrs of the Korean People's Army that had reposed there for dozens of years after their heroic death in the Vietnam War.

He named the heroes and heroines representative of the country's important periods, and had their remains laid in the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery in Sinmi-ri. He also saw that provinces built similar cemeteries to lay the remains of the local officials, who had loyally supported the Party and the leader until their last moments, and the photographs of them were carved on the tombstones.

Soon afterwards, the remains of such meritorious people as Heroes of the DPRK, Labour Heroes, anti-Japanese war veterans and other patriotic martyrs, and faithful officials, were interred in the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery in Sinmi-ri and other similar cemeteries in provinces.

Kim Jong Il bestowed warm affection on the former unconverted long-term prisoners who had remained faithful to their revolutionary principles for over 30 or 40 years behind bars with unwavering loyalty to the Party and the leader.

Under his close concern they regained their health, some receiving a wedding spread from him.

On July 23, 2002, reading a letter from one of them and his wife, he named their new-born baby **Chuk Bok** (blessing-Tr.) in reply to their request.

On their birthdays he had a spread sent to the men who had endured all manner of hardships in south Korea. When some passed away, he had a wreath sent in his name and their remains laid in the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery in Sinmi-ri.

On February 3, 2002, he said that the prevailing situation demanded that closer concern be directed to cementing the single-hearted unity of the Party and the masses than in former days, underlining the need for Party organizations to apply the Party's benevolent politics and rally more people behind it.

On several other occasions he pointed to the necessity of pursuing a seasoned style and showing magnanimity in working with the masses and, on October 16, 2002, gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee over the important issues in this respect.

According to his instructions, Party organizations lent an attentive ear to the people's opinions and promptly resolved their problems, big and small, with maternal affection, thereby uniting them more firmly around the Party and inspiring them to further efforts for the building of a thriving country.

In early September 2002, seeing Kim Jong Il engrossed in his office work, the officials asked him to take a rest.

He said to them: You often tell me I am taking much pain and ask me to have a good rest. I appreciate your sincere request. People would tell me in a similar vein when I was giving field guidance at the units of the People's Army, factories, enterprises and cooperative farms. Each time I would suppress my surging emotions, reflecting on how good my soldiers and people are. I am a human and I often feel tired and sleepy. But I cannot rest or sleep in comfort. I am a man of the President who set out on the road of revolution in my early years with firm determination to demonstrate the brilliance of my beloved country, Korea, to the world by faithfully supporting his cause. He said in his lifetime that Kim Jong Il's era is glorious now and it will be more prosperous in the future. I have yet to repay his great trust and expectations. My country is still undergoing difficulties and the people are not so well-off as others. Now that the President passed away and we are confronting US imperialism, the ringleader of imperialist nations, which is wielding the nuclear stick in its desperate attempt to swallow up our country, I cannot rest or sleep in comfort even for a moment as I am taking responsibility for the destiny of the country and nation.

He resumed after a minute's pause: The service personnel and other people wish me good health from the bottom of their hearts, so I have nothing more to desire. I am resolved to make my country lead the world in all aspects and the people live happily without cause for envy. Then I will take a good rest and have a sound sleep as wished by the people. The day is not far off.

2. DEVELOPING PARTY WORK AS DEMANDED BY THE NEW CENTURY

ESTABLISHING THE PARTY'S UNIFIED LEADERSHIP SYSTEM

On October 8, 2002, Kim Jong Il said that a political party should lead the masses along a correct path and it is called the guide in this sense, adding that the Workers' Party of Korea should always guide the people to follow the right road.

In order to effect a fresh turnaround in Party work as demanded by the new century, he paid primary concern to establishing the unified leadership system more firmly across the Party.

He raised as model officials those who had supported the Party in the 1970s when the foundations for carrying forward the Juche cause were being laid down. He put stress on training all Party officials into true workers who, like the officials of the preceding generations, would support the leader with pure conscience and a high sense of moral obligation and lead the people in implementing the Party's lines and policies.

On February 3, 2002, he said, recalling the years when the foundations for carrying forward the Juche cause were being laid down, that the Party officials had promptly grasped the Party's intentions when assigned with new tasks and carried them out with credit.

He went on:

“Those officials inquired about all the problems concerning Party organizations and other officials and gave effective guidance to ensure that those at lower echelons made no mistake.”

Then he added:

“Education of officials needs to be conducted by means of the materials concerning those officials who worked in the period when the foundations for carrying forward the Juche cause were being laid down. ... Now there remain few of them who worked with me in that

period, and there are many who do not know what happened then.”

On September 2 that year he spoke again about those officials who had worked with him in the crucial period. He recalled that after he began to do Party work in his twenties following his graduation from Kim Il Sung University, they followed and supported him with all their hearts. As I was aided by such dependable comrades, a historic turn was brought about in developing our Party, he stressed.

True to his instructions, Party organizations, based on relevant materials, conducted education in various forms and by various methods to learn from the officials of the preceding generations.

In January 9, 2005, he gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party and the state, titled, *In the Songun Era, a New Era of the Juche Revolution, Our Officials Should Live and Work as They Did in the Period When the Foundations for Carrying Forward the Juche Cause Were Being Laid Down.*

He underlined the need for all officials to learn from their forerunners' spirit, work attitude and fighting mettle, adding that in the crucial period of the 1970s the latter faithfully supported the Party, accepted its directives unconditionally and fulfilled them however difficult they might be.

In the 1970s the officials supported the Party with unfailing loyalty to their leader. To them, loyalty to the Party and the leader was more of an honour than a duty.

They made it part of their conscience, moral obligation and everyday activities. Their steadfast and absolute loyalty was manifested not in their flowery rhetoric but in their whole-hearted support of the Party and the leader even in times of hardship.

They showed no affectation in and out of work and were honest and candid with the Party. Thanks to their sincere efforts the bases for education in revolutionary traditions, including the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site and Samjiyon Grand Monument, were built in a splendid fashion, the sector of art and literature created a brilliant example in portraying the leader, and a sweeping change was effected on all the fields of the revolution and construction.

Kim Jong Il said that the officials were quick to grasp the Party's plans and intentions and worked hard day and night to translate them into reality.

They were iron-willed and competent officials who strove with great enthusiasm to implement the Party's lines and policies. They were firmly resolved to waste no time in carrying out the Party's policies and fulfil the tasks entrusted to them by it without giving them up halfway or implementing them in a slapdash manner. With such determination they sought for ways to carry through Party policy and did everything in a big and bold way. Their persevering efforts resulted in the creation of the speed of the 70-day campaign, a new Chollima speed, and notable successes in grand socialist construction.

That day Kim Jong Il also referred to the fact that the officials never connived at any elements running counter to the Party's unified leadership system, but combated them to render great services to establishing that system more firmly throughout the Party and society.

Those officials had keen political insight and maintained Party principles to defend its authority and prestige in every way possible. They waged an uncompromising struggle against what were contrary to the Party's lines and policies. These stalwart officials made a positive contribution to setting up a well-knit, novel system of Party work and establishing the Party's unified leadership system more firmly.

Their experiences illustrate a valuable truth: Officials should be more steadfast than anybody else in maintaining Party principles and defend the Party with an uncompromising fighting spirit; only when they become such true guardians of the Party's ideology, its fighting efficiency can be increased to the greatest possible extent and they can add glory to their life as its revolutionary soldiers.

As for the officials' work manner and fighting mettle in the 1970s, Kim Jong Il said, **“Absolute loyalty to their leader, great enthusiasm and strong desire to carry out Party policy promptly, sincere attitude towards Party principles and uncompromising fighting spirit were the essential qualities of the officials in the period when the foundations for carrying forward the Juche cause were being laid down.”**

He continued that in the Songun era, a new era of the Juche revolution, officials should learn from the spirit of their forerunners and become revolutionary comrades on the road of Songun, sharing ideology, aim and

sentiment with their leader to usher in a new golden age of national prosperity. Then he specified what they should do and how.

He also directed due concern to improving the functions and role of Party organizations at all levels.

On January 3, 2001, while setting the direction for the Korean people's struggle in the new century, he said, **“The functions and role of Party organizations should be enhanced decisively. The Party's leadership over the entire Party and the whole society is realized through its organizations; so it is only when Party organizations enhance their functions and role that the Party can fully perform its mission and duty.”**

Then he specified important tasks to this end: setting up a correct system of grasping and reporting the state of affairs of the subordinate organizations and their members and inquiring in detail about them; organizing and guiding the officials' and other Party members' Party life effectively in close combination with the implementation of their revolutionary tasks, and encouraging them to carry out their tasks with credit; eliminating outdated patterns in Party work as demanded by the new century.

In 2007 he proposed holding a conference of Party cell secretaries, the third of its kind in the Party's history, with a view to setting up a new milestone in strengthening Party cells.

He defined the ultimate objective of this conference—motivating all Party cell secretaries to build up their cells into vanguard organizations faithfully supporting the Party's Songun-based revolutionary leadership and improve their militant functions and role so as to bring about a fundamental turn in developing the Party and building a powerful country.

The Third Conference of Cell Secretaries of the Workers' Party of Korea was held in Pyongyang from October 26 to 27. At the conference important tasks were set out to radically improve the work of Party cells in line with the new requirements for the development of the Songun revolution.

On the 27th, after the conference was closed, Kim Jong Il gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, titled, ***The Functions and Role of Party Cells Should Steadily Be Enhanced in Keeping with the Requirements of the Developing Revolution.***

He said that as basic organizations of the Party, Party cells are its

cornerstone and they are directly responsible for carrying out the tasks facing it and establishing kindred ties between it and the masses. Then he enumerated what needed to be done in enhancing the functions and role of Party cells in line with the new requirements of the developing revolution.

In order to establish the Party's unified leadership system more thoroughly, he pointed to the necessity of consolidating the ranks of officials and advanced tasks to this end.

True to his instructions Party organizations strove to form the ranks of officials with those who are firmly equipped with the spirit of defending the leader to the death, well-versed in their special field as demanded by the IT era, and possessed of organizing abilities and revolutionary drive.

They paid particular concern to selecting promising young people as reserve officials and giving them regular training to guarantee the continuity of the ranks of officials.

They also worked hard to develop the Party into an enterprising and vibrant entity, and paid due concern to appointing women officials.

Kim Jong Il showed close concern for the revolutionary training of officials.

On July 20, 2004, he said to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee: Party officials are leading members of the revolution and hard core of the Party. Only when they are transformed on a revolutionary pattern, they will stand in the vanguard of the struggle to support and implement the Party's line of the Songun revolution whatever the adversity.

To this end, it is important to make careful arrangements for the ideological education of them and conduct it in an effective way. What is fundamental in improving the methods of education is to eliminate cramming and adopt heuristic and other effective methods and forms. It is also indispensable to make officials intensify their Party life. This is one of the keys to making them revolutionary. They should be encouraged to enhance their Party spirit.

Kim Jong Il stressed that Party officials should be tempered in the practical struggle. Noting that to them, revolutionary practice is the process of implementing the duty entrusted to them by the Party, he underlined that they should always use their brains and make painstaking

efforts to perform their duty with credit.

To mark the 60th anniversary of several Party officials training institutions he made up his mind to decisively improve the work of training Party officials to meet the practical requirements of the new century.

Under his close concern the whole Party made full preparations for ensuring the celebrations of the anniversary a success. On the occasion of the anniversary these institutions strove hard to improve their educational work and solidify their material and technical foundations for teaching.

Central institutions put up monuments to the field guidance by the peerlessly great persons of Mt Paektu, rooms for education by means of revolutionary relics, rooms dedicated to their history and exhibitions of educational successes, and published important books, thereby contributing to championing and glorifying the Party's leadership exploits. In addition, the institutions at all levels put great emphasis on improving the quality of teaching to ensure better contents and methods of it.

On May 11, 2011, to mark the 65th anniversary of the Party officials training institutions, he gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee and in the sector of Party officials training, titled, ***On Bringing About a New Turn in the Work of Training Party Officials as Demanded by the Times and the Developing Revolution.***

In this talk he underlined the necessity of decisively improving the work of training Party officials in line with the requirements of the Songun era and for the building of a powerful country. He continued to say that they should train officials into competent personnel who are steadfast in their revolutionary outlook on the leader, have high political and practical qualifications, organizing abilities and ennobling popular traits, and forcefully lead the grand struggle to build a powerful country. He defined this as the basic duty of the Party officials training institutions.

He reiterated that all these institutions should prepare their students to be able officials of the Party and the state with substantial practical abilities and popular traits who are unfailingly loyal to the Party and the leader, share weal and woe with the people while working with devotion for their interests, and can lead them on the general onward march of the Songun revolution. Then he specified tasks and ways to this end.

EFFECTING A FRESH TURN IN IDEOLOGICAL WORK

With keen insight into the new requirements of the developing revolution Kim Jong Il made efforts to effect a fresh turn in the Party's ideological work.

On January 3, 2001, he said that officials should adopt a novel and truthful approach towards the Party's ideological work to meet the requirements of the developing reality. He added that they should not work like a flash in the pan but make strenuous efforts to this end until they would attain a given strategic and tactical goal.

Then he went on:

“We should bring about a fresh turn in the ideological work of the Party.”

In April 2001, under his close concern, the National Conference of the Party's Primary Information Workers was held, the first of its kind in the Party's history.

To this historic meeting Kim Jong Il sent a letter, titled, *Let Us Further Enhance the Role of the Primary Information Workers of the Party as Required by the Revolutionary Advance in the New Century*. After the meeting he led the efforts to build on the successes made at the conference and improve the Party's ideological work.

He directed primary concern to the ideological education aimed at training all the people to be strong in ideology and faith and cultivating their spiritual strength.

He had the education in the greatness of, and loyalty to, the Party and the leader stepped up in close combination with that in revolutionary faith, to ensure that all the people are fully convinced that as long as they are led by the great leader and the great Party, they can win final victory in the political and military showdown with the imperialists.

On March 26, 2003, some days after the US imperialists unleashed a war against Iraq, he told officials concerned that they should conduct effective ideological education among the people by means of the materials related to the war. He said that they should make the people fully conscious

that no force in the world can conquer a people who defy death and also firmly convinced that they can surely win victory if they turn out as one in the fight against the US imperialists.

On April 13, based on his comprehensive analysis of the war, he described the Iraqi war as a fight between robbers and turncoats. Noting that the whole leadership of Iraq turned traitor, he explained that the Guards of the Republic were alleged to have been the most staunch and best prepared, but all of them, from the commander to the rank and file, surrendered. He added that five to six years previously, the US imperialists had schemed to disintegrate the country's leadership through bribery. Enumerating the enemy moves before the outbreak of the war, he reiterated that the US imperialists invaded Iraq after bribing its leadership, so its army and people could not launch a proper fight, seeing their country ruined. As the members of the leadership themselves turned traitor accepting bribery, he continued, their subordinates betrayed their nation and capitulated. He stressed that a country's leadership turning traitor as a whole was the first of its kind in the world history.

On April 25, the founding anniversary of the Korean People's Army, he said to officials concerned in a similar vein: The Iraqi war teaches a serious lesson that those who are greedy and cowardly and prefer flattering must be strictly guarded against and weeded out before it is too late; we should be resolved to fight a do-or-die war at any time and win victory without fail; we should make full preparations to this end so that we can defeat the enemy at a single stroke whatever the circumstances; it is important to inculcate our army and people with the firm resolve to beat the enemy and unshakeable conviction in the certainty of victory.

Afterwards, Party organizations at all levels conducted education in various forms and by various methods to make the people fully convinced that they can win final victory in the confrontation with the US imperialists as long as their Party administers Songun politics and they have the powerful weapon of single-hearted unity. The mass media put the focus of their editing on the serious lessons drawn from the Iraqi War and relevant data to give wide publicity to them, in order to make all the people understand that they will emerge victorious if they defend socialism and

they will be as good as dead if they abandon its principles and ensure that they have unwavering belief in the certainty of its triumph.

On June 5, 2006, Kim Jong Il said that the dawn of a thriving nation was breaking all over the land, just as there had appeared in the last period of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle good signs of national liberation. He reaffirmed that the day was drawing nearer when the Korean people would do away with the aftereffects of the trials they had undergone during the Arduous March and forced march, and live happily in the prospering socialist fairyland without envying anyone in the world.

He went on to say: Faith in the victory of the revolution is the lifeblood of revolutionaries. If they lack faith, they cannot overcome grave trials facing the revolution, much less achieve its victory. Revolution is not carried out by rhetoric but by faith. Revolution is precisely faith and vice versa. Only those who cherish hope for tomorrow rather than for today and live and work hard for the brilliant future can become strong in faith and emerge victorious in the revolution. If we struggle with firm faith in sure victory just as the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters did, we can bring forward the victory of the Songun revolution and Songun politics on this land.

In his talk, titled, *Intensifying Socialist Education Is a Pressing Requirement of Our Era and Our Revolution* given on December 20, 2006, to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, and his other works and instructions, Kim Jong Il specified matters of principle arising in intensifying socialist education. He also underlined the importance of proactively educating all the people in faith in socialism, the spirit of defending it, and socialist patriotism, so as to prepare them to be staunch guardians of socialism and dependable implementers of the socialist cause.

On July 31, 2002, he met with the editorialists of the Rodong Sinmun Offices and writers of the Central Committee of the Writers Union of Korea. He told them that he kept in mind the journalists and writers who had been supporting the Party's Songun politics by creating excellent works.

Then he said to them: During the Arduous March and forced march you produced many good poems and other literary works to support the Party's Songun politics. They gave great courage and support to our people in their

struggle to defend the banner of socialism unwaveringly in the face of imperialists' vicious schemes to isolate and stifle our country through blockade. I myself felt exhausted very often, but I drew courage from the comrades of the Songun revolution like you and other people. In particular, your writings gave me a great encouragement. That's why I have read all what you have written.

Kim Jong Il reiterated that, through their literary works, they should give the people a deeper understanding of the might and vitality of the Party's Songun politics to rouse them to the revolutionary struggle, stressing that they should write about the Party.

In late February 2004 the Seventh Conference of Ideological Officials of the Workers' Party of Korea was held to mark the 30th anniversary of publication of the programme of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism. This conference was of great significance in improving the work of imbuing the whole society with the Songun idea.

With this conference as a momentum, the ideological work to imbue the whole society with the Songun idea was developed in greater depth. The focus of the positive ideological work was put on training all members of society into genuine revolutionaries who made the Songun idea part of their mental qualities and on consolidating rock-solid the single-hearted unity of the army and the people around the leadership of the revolution. Information and motivation work geared to inspiring the people with greater enthusiasm for the building of an economic giant was done in a more effective way.

Kim Jong Il had education work stepped up to make all the people acquire a higher degree of class consciousness and prepare themselves as fighters who were ready to wage an uncompromising struggle against all sorts of class enemy.

On December 18, 2002, he suggested ways for correcting the pressing problems arising in class education and stressed the importance of maintaining class education as part of the major line of the Party's ideological work and directing great efforts to this end as the US moves to isolate and stifle the country reached a critical phase.

He resumed: It is urgent to conduct class education in a more intensive

and effective way as demanded by the Songun era. The word *Songun* was coined amid an acute confrontation with the imperialists. It is based on a high degree of revolutionary class consciousness and an acute understanding of the need for confrontation with the enemy. It is necessary to make strenuous efforts to enhance the effectiveness of class education by adopting various forms and methods, so that all officials, Party members and other working people will conceive a growing hatred and wage a staunch fight against all sorts of the enemies of the revolution including the US imperialists, Japanese militarists and exploiting class.

On the same day he said to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee: In the past socialism collapsed in several countries because they failed to keep enough vigilance against the class enemies. We have to draw a serious lesson from this. Party organizations should intensify class education among their members, service personnel and other people, in order to encourage them to struggle uncompromisingly against the enemies with a thoroughgoing spirit of fighting the US and other imperialists and a high degree of class consciousness. They should put special emphasis on educating young people so that they will have a high degree of class consciousness and fulfil their mission and role as successors to the revolution.

With a view to raising the effectiveness of the anti-US, anti-Japanese and class education Kim Jong Il had the bases for it built up and the education through them developed in greater depth.

In the new century, while paying constant concern to intensifying anti-US and class education through the Sinchon Museum, he attached great importance to the education through a comprehensive base for class education. To this end, he led the efforts to build a central class education hall in Pyongyang.

On December 13, 1998, he pointed to the necessity of building a class education hall in Pyongyang. And on some other occasions he solved many problems arising in the construction project—fixing the site of the hall, provision of manpower and materials, obtaining exhibits and data collection.

From July 25, 2002, when the hall was inaugurated, to the end of that year, visitors to it totalled over 260 000.

Kim Jong Il ensured that halls and rooms for class education were set up in Susan-ri and all other parts of the country to develop the education work on a wide scale.

He named the new hall in Pyongyang Central Hall for Class Education and saw to it that it served as the base for academic guidance over its counterparts in provinces.

He also pushed ahead with all other types of ideological education including that in revolutionary traditions and the Korean-nation-first spirit.

He directed attention to launching the information and motivation work in a unique way with the aim of raising fierce flames for a new revolutionary upsurge in all the fields where a thriving nation was being built.

On February 14, 2004, he told the officials of the Information and Publicity Department of the Party Central Committee about the difficulties facing the country. He emphasized that they should always mix with the masses and educate them while working with them, in the manner of the anti-Japanese guerrillas according to the Party's traditional method of work.

As things grow worse, he resumed, Party information officials should go deep among the masses and bring home to them the prevailing situation and the economic hardships facing the country to raise fierce flames for breaking through them.

As for the method and style of work of the information officials in the period when the foundations for carrying forward the Juche cause were being laid down, he said to the officials of the Information and Publicity Department: You should work the way they did. Long ago, I set forth the policy of encouraging Party information officials to carry knapsacks on their backs and go among the people in the manner of the anti-Japanese guerrillas to conduct positive ideological education. I told them that an ideal Party information official is one who always mingles with the people and educates them regarding this as his basic duty. You should work hard to become such ideal officials.

In 2008 a general offensive was in full swing on a country-wide scale to bring about an epochal turn in building a thriving country by 2012, the year when the Korean people would mark the centenary of the birth of President

Kim Il Sung. Kim Jong Il made sure that in the subsequent years all efforts for the Party's ideological work were concentrated on giving full play to the people's mental strength.

On January 2, 2008 he said: From this year we should make thorough preparations and buckle down to carrying out the Party's grand plans and objectives. By fulfilling them successfully within a few years, we should celebrate the centenary of the birth of the President as the greatest festival of victors. The main key to building a thriving country is to encourage the service personnel and other people to give free rein to their mental strength.

Noting that a man of great mental strength can overcome all sorts of trials and difficulties, he stressed:

“The mental strength of the service personnel and other people is greater than the power of nuclear weapons.”

He continued that that year, in which a new milestone would be set up in building a thriving country, primary concern should be directed to bringing the mental strength of the service personnel and all other people into fullest play. He added that this was the way to raise fierce flames of a fresh leap forward in all the fields for socialist construction.

On April 10 that year he gave a talk to the senior officials of the Information and Publicity Department of the Party Central Committee, titled, *On Some Problems in Improving the Party's Ideological Work at Present*.

In this talk he said that when the ideological sector drummed up support for an all-out advance, the whole country would be bubbling over with revolutionary stamina and militant spirit and this would result in a huge leap forward being made in all the sectors for socialist construction.

He continued that giving fullest play to the mental strength of the service personnel and other people was fundamental in building a thriving country and this should be the focus of the Party's ideological work.

Then he elucidated the essence and contents of the mental strength and set out tasks for bringing it into fullest play.

As for the essence of the mental strength, he said, **“Mental strength is precisely ideological strength. In other words, it is the spirit of independence, faith and willpower with which to take one's destiny in**

one's hands and shape it by one's efforts.”

He went on to say: The mental strength of the Korean service personnel and other people is rooted in the Juche idea and the Songun idea. It is a great mental strength, whose core is the spirit of defending the leader to the death and whose main contents are the Korean-nation-first spirit, socialist patriotism, the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude, and revolutionary optimism. It is the most important aspect of Korea's national strength and the most valuable of the nation's assets. This is a weapon more powerful than nuke.

Then he set out tasks to be tackled in building up and giving free rein to the mental strength of the service personnel and other people.

On June 25, 2009, he gave a talk to the officials of the Party, army and state economic organs, titled, *Let Us Raise Fiercer Flames for a Great Revolutionary Upsurge on All Fronts for Building a Thriving Country by Dint of the Great Mental Strength of Kim Il Sung's Nation*. In this work he once again gave profound answers to all the theoretical and practical problems concerning mental strength.

Following the publication of this work, officials conducted Party political work in a frontline style by employing novel and effective methods.

In all parts of the country, ranging from the major fronts for building a thriving nation including the construction site of the Huichon Power Station to factories and farms, Party information officials worked hard in a frontline style, mobilizing all means and forces for information and motivation work to create a militant atmosphere across the country. The mass media concentrated efforts on writing articles and editorials and editing programmes with a view to giving wide publicity to the people's heroic exploits and calling for sweeping changes. Central art troupes, art squads in provinces and itinerant art groups in cities and counties, as well as motivation workers at workplaces, made the whole country seethe with enthusiasm for increased production.

As a result, on all fronts for building a thriving country unprecedented achievements were made one after another and the country greeted a golden age of the revolution and construction.

MAKING THE PARTY APPLY THE REVOLUTIONARY ART OF LEADERSHIP

With the aim of developing the Workers' Party of Korea into a militant party that applies the revolutionary art of leadership, Kim Jong Il had all Party officials master the Juche-oriented method of work created by President Kim Il Sung.

He said:

“In order for officials to become proficient in organizing all undertakings, they should master our Party’s revolutionary working methods, which are Juche-oriented, and learn the leadership art of our own style.”

He saw to it that Party officials worked hard to learn from the President’s method of work and apply it through revolutionary practice.

The President’s method of work requires placing the people’s interests before anything else and conducting everything in keeping with them, always mingling with the people while sharing weal and woe with them to resolve all problems, and bringing their revolutionary enthusiasm and creative activeness into fullest play to press on with the revolution and construction.

On January 1, 2005, Kim Jong Il told the senior officials of the Party Central Committee that they should render substantial help to the officials of their subordinate units and work with devotion for the sake of the people, adding that assisting the subordinates and serving the people is the traditional method of guidance and style of work pursued by the Workers’ Party of Korea.

True to his lofty intention Party organizations at all levels conducted various forms of effective education among officials so that all of them would acquire a habit of going down to their subordinate units and learning in detail about the actual conditions before doing what they had to do.

Officials strove hard to learn from the work method of the President, who had maintained it as part of his lifestyle and mode of revolutionary leadership to work out lines and policies on the basis of his firsthand experience and give free rein to the people’s revolutionary enthusiasm and

creative activeness in pushing forward the revolution and construction.

Kim Jong Il ensured that all Party officials learned the mode of leadership and style of work unique to the Workers' Party of Korea to do everything creatively and innovatively as demanded by the new stage of the developing revolution and the changed circumstances.

On February 17 and 19, 2006, he gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, titled, *Doing Everything in a Creative Manner Is an Urgent Requirement of the Times and the Developing Revolution*.

He said that an important characteristic of the Party's mode of leadership and method of work is to work innovatively and creatively in line with the practical requirements without being bound by the established customs, adding that the Party had been opposed to dogmatism and formalism and done everything innovatively and creatively.

Then he told the officials:

“Officials should be responsive to new things and be bold enough to free themselves from the outdated and set patterns. They should rid themselves of the old forms, methods and patterns that have been regarded as customary, and work proactively and creatively to meet the requirements of the times and the developing revolution.”

He continued to explain how to work creatively in keeping with the requirements of the Party and the times and the people's aspirations.

He set out some tasks facing officials: being responsive to the Party's ideas and intentions and arming themselves with its lines and policies, being fully acquainted with the reality and decisively improving their practical qualifications, working in the manner of the officials who supported the Party in the period when the foundations for carrying forward the Juche cause were being laid down.

He stressed: In the Songun era our officials should be highly qualified and enthusiastic about their work. They should delve deep into what they are doing and approach everything from a new, innovative viewpoint. Through energetic thinking and bold actions they should create new things successively and work in a novel and aggressive manner. In this way they should ensure that the Party's great Songun idea and Songun-based leadership are applied successfully in all the sectors of the revolution and

construction, and thus demonstrate their invincible might and vitality.

In addition, Kim Jong Il specified ways for Party organizations and officials to adopt in the revolutionary struggle to build a thriving country: selecting the correct seed in all what they are doing and planning and conducting their work on the principle of ensuring profitability, actively coping with the rapidly-changing circumstances while maintaining revolutionary principles, carrying out tasks by the finish-one-by-one tactics, and learning from the revolutionary manner of the army officers who tackle a task, exercise strict control over the whole process of its execution and carry it through in a persevering and revolutionary manner.

He ensured that Party officials were possessed of the ennobling popular traits and humanity as demanded by the Songun era and would become faithful servants working with devotion for the people.

True to his intention officials respected the people's interests and worked hard for their well-being, and the number of those who were affectionately called "our so-and-so" increased abruptly.

An official, learning that a discharged soldier who had been newly posted at his unit was going to marry, had him move into his own house. And another official enjoyed high public esteem as he was taking good care of an honoured disabled soldier who was suffering from paraplegia. A Party official was told that a soldier's brother and sister had no parents to look after them and volunteered to take care of the children. Another Party official adopted orphans and looked after them with parental affection.

Whenever he was reported on such laudable deeds, Kim Jong Il had them given wide publicity and ensured that all Party officials became true leading members of the revolution called "our so-and-so," the most honourable title in the Songun era.

On October 28, 2003, he gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, titled, *Officials Should Become Devoted Servants of the People*.

He said: Sometimes I repeat "our so-and-so" to myself with special attachment. During my inspection trips to the frontline and field guidance in other places I am most pleased to hear our service personnel and other people call the senior officials of their units "our so-and-so." These officials

can be called my revolutionary comrades-in-arms and genuine comrades who share will with me. For the officials who are obliged to serve the people, nothing is more glorious and honourable than to enjoy their support and love.

He added, **“All officials should become true servants of the people and be called ‘our-so-and-so,’ in line with the Party’s wishes.”**

He went on to explain: To be called “our so-and-so” by the people, officials should safeguard their interests and serve them with loyalty, upholding the Party’s slogan **“We serve the people!”** They should place the people’s interests before anything else, regarding them as the sole criterion in their thinking and actions. Until now our people have undergone unprecedented trials in carrying on the revolution and construction. Never before have they lived a bountiful life, feeling at ease. However, they have shared their destiny with our Party without complaining about the hardship or showing any sign of displeasure. Nowhere else in the world can be found such a people who are loyal to their Party and leader and have an ennobling sense of moral obligation. We should make a determined effort to make our people well-off without cause for envy and proud of themselves in all respects, and that in the near future.

Kim Jong Il paid concern to preparing Party officials to be leading members of the revolution who acquired practical abilities and common knowledge commensurate with the requirements of the new century so that they would be fully capable of leading the masses.

On December 3, 2001, he gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, titled, ***Improving Officials’ Practical Abilities at Present Is a Pressing Requirement of Our Revolution.*** His intention was to bring about a decisive turn in improving officials’ practical abilities.

Making a scientific analysis of the pressing need to do so, he said:

“All the officials should keep in mind that improving their practical abilities is a pressing requirement of the Party and the revolution, and make strenuous efforts to steadily improve their qualifications and standards. They should learn hard under the slogan ‘Let’s support the Party by virtue of practical abilities!’ in order to improve their creative abilities.”

He continued that it was fundamental for officials to have a full understanding of the Party's ideology and intentions, lines and policies and this should be the primary aspect of their practical abilities, adding that it was indispensable for them to learn modern science and technology and this should be the secondary aspect. He then specified what they should do. He pointed to the necessity of encouraging officials to strive to improve their practical abilities through studying and practical activities.

He underlined that improvement of practical abilities was not merely a technical matter but was related with one's ideology and loyalty to the Party and the leader.

One's ideology and loyalty are measured by one's practical ability and performance, and officials should put their energies into learning with a resolve to safeguard their Party and leader and remain faithful to the Party's cause without harbouring a selfish motive or showing affectation—this was what Kim Jong Il stressed when concluding his talk.

He led officials to fulfil their mission and role as demanded by the developing reality.

On June 25, 2003, he said that officials should be versatile talents with a good command of proverbs and common knowledge. He continued that they should study hard bearing in mind that they would fail to raise their intellectual level and might impede social progress if they did not make conscious efforts to acquire versatile knowledge.

Later, pointing to the necessity of having more common knowledge, he told officials interesting stories about it. He had various kinds of books sent to them and encouraged officials to raise their level of common knowledge on several occasions.

On July 29, 2007, he visited the Chusang Cooperative Farm in Hamju County to take part in the election of deputies to local power organs. After that, he had talks with the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, citing some instances that were indicative of officials' low level of cultural attainments. He stressed that such instances were due to the officials' poor knowledge and lack of common sense, adding that it was important to delve into the forms and methods of broadening their horizons.

He stressed the need to publish collections of historical stories, folktales

and legends, and other books in large numbers to help officials have a rich knowledge. He also said that the Information and Publicity Department should pay close concern to propagating common knowledge while putting the main emphasis on ideological education.

True to his instructions Party organizations at all levels made a variety of arrangements to help their officials possess a rich common knowledge.

All officials became fully conscious that only when they accumulated a broad knowledge and had high cultural attainments, could they have a profound understanding of the reality and conduct their work in a flexible manner. So they studied hard to have a thorough grounding in political, economic, military, cultural and other affairs. As demanded by the IT era they learned advanced technology for their respective fields, as well as related techniques. Successive measures were adopted to improve officials' cultural attainments and enrich their common knowledge.

3. IMPROVING THE WORK OF WORKING PEOPLE'S ORGANIZATIONS

With the advent of the new century Kim Jong Il directed great efforts to improving the work of working people's organizations with the aim of rallying broad sections of the people more firmly around the Party and consolidating the single-hearted unity of the revolutionary ranks.

He made sure that the youth league enhanced its functions and role to train all young people into the young vanguard of the Songun era who would take the lead in supporting the Party's Songun idea and Songun-based revolutionary leadership with loyalty.

As part of the effort to encourage young people to perform their mission and duty as the young vanguard of the Songun era, he arranged the National Conference of Activists of the Young Vanguard in the Songun Era in October 2003, the Conference of Young Pacesetters in the Songun Era in February 2005 and the Conference of the Young Vanguard of the Songun Revolution in March 2007.

These conferences reviewed the successes and experience gained in

applying Kim Jong Il's Songun idea and Songun politics to the letter. They also discussed what needed to be done to develop the work of the youth league as demanded by the Songun era and encourage youth league organizations and their members to stand in the vanguard of supporting faithfully the Party's Songun-based revolutionary leadership.

The year 2007 marked the 80th anniversary of the Young Communist League of Korea, the nation's first revolutionary organization of the young vanguard.

On August 22 that year Kim Jong Il gave a talk to the officials in charge of the work with young people, titled, *Let Young People Exalt the Honour of Young Vanguard in the Songun Era by Carrying Forward the Traditions of the Juche-oriented Youth Movement*.

In this talk he described the eight decades of the Juche-oriented youth movement in Korea as a glorious history in which a new path of a revolutionary youth movement had been opened up and a brilliant example of it created, a history in which young people performed heroic exploits for the country and revolution generation after generation.

The history of the Korean revolution adorned with great victories, he said, is associated with the proud achievements made in the youth movement and the red flag of the revolution is permeated with the sweat and blood of young people. He continued that the young people's heroic spirit and exploits and the tradition of their struggle would shine for ever in the annals of the Juche revolution and were inspiring the people of a new generation to greater efforts.

The Party's Songun idea and Songun-based revolutionary leadership, he stressed, are the lifeblood of our young people in the Songun era for their genuine life and struggle and they constitute a most powerful ideological weapon that guarantees the realization of their optimistic ideals and hopes by means of ennobling love and trust.

Then he said:

“Faithfully supporting, staunchly defending and successfully effectuating the great Party's Songun idea and Songun-based revolutionary leadership—this is the basic mission and duty the youth league and our young people assume at present. And herein lie their

lofty pride and honour, worth of their genuine life and their happiness.”

He went on to set forth tasks for young people to carry out in performing their honourable mission and duty as the young vanguard in the Songun era—remaining unfailingly loyal to their Party and leader and defending the leadership of the revolution to the death, becoming an advance group in the fight to defend the country and socialism, demonstrating their heroic mettle in building a thriving socialist country, and cultivating ennobling ideological and mental qualities, moral traits and cultural attainments as befits the young vanguard and successors to the revolutionary cause of Juche.

He continued to say: In order for young people to fulfil their honourable mission and duty as the young vanguard in the Songun era, it is important to strengthen the youth league and enhance its functions and role decisively, improve Party guidance over the work of its organizations and pay closer social concern to it. The Songun era, a new era of the Juche revolution, is characterized by great victories and great changes. All young people should faithfully support the leadership of their great Party in the sacred struggle to carry forward the revolutionary cause of Juche under the banner of Songun. Thus they should exalt the honour of the young vanguard in the Songun era.

He made sure that youth league organizations at all levels throughout the country worked hard to equip their members with the Party's idea of the youth movement, while conducting positive education to train them into the young vanguard of the Songun revolution who would defend the leadership of the revolution to the death and throw in their lot with it. Along with this, he stressed, they should direct close attention to the education work aimed at preparing young people to be vanguard fighters in the struggle to defend the country and socialism. He also pointed to the necessity of conducting effective ideological education in various forms and by various methods as suited to the preparedness and characteristics of young people, especially by means of such literary and artistic works as revolutionary songs, poems and novels.

He entrusted the youth league with the construction of the then Paektusan Songun Youth Power Station and led it to play the leading role as the shock brigade in all the sectors for building a thriving country, such as

the construction of other power stations and grand nature-remaking projects so as to demonstrate the heroic mettle of the Korean young people.

He paid close concern to developing the work of trade union, agricultural workers' union and women's union, so that they could steadily enhance their functions and role as ideological educators in uniting their members more firmly around the Party and rousing them to the worthwhile struggle to build a thriving nation.

On November 7, 2004, in a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, he said that the Party should direct close concern to the work of working people's organizations.

He went on to say:

“To steadily enhance the role of working people’s organizations is essential in building up the Party’s mass foundation, consolidating the single-hearted unity of the Party and the revolutionary ranks and mobilizing broad sections of the people in the revolution and construction. Steadily enhancing the functions and role of working people’s organizations through intensive Party guidance over them is our Party’s consistent principle in guiding the masses.”

Now it is time that the Party strengthened its guidance over working people's organizations to enhance their functions and role in every possible way, he continued. He added that historical experience showed that the Party must never neglect its guidance over working people's organizations and President Kim Il Sung had given constant priority to the work of these organizations including trade union. He underlined that the Party should lead working people's organizations to function properly as ideological educators and it should guide their ideological education work in a responsible manner.

Prioritizing women's role in building a thriving country, he had the women's union organizations direct close concern to training their members into women revolutionaries in the Songun era.

On October 21, 2004, when the country was facing severe difficulties, he received reports on a laudable woman.

At the age of 2, together with her parents, she came back to the country by a ship when the first batch of Koreans were repatriated from Japan. She

grew up enjoying free access to schooling and medical treatment. Through her life experience she realized that the worth of her true life lay in her life-long service to society and the collective, the country and people, the Party and revolution. She made up her mind to foster orphans. For more than ten years she took maternal care of 33 orphans. Fifteen of her children joined the army to defend the country.

Praising the mother of a large family for her ennobling spiritual world and patriotic devotion Kim Jong Il raised her as a mother hero of the Songun era and had some gifts sent to her.

An increasing number of women officials and other women gave full play to their lofty revolutionary spirit and indomitable willpower in the general offensive to build a thriving country. To congratulate these laudable women he arranged a grand artistic performance on March 8, 2008, to mark the 98th anniversary of the International Women's Day.

He enjoyed the performance together with meritorious women in Pyongyang—deputies to the Supreme People's Assembly, senior officials, writers, journalists, creative workers and artistes. After the performance was over, he had Pomhyanggi cosmetics presented as gifts to the participants and performers.

And to mark the 100th anniversary of the International Women's Day, he gave a talk, titled, *Let Us Glorify the Proud Tradition of the Juche-oriented Korean Women's Movement in the Great Struggle to Build a Thriving Country*. In this work he advanced tasks to be tackled by women's union organizations and all the Korean women.

He defined the Korean women's movement as the Juche-oriented revolutionary women's movement pioneered and developed under the leadership of President Kim Il Sung and the Party.

He said that under their leadership the Korean women's movement developed into the Juche-oriented movement which was boundlessly faithful to the leader's ideology and cause, into a revolutionary and militant movement in which all the women, united with one mind around the Party, were pushing one of the two wheels of the revolution. He also praised that the Korean women's movement was serving as a good example to the world progressive women's movements.

He went on to stress: Women's Union organizations and all the women have a heavy yet honourable revolutionary duty to push one of the two wheels of the grand struggle for building a thriving country. They should staunchly safeguard the glorious history and tradition of the Juche-oriented Korean women's movement and develop them at a higher level as demanded by the Songun era and the grand struggle for building a thriving country. This provides a sure guarantee for them to perform with credit their mission and duty and it is just the way to victory. They should take an active part in the Party-wide, all-people struggle to build a socialist economic giant on this land and improve the people's living standards decisively as demanded by the stirring era. In particular, women should bear in mind the President's remark **"Everything goes well in a harmonious family"** and should be fully conscious of their intrinsic duty as mothers, wives in charge of housework and daughters-in-law. They should strive to fulfil their moral obligation and commitments to their families and society.

Kim Jong Il pointed out that the Women's Union should put stress on developing its organizations at all levels into revolutionary groups loyal to the Party's leadership and conducting its work more proactively. He also underlined the need for Women's Union organizations to give effective guidance over their members' organizational life with the main emphasis put on the internal work of the union and to be efficient in conducting various forms of ideological education by various methods among its members and other women. Lastly, he emphasized that the Party should intensify its guidance over the women's movement and the work of the women's union.

4. DIRECTING GREAT EFFORTS TO STRENGTHENING THE GOVERNMENT OF THE DPRK

Kim Jong Il strengthened the people's government into a powerful instrument for implementing the revolutionary cause of Songun by applying President Kim Il Sung's idea of nation-building.

On January 3, 2001, he said to officials: You must not think that it is

unavoidable to weaken the Party and the people's government as we are pursuing Songun politics; Songun politics will prove more effective only when the Party and the people's government are strengthened further; to carry out the cause of socialism successfully we should promote the development of the Party, the army and the people's government in parallel.

With the aim of giving a comprehensive explanation of the problems in glorifying President Kim Il Sung's idea of nation-building and exploits and strengthening the government of the DPRK in line with the requirements of the new century, Kim Jong Il made public his discourse, titled, *The Democratic People's Republic of Korea Is a Juche-oriented Socialist State with Invincible Might*, on the Party newspaper *Rodong Sinmun* and the government organ *Minju Joson* dated September 5, 2008.

First of all, he recollected with deep emotion the DPRK's history of grand struggle and victories, creation and changes in which the Korean people under the guidance of the great leader and the great Party weathered the tempest of revolution to defend their country's independence and dignity and develop theirs into a prospering socialist nation. He said that by applying the great Juche idea in its building and activities the country is demonstrating to the world its might as a people-centred socialist state in which the people are worshipped like God, an independent socialist state which is strong in the Juche character and national identity, and an invincible socialist state that can repulse any formidable enemy and overcome all manner of trials and difficulties on the strength of Songun.

He underlined the need to strengthen the government of the DPRK by implementing President Kim Il Sung's idea and theory of nation-building and the Party's line of nation-building in the Songun era.

He said:

“The government of our Republic, based on the Party's lines and policies, should develop our country's social system and push forward all undertakings for the revolution and construction. The people's government organs and officials should improve their style and method of work in line with the requirements of the times and the developing revolution. Thus they should perform their mission and role with credit and fulfil their basic duty as servants for the people.”

Noting that Party organizations should give effective political and policy-oriented guidance over the people's government organs in performing their mission and duty, he stressed that as a powerful instrument in the revolution and construction the government of the DPRK should accelerate their progress under the Party's Songun-based leadership to accomplish the cause of the President, the revolutionary cause of Juche.

He strengthened the government of the DPRK into a powerful political instrument of the Songun revolution on the strength of single-hearted unity.

The year 2003 was significant in that it saw the simultaneous holding of elections of deputies to the 11th Supreme People's Assembly and provincial, city and county People's Assemblies.

The Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly made public a decision and report on launching on August 3 that year the elections of deputies to the 11th Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK and People's Assemblies of provinces (municipalities directly under the central authority), cities (districts) and counties. Soon the central election committee and local election committees were organized and began to work.

Radios and songs for the purpose of information activities could be heard in all parts of the country.

Upon release of the statement on the elections, voters across the country met in their respective constituencies to nominate candidates for deputies to the 11th Supreme People's Assembly.

At the voters' meeting held on July 1, 2003, at the Jongsung Square, Pyongyang, it was declared that Kim Jong Il was nominated as candidate for constituency No. 649. The voters at all other constituencies followed suit.

On the 7th, the Korean Central News Agency announced that the service personnel of the Korean People's Army and other voters at all the constituencies in the country, ranging from its northernmost part to Pyongyang and cities near the Military Demarcation Line, nominated Kim Jong Il as a candidate for the deputy to the Supreme People's Assembly in reflection of the unanimous aspiration and wish of the whole nation.

On the 10th, three days later, Kim Jong Il sent an open letter to all the voters in the country to express his thanks for their confidence in him.

The letter reads in part:

“I, in support of the great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung’s idea of believing in the people as in heaven, will, in the future, too, work with devotion for the people, for the well-being of posterity, to prove myself worthy of the high trust in me of our service personnel and other people.

“The law of the DPRK on the election of deputies to the People’s Assemblies at all levels requires that a candidate for deputy register at only one constituency, so I have chosen to register as a candidate for deputy at constituency No. 649 for the election of deputies to the 11th Supreme People’s Assembly.”

He affirmed that the election, held on the meaningful occasion of the 55th anniversary of the DPRK, would become a grand political festival of historic significance demonstrating the might of Songun politics and single-hearted unity and the dignity and prestige of the invincible socialist country. He expressed his expectations that all voters would turn out as one in the election for the prosperity of their country and nation and for the strengthening of the people’s government, thus adding glory to their citizenship and fulfilling their civic duty.

On August 3, the elections of deputies to the 11th Supreme People’s Assembly and local power organs took place amid mounting political enthusiasm of all the service personnel and other people.

That day Kim Jong Il went to Kim Il Sung Military University and cast a ballot for an officer of the Korean People’s Army who was nominated as a candidate for the deputy to the Supreme People’s Assembly. Then he met the officer and told him to work harder and live up to the expectations of the Party and the people.

The election results illustrated the firm resolve of the patriotic people to strengthen the people’s government rock-solid under Kim Jong Il’s leadership and share their destiny with it to the last. Even those who had fled their hometown for fear of punishment for their crimes or because of temporary economic difficulties, returned home of their own accord to take part in the elections.

After seeing the elections foreigners said: Election methods are

people-oriented and this is good. What is more surprising is the fact that the people trust in their leader and they have been united with a single mind around him. Such an excellent system and such an excellent people will not be found elsewhere in the world.

On September 3, one month later, the First Session of the 11th Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK was convened at the Mansudae Assembly Hall.

The meeting re-elected Kim Jong Il to the chairmanship of the National Defence Commission of the DPRK, reflecting the unanimous aspiration of all the people.

The following day, Pyongyang hosted the celebrations of his re-election.

More than a million citizens attending the celebrations extended the greatest glory and congratulations to Kim Jong Il and expressed their determination to trust and follow him only and defend the leadership of the revolution headed by him even at the cost of their lives.

The Korean people demonstrated the true features of their single-hearted unity once again during the elections of deputies to the 12th Supreme People's Assembly.

The elections took place in 2009, when they were bringing about a new revolutionary upsurge on all fronts for building a thriving country, holding high the torch of Kangson kindled by Kim Jong Il.

On January 7, upon release of the decision of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly on holding the elections, the voters at all constituencies in the country met to nominate candidates.

On February 1, at the April 25 House of Culture, the voters of constituency No. 333 met to nominate Kim Jong Il as a candidate for the deputy to the 12th Supreme People's Assembly. Then the voters of all other constituencies including those for the army units did the same, expressing their absolute support for the leader.

On February 17, he sent an open letter to all the voters in the country. In the letter he expressed his warm thanks for all the voters' high trust in him, saying that he chose to register as a candidate for deputy at constituency No. 333 because the law of the DPRK on the election of deputies to the People's Assemblies at all levels requires that a candidate for deputy register at only one constituency.

The elections of deputies to the 12th Supreme People's Assembly took place on March 8.

That day, after inspecting Kim Il Sung University of Politics, Kim Jong Il took part in the election together with the service personnel. At the polling station he received a ballot from the chairman of the committee of sub-constituency No. 22 of constituency No. 342 and cast it in favour of an officer who was nominated as a candidate for deputy.

On April 9, when the whole country was bubbling over with jubilation following the successful launch of the artificial earth satellite Kwangmyongsong 2, the First Session of the 12th Supreme People's Assembly took place at the Mansudae Assembly Hall in the presence of Kim Jong Il. The meeting re-elected him Chairman of the National Defence Commission of the DPRK in reflection of all the people's unanimous desire.

He directed attention to enhancing the role of the people's government organs in implementing the revolutionary cause of Songun as demanded by the new century to demonstrate the might of the people's single-hearted unity around the Party and the leader.

He saw to it that the people's government organs took prompt measures to implement Party policy and organized and guided administrative and economic work carefully to carry out economic tasks with credit. He also had these organs establish stringent administrative discipline to ensure the strict enforcement of the laws and regulations of the state and thorough implementation of its decisions and directives, and resolve in a responsible manner the problems arising in the people's livelihood.

He saw the drama *We Will Recollect Today* and the feature film *Do the People Know You*, and spoke highly of them as they truthfully depicted the officials of the people's government organs working hard to fulfil their mission and basic duty as faithful servants for the people. He emphasized that officials, like the heroes of these works, should tide over difficulties by themselves and strive with devotion for the people's interests.

He had the people's government organs properly perform the function of the dictatorship of people's democracy and paid attention to ensuring the strict observance of the laws and order of the state.

He gave priority to the mission and duty the people's security organs

assumed in guaranteeing the security of the socialist system and protecting the people's lives and property. In December 2005 he arranged the National Conference of Activists in the People's Security Sector and sent a letter to those attending the conference. On later occasions he gave instructions on how to improve the work of this sector and bestowed great trust and affection on security officers.

One day, informed about an official of the Ministry of People's Security who, though seriously ill, was performing his duty responsibly, Kim Jong Il had immediate steps taken to cure him. In May 2005, he was told that an officer of the People's Security Bureau of North Hamgyong Province had lost his life while detecting explosives, and ensured that he was awarded the title of Hero of the DPRK.

In February 2007 he arranged the National Conference of Law-Enforcement Officials and sent a letter to those attending the conference, titled, *Let Us Establish Strict Revolutionary Legal Order in the Songun Era by Strengthening the Socialist Life of Law Observance.*

In this letter he defined the major revolutionary duty of the law-enforcement organs and officials in the Songun era—strengthening the socialist life of law observance and establishing strict revolutionary legal order as demanded by the prevailing situation and the developing reality to defend the Party, revolution and state social system, maintain and consolidate social stability and unity, and provide a legal guarantee for building a thriving socialist country. And then he put forth tasks and ways for its implementation.

On January 23, 2010, he visited the courtroom of the newly-built Central Court. He recalled that in the 1950s when some unsound people were claiming that the state's dictatorship should be one for the united front, Kim Il Sung repudiated the absurd claim and clarified the essence of the dictatorship of the people's government.

Then he said: The problem of dictatorship is very important since we are conducting the revolution and construction amid an acute class struggle. Our dictatorship of people's democracy is a powerful instrument to defend the interests and human rights of all the people, masters of the state and society, including workers, farmers, service personnel and intellectuals, and

protect the people's power and the socialist system against destructive schemes by hostile elements at home and abroad. Only when we strengthen the dictatorship of people's democracy, can we champion the interests of all the working people, ensure them an independent and creative life, isolate the tiny number of hostile elements and frustrate their vicious moves before it is too late. This is also important in foiling the acts of hostility against the country by imperialists and reactionaries, non-socialist practices and other illegal actions, and in providing a legal guarantee for building a thriving socialist country. Judicial organs hold an important position in strengthening the dictatorship of people's democracy. As supreme legal organs that try criminal and civil cases and make a final judgment on them, they perform the function of the dictatorship of people's democracy.

Kim Jong Il went on to say:

“Judicial organs should take legal actions in a principled and equitable way according to the Party’s judicial policy and the relevant national law. In doing so, they should constantly maintain their independence and properly exercise their authority, putting the main emphasis on dealing with all cases in an unquestionably correct and fair manner.”

He stressed that education in law observance should be widely conducted in various forms and by various methods in conformity with the judicial authority, so as to make an active contribution to preventing crimes and illegal actions and setting up a climate of revolutionary law observance across society.

CHAPTER 45

TO ADD LUSTRE TO THE REVOLUTIONARY TRADITIONS OF PAEKTU

1. PRESERVING THE REVOLUTIONARY BATTLE SITES AND OTHER HISTORIC PLACES IN THEIR ORIGINAL STATE

In March 2000, while looking round the revolutionary battle sites in the Mt Paektu area, Kim Jong Il conceived a plan to lay out the area well with an eye to the future and preserve the sites in their original state.

With determination to lay out the area better and hand it down to posterity, he said:

“As we have entered a new millennium, we should approach things from a fresh point of view, putting to rights what have to be put to rights and laying out again what have to be laid out again.”

On June 18 he told officials that it was important to intensify education in the revolutionary traditions as demanded by the developing reality, stressing that the Information and Publicity Department of the Party Central Committee should pay close concern to laying out the Paektusan Secret Camp where the Korean revolution took roots and originated, as well as Samjiyon County. On September 20 he inquired about the overall state of the revolutionary battle sites and other historic places in the Mt Paektu area, and underlined the need to improve their appearance in line with the requirements of the new century. And he ensured that a construction force was formed on the country-wide scale to carry out the project.

True to his intention tens of thousands of Party information officials, primary information officials, workers and young people came to Mt Paektu

from all parts of the country.

On November 24 they gathered at the education yard in front of the bronze statue of Kim Il Sung near Lake Samji, which commands an extensive view of Mt Paektu, and held a ceremony to break ground for the construction of the revolutionary battle sites and other historic places in the Mt Paektu area. After the ceremony they bucked down to the project.

As the project started, Kim Jong Il saw that it proceeded as intended by the Party.

On November 27 he made the rounds of the Samjiyon Grand Monument and the Phoehae area. He pointed to the necessity of keeping the principle of ensuring fidelity to historical facts in carrying out the construction project. Then he said that lumbermen's villages should have their unique features and they should not look like holiday resorts or fairyland, adding that it was the effective way to educate the people.

Afterwards, he set preserving the primeval forests in the area and covering it with trees as an important task. On the occasion of the Arbor Day in 2001 he had tree-planting conducted as a campaign involving all the local people.

In May 2001 he learned about the progress of the project and said that the revolutionary battle sites in the Mt Paektu area should not be built to look like cities and the officials in charge of the project should have a correct viewpoint.

He kept up-to-date with how the project was going on and resolved all problems to ensure the best quality of the project.

In January that year he said that as construction should be completed in a short period, it was necessary to send equipment, materials and other necessary supplies within the first half of the year and ensure the best quality of structures. Soon he took steps to normalize rail transport in the northern area so as to promptly carry equipment and materials to the construction sites. In November and December 2000, in February 2001 and on other occasions he extended his thanks to the anti-Japanese war veterans, officials and employees of the Sangwon Cement Complex, and other people across the country who were rendering their whole-hearted assistance to the construction project. He saw to it that their laudable deeds were given wide

publicity and generalized across the Party, the army and the state.

The shock brigade members completed the first stage of the project by September 2001 and began the second stage in the following month, finishing it by the end of September the next year.

For a couple of years after the ground-breaking ceremony they performed great feats of labour to spruce up the area as befits the sacred place of the Korean revolution—rebuilding the bronze statue of Kim Il Sung in the Chongbong bivouac, setting up the Monument to the Victorious Battles in the Musan Area, building, renovating and repairing over 120 structures, constructing over 3 600 houses with electric heating, public buildings, power stations and roads, and creating forests.

In October 2002, when the third stage of the project was under way, Kim Jong Il looked round the township of Samjiyon County, Mubong Workers' District and the newly-built Monument to the Victorious Battles in the Musan Area.

Making the rounds of the places for two days, he praised the shock brigade members and specified such tasks as resolving the problem of electricity and building a schoolchildren's palace and a hall of culture in the county.

By 2006 the Mt Paektu area was laid out in a splendid way.

In early March that year Kim Jong Il visited Samjiyon County Town and looked round the new buildings such as Samjiyon Schoolchildren's Palace, Hall of Culture in the county, Sports Village in the Mt Paektu area and Pegaebong Noodle House. He spoke highly of the builders, underlining the need to build structures in ways that would be cost-effective and sustain their local characteristics, design dining rooms for public use in the restaurants and keep the new buildings under regular maintenance.

On March 3, despite the howling snowstorm, he inspected the construction site of the Samsu Power Station, which would be of decisive importance in easing the strain on electricity in the Mt Paektu area.

In October 2002, during his visit to the Mubong Workers' District in Samjiyon County, Ryanggang Province, he pointed out that the problem of electricity should be fully resolved for the convenience of the local people, adding that enough electricity should be supplied for heating to prevent

trees from being felled in the revolutionary battle sites.

The shock brigade members completed the construction of seven units of the Rimyongsu Power Station by 2003, and in 2004 began to build the Samsu Power Station. They finished over 70% of dam-building in one year and nine months, opening sure prospects for completing the project in a little more than two years.

Seeing the shock brigade members working hard, Kim Jong Il said: The builders here made a firm resolve to finish the huge project of building the power station by their own efforts although they are facing an adverse natural environment and shortage of everything. By giving full play to the revolutionary soldier spirit and the spirit of thorough implementation they achieved a miraculous success to the admiration of the people. They are laudable, indeed.

Then he asked officials to convey his thanks to all the builders. After inspecting the construction site of the Samsu Power Station, he, together with the shock brigade members, saw a performance given at the Hall of Culture in Samjiyon County by the then State Merited Chorus of the Korean People's Army.

In June 2006, the shock brigade members completed the major part of the project, including dam-building and assembling of generating equipment.

With the Mt Paektu area acquiring a better appearance at the beginning of the new century, a sure guarantee was provided for defending the revolutionary traditions of Paektu and stepping up education in them as demanded by the times.

Kim Jong Il led the efforts to spruce up the revolutionary battle sites and other historic places in other parts of the country.

He visited many places and gave instructions on how to erect monuments to revolutionary relics in a proper way and restore to their original state the places that had been laid out like a park or had artificial decorations.

The following happened in April 2003, when he was looking round the revolutionary battle site in the Sinhung coal-mining area in Yonggwang County.

Seeing the trees around the Taedong evening school and the house of a chief of the anti-Japanese association, he advised that revolutionary battle sites and other historic places should be restored to their original state on the principle of fidelity to historical facts, not laid out like a park.

He said: If you build such historic places like a park by planting good species of trees, instead of trying to preserve them in their original state, it may not have a good effect on the new generations. When the revolutionary battle sites are built like a park as this one is, visitors cannot have a proper understanding of the arduousness of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. It is of no significance to build revolutionary battle sites and other historic places like a park.

He continued, **“In Yonggwang County they should build the county itself like a park, not the revolutionary battle site and other historic places. Such places should be covered with trees.”**

With these instructions as a guideline a nation-wide campaign was conducted to restore the existing revolutionary battle sites and other historic places to their original state. Efforts were also made to build the newly-discovered places according to the relevant materials and set up appropriate sizes of monuments to revolutionary relics.

2. CONDUCTING A WIDER AND DEEPER STUDY OF THE REVOLUTIONARY TRADITIONS

To carry forward the revolutionary traditions of Paektu Kim Jong Il put emphasis on bringing home to the people the immortal revolutionary exploits of President Kim Il Sung.

One November day in 2002 he saw Part 17 of the film *For National Liberation*, which was adapted from the President’s memoirs *With the Century*. This part dealt with the Arduous March described in chapters 19 and 20 of the book’s seventh volume (continuing edition).

After watching it Kim Jong Il gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, saying: Whenever the situation grows complex and grave, I gain new strength and courage while recollecting the history of

the President's revolutionary activities. Today, seeing the film adapted from his memoirs, I have keenly realized once again how convinced he was in the victory of the revolution and how unyielding his courage and revolutionary spirit were. I have hardened up my determination to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by the President, whatever the adversity. I am now leading the revolution and construction with confidence in the certainty of victory and with great courage. Wielding a sword when the enemy are drawing a knife and levelling a cannon when they are pointing a gun is our Party's faith, will and courage. When all the people in the country have such faith and courage, which were possessed by the President and are carried forward by our Party, they can frustrate any challenge by the enemy, build a thriving socialist country on this land and accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche.

He went on to say:

“We must ensure that Party members, soldiers, working people and youth study further the history of President Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary activities.

“The history of his revolutionary activities is the root and eternal cornerstone of our Party and our revolution. This history continues thanks to our Party, enjoying eternal vitality.”

Noting that the pictorial records of the President's revolutionary activities are a good textbook giving a visual depiction of his history, he underlined the need to improve, as required by the developing revolution, the operation of the then Room for the Study of Comrade Kim Il Sung's Revolutionary Ideology and other education rooms, so that Party members, soldiers, working people, youth and schoolchildren could study the President's revolutionary history in a systematic and comprehensive way. That day he put special stress on the study of the President's memoirs.

He said: Making a close study of the President's memoirs in addition to the pictorial records of his revolutionary activities will help towards acquiring a wider and deeper knowledge of his revolutionary history. The memoirs give a historical and emotional depiction of the materials concerning his revolutionary activities, real persons and incidents. They teach the fundamentals of the revolution and portray life and struggle, so

readers will easily understand the President's revolutionary history and gain a deep impression from it. This proves the influence and persuasiveness of the books.

He was lost in thought for a good while, and resumed: A few years ago, I dropped in at the workers' hostel of an enterprise in Jagang Province and asked what kind of books young people liked these days. They answered that they liked the President's memoirs best, saying that the books were not available in large numbers and many people could not read them. They asked me to send the books in sufficient numbers. The memoirs should be printed in sufficient numbers so that soldiers, youth and many other people can read them. It is also necessary to make good arrangements for watching the films adapted from the memoirs.

Afterwards, a Party-wide campaign was conducted to study the President's revolutionary history at the Rooms for the Study of Comrade Kim Il Sung's Revolutionary Ideology. The President's memoirs were reprinted, and the sequels to the above films were produced and widely disseminated through education networks and TV. Factories and enterprises set up rooms for the study of the memoirs for their employees.

In August 2007, during his visit to a factory, Kim Jong Il looked round the room for the study of the President's memoirs.

The factory Party committee, true to his instructions on intensifying the study of the memoirs, set up this room. It was furnished with a TV and a video player so that the employees could watch the films on a regular basis. Under a detailed plan it had them make a close study of the books and conducted effective education of them.

In the room with hundreds of seats Kim Jong Il saw one of the films adapted from the memoirs on TV screen. After a long while, he said: It is praiseworthy that under its own plan the factory conducts education of its employees by encouraging them to study the memoirs every day with the workshop as a unit. Today, looking round the factory, I am very pleased to see the well-furnished room for the study of the President's memoirs and learn that effective education is being conducted there. Stepping up education of the employees is the way to keep them in a sound ideological and spiritual state.

In January 2008, at the Kanggye Chicken Farm, he looked round the rooms for education by means of revolutionary relics and for the study of the memoirs, speaking highly of their good furnishing.

He paid due concern to education in the greatness of the leader and the revolutionary traditions by means of such books as *Reminiscences of the Anti-Japanese Guerrillas* and *Among the People*.

These two books had since long ago been popular with the Korean people and even foreigners, because they portray the President's undying revolutionary exploits and great traits on the basis of historical facts and personal experiences.

In April 2003, Kim Jong Il said: It is advisable in writing books about the President to edit in a proper way the reminiscences of the officials who were on good terms with him, as described in *Among the People*. These reminiscences were written long ago, so there must be something to be added or revised. If they are edited well, they will serve as good historical records of our President's great career and achievements.

In June the same year he had the *Reminiscences of the Anti-Japanese Guerrillas* and the *Anti-Japanese Guerrillas' Reminiscences about Battles* published under one title *Reminiscences of the Anti-Japanese Guerrillas*.

Great efforts were made to reprint the President's memoirs and publish *Among the People*, *Reminiscences of the Anti-Japanese Guerrillas* and other books dealing with the great exploits of the President.

After taking steps to publish and disseminate these revolutionary books, Kim Jong Il directed attention to ensuring that the people, by reading them, understood the greatness of the Party and the leader.

In October 2005, while inspecting an army unit, he said:

“The *Reminiscences of the Anti-Japanese Guerrillas* is our Party's precious treasure that is of great significance in the revolutionary education of the new generation.”

He continued: In former years all units used to have a session for reading the reminiscences before beginning their daily work. Now there are few that do so. And few soldiers know what *Comrades! Please Take This Pistol!* is about. When they read this memoir, they will appreciate how precious their weapons are. They should read the *Reminiscences of the*

Anti-Japanese Guerrillas to understand how our revolution was pioneered. Now young people like to read new novels, but usually they do not read such books as the *Reminiscences of the Anti-Japanese Guerrillas*.

He emphasized that there could not be a leap forward in ideological work, saying that they should read the reminiscences first and then novels.

Soon afterwards, journalists in the mass media wrote an article with his instructions as the theme, with the aim of making a contribution to the education of the people.

In December 2005, after reading the article, Kim Jong Il summoned writers and journalists. Saying that he read the article titled *The Great Treasure in Carrying Forward the Lineage of the Revolution*, he praised them for having written it true to the Party's intention.

We should staunchly safeguard, carry forward and develop our Party's revolutionary traditions for all ages, and accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered on Paektu, he said. He stressed that its ideological work should be geared, from beginning to end, to defending and developing the Party's ideological and theoretical assets created by the President.

3. PROMOTING TOURS OF REVOLUTIONARY BATTLE SITES AND OTHER HISTORIC PLACES

On November 25, 2002, Kim Jong Il underlined the need to promote tours of revolutionary battle sites and other historic places, stressing that they are bases for education through real relics associated with President Kim Il Sung's revolutionary history.

He said:

“Party organizations and other political organs at all levels should better lay out the sites and arrange visits to them in a planned and significant way so that Party members, soldiers, working people and youth can more deeply understand the history of the President's revolutionary activities.”

He saw to it that tours of revolutionary battle sites and other historic places were arranged effectively to make the visitors well aware of the

President's revolutionary career and exploits and the revolutionary forerunners' ennobling spirit.

He himself looked round the newly-discovered revolutionary battle sites and other historic places including the Ongnyonsan Secret Camp in the revolutionary battle site of the Sinhung area. He pointed out that the secret camp should be included in the list of revolutionary sites for regular national tours, so as to bring home to the visitors the imperishable revolutionary exploits of the President and the anti-Japanese war heroine Kim Jong Suk.

At the onset of the new century he paid concern to arranging tours of these sites in a politically significant way, on an intensive and extensive scale.

The regular national tours of the revolutionary sites continued non-stop even in the latter half of the 1990s when the people were undergoing the Arduous March. These tours were arranged more actively, following Kim Jong Il's field guidance trip to the revolutionary battle sites in the Mt Paektu area in March 2000.

In 2001 alone, 1.56 million people toured the revolutionary battle sites and other historic places in and around the sacred mountain of the Korean revolution, and more than 25.5 million visited other revolutionary sites across the country.

In particular, national tours of various forms were arranged on such major anniversaries as February 16, Kim Jong Il's birthday, and June 19, the day when he started working at the Party Central Committee.

In February 2002 the service personnel made a march, despite the cold weather in winter, to Kim Jong Il's native home in the Paektusan Secret Camp, and the youth league, trade union and other working people's organizations organized large-scale tours of the revolutionary battle sites in the Mt Paektu area. To mark the Day of the Sun that year, over 4 000 young workers and schoolchildren toured the revolutionary site in Mangyongdae, and one-day or short-term visits to the site arranged by the units in different regions became a tradition.

The year 2006 saw the 50th anniversary of Kim Jong Il's initiation of the visit to the revolutionary battle sites in the Mt Paektu area and the first tour led by him.

On the occasion of this significant anniversary, Party information officials and service personnel from all parts of the country visited the revolutionary battle sites in the Mt Paektu area. Touring these sites and the Samjiyon area, they hardened up their determination to accelerate the building of a thriving socialist country and carry the revolutionary cause of Juche through to completion under the banner of Songun, invariably holding fast to the revolutionary traditions of Paektu.

4. EFFECTING A FRESH TURN IN THE EDUCATIONAL WORK AT THE BASES FOR EDUCATION BY MEANS OF REVOLUTIONARY RELICS

Kim Jong Il made great efforts to improve the education in the revolutionary traditions in line with the requirements of the new century. He paid particular concern to the educational work at the revolutionary museums and other bases for education by means of revolutionary relics.

True to his intention the sector for the preservation of revolutionary relics waged an intensive campaign to improve the education by means of the relics. However, they had yet to rid themselves of their stereotyped thinking and viewpoint.

On August 26, 2001, after rounding off his trip to the Russian Federation, Kim Jong Il visited the Ryongpho Revolutionary Site.

In April 1951, during the Fatherland Liberation War, Kim Il Sung inspected an army unit defending the eastern coast in the Wonsan area. In a simple rural house he advanced Juche-oriented original strategy and tactics, and bestowed warm affection on the soldiers.

Looking round the revolutionary site associated with Kim Il Sung's exploits, Kim Jong Il was unhappy about one thing: The rural houses Kim Il Sung visited during the war were all poorly-furnished, but the museum in the heart of the revolutionary site was a modern building occupying a wide area.

He stood speechless for a while and recalled what he had heard during his recent trip from Defence Minister Yazov of the former Soviet Union

about his impression of the DPRK: Yazov visited the DPRK on several occasions. He would go to the Fatherland Liberation War historic site to recollect the exploits performed by Kim Il Sung in winning the war. One day, in his talk with Kim Jong Il, he said that still vivid in his memory were the single-storeyed offices used by Kim Il Sung during the Korean war, the small room for operations and the simple dining room. He added in an emotional tone that he could not forget how Kim Il Sung raised chicken and grew vegetables to cause no inconvenience to the local residents. He mentioned nothing about the revolutionary museum built in the historic site.

Finishing his story, Kim Jong Il said: I have been to Kosanjin, Sungap-ri and many other revolutionary sites associated with President Kim Il Sung's activities during the Fatherland Liberation War. Still fresh in my memory are the half-underground houses and other plain homes in the countryside, all visited by him. What is basic in the work related with the revolutionary relics is to preserve the historic buildings and other relics in their original state. And only the materials concerning the revolutionary sites should be displayed at the museums for the purposes of explanation to the visitors.

Kim Jong Il looked round the revolutionary museum for long hours, pointing out mistakes, and then said to the officials, **“When the docents are giving visitors lectures about the materials in the revolutionary museums and sites, it should be ensured that the latter sit on benches.”**

It was considered quite natural that visitors to the revolutionary museums and sites followed the docents, listening to their explanation, so officials were confused by his instruction. Kim Jong Il told them that the problem of whether the visitors to the revolutionary museums and sites would stand or sit while listening to the docents' lectures should be treated as a problem of the viewpoint of the masses, adding that it would be good to let the visitors sit comfortably and listen to the lectures.

He reiterated that at all the revolutionary museums and sites visitors should be made to take seats and listen to the docent's explanation, and then look round the exhibits, stressing that this should be done at other museums and exhibition halls.

In April 2009, during his visit to the then Museum of Comrade Kim Il Sung's Revolutionary Activities in Kangwon Province, he pointed out that benches had not yet been set up in the museum and this showed the officials' incorrect viewpoint of the masses. Then he told them to install benches in the rooms for the convenience of visitors.

He also presented matters of principle in building revolutionary museums.

On the day when he visited the above museum, he said that in the future the designs of revolutionary museums should conform with the somatological standards.

Somatology is the branch of science related with the analysis of human activities, physical conditions and mental phenomena, and the design of appropriate tools, furniture and buildings.

In the past a revolutionary museum was designed to have rooms with high ceilings and the photos were placed on top of the walls. It was deemed inevitable that the reflections on the photos from the illumination of electric bulbs caused inconvenience to the visitors.

That day Kim Jong Il saw a photo taken in March 1958 when Kim Il Sung was inspecting the then Wonsan Railway Factory. He advised that all the lustrous photos should be unglazed and bright illuminations, spotlight in particular, be installed.

In August 2007, when looking round the revolutionary museum of the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex, and in February 2009, at the then Museum of Comrade Kim Jong Suk's Revolutionary Activities, he gave advice on the floor height of revolutionary museums. He also stressed that the museums should not have many windows, that the rooms should be big enough and the partition plates used if necessary, and that the size of buildings and their ceiling height should be set appropriately.

He directed attention to improving the contents and methods of education by means of revolutionary relics in line with the requirements of the new century.

He made sure that a new hall was set up in every revolutionary museum to exhibit materials concerning the history of comradeship between Korean revolutionaries.

In early June 2006 he said that the hall of President Kim Il Sung and his comrades-in-arms in the Korean Revolution Museum is a base for education illustrating the glorious history of the Korean revolution which was pioneered and advanced victoriously by dint of comradeship.

He added that even foreign visitors, to say nothing of the Korean service personnel and other people, were deeply moved to see the exhibits about the President's great affection for his revolutionary comrades and their unwavering loyalty to him.

Back in mid-July 1998 he recalled that the President had led the revolution and construction sharing weal and woe with his comrades-in-arms all the time. Then he proposed displaying at the Korean Revolution Museum the orders, weapons, clothes, epaulettes and other materials left by the faithful veterans, in addition to those associated with the President's revolutionary activities. Noting that it will help towards honouring the President's leadership exploits and traits, he named the hall for displaying those materials **Hall of President Kim Il Sung and His Comrades-in-Arms**.

Since its opening in April 1999 the hall attracted great public attention.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the docents at revolutionary museums gave lectures about the revolutionary relics in conformity with the visitors' characteristics.

Until then it was a matter of common concern to the officials at the museums. However, lectures were still given in a monotonous way with the main emphasis on explaining the exhibits in detail.

Kim Jong Il once listened to a lecture on the general relief map at the introduction hall of the Museum of Comrade Kim Il Sung's Revolutionary Activities in Kangwon Province.

As for the lecture he said: The docents should give a lecture on the general relief map in a simple and plain way, not in such a way that they give it to primary schoolchildren. They should tell visitors that the lights on the relief map indicate the units visited by the President, informing them of the number of the units. In delivering a lecture they should take into account the characteristics of the visitors and their preparedness. Without considering these, they simply follow stereotyped patterns. They have to

consider the characteristics of the visitors and their preparedness and demands, allowing those interested in the photos and other exhibits of the museums to see them and giving others an explanation of them.

In July 2008 Kim Jong Il said in a similar vein: Visitors to the revolutionary museums differ from one another in qualification, job and age. The docents should not give lectures to the south Koreans, overseas compatriots and foreigners, the way they do to our people. They should employ various methods and skills in accordance with the characteristics of the visitors.

As part of a measure to improve the contents and methods of education by means of revolutionary relics as demanded by the new century, Kim Jong Il had information technology introduced in the bases for education in the revolutionary traditions.

In October 2002 he looked round the Paektu House newly built in Samjiyon County.

This building had not been included in the formation plan for the construction of the Samjiyon Area.

Two years ago, when visiting the Mt Paektu area, he stressed the need to conduct effective and proactive education through the revolutionary battle sites and other historic places in the area, so as to equip the people with the Party's revolutionary traditions.

According to these instructions, the shock brigade members agreed on building in the area an IT centre for guiding visitors and giving them a comprehensive explanation of the history of the anti-Japanese revolutionary activities of the peerlessly great persons of Mt Paektu. Thanks to their tireless efforts, the Paektu House was set up splendidly in a short period.

After looking round the building Kim Jong Il said: It is praiseworthy that this building has been newly put up as a comprehensive base for guiding the visitors to the revolutionary battle sites and other historic places in the Mt Paektu area. It is natural that such a building is in the Samjiyon area. It is innovative to install computers at the Paektusan Secret Camp introduction room for visitors to refer to necessary information. Rather than displaying the materials related with the revolutionary relics on the walls and in other spaces, it would be better to input relevant data into the

computers so that visitors can consult them. More information should be put into the computers.

Kim Jong Il went up a spiral staircase to the second floor. There he found a soft drinks bar in one corner and a souvenir shop in the other.

For a while he stood speechless at the bar and said: The Paektu House has been furnished as a base for education, so the counter and souvenir shop here are not suitable to the mission of the building. It should, to all intents and purposes, serve as a base for education in the revolutionary traditions. It is advisable to set up computer rooms on the second floor. And then the computers, which you were planning to put in the introduction rooms on the first floor, should be placed on the second floor. Each introduction room on the first floor should have one computer, to be used when giving visitors a summary lecture about the relevant materials. Those who want to delve deeper into the historical facts including those concerning the revolutionary battle sites, should be guided to the computer rooms on the second floor. If some people ask for more details about the Battle of Pochonbo, you should guide them to the Paektu House to use the computers on the second floor in looking for necessary information, rather than telling them to go to the Pochonbo Revolutionary Museum.

In July 2008 Kim Jong Il said:

“The present is the era of science and technology, the IT era. All sectors and all units are making proactive efforts for IT introduction and modernization, upholding the Party’s line of attaching importance to science and technology. The sector for the preservation of revolutionary relics should keep pace with them.”

Then he pointed to the urgent necessity of setting up e-reading areas and building database and of establishing a computer network connecting revolutionary museums in a prospective way.

Shortly afterwards, a database containing information related with six regions was built in the Paektu House and an electronic reading system for a vast amount of information set up in the Korean Revolution Museum. During his visits to the Marum Revolutionary Site in Sunam District, Chongjin, in February 2007 and the then Museum of Comrade Kim Il Sung’s Revolutionary Activities in Jagang Province in May the

same year, Kim Jong Il praised the officials for developing multimedia presentations on the relevant revolutionary relics and using them in educating the visitors.

True to his instructions the staff of revolutionary museums and rooms for education in the revolutionary relics across the country strove hard to develop such presentations to be used in the lectures on the exploits of the peerlessly great persons of Mt Paektu.

5. LOOKING ROUND THE HISTORIC SITES IN HOERYONG

To Kim Jong Il, Hoeryong was an unforgettable place recalling memories of his mother Kim Jong Suk.

In July 1954, in company with Kim Il Sung, he visited the then Hoeryong County for the first time.

That day he made the rounds of Osan Hill and the Pharul Stream with deep yearning for his mother. He made a firm determination to support Kim Il Sung with loyalty and turn the country into a people's fairyland at the earliest possible date as wished by her.

On February 24, 2009, he re-visited the birthplace of his mother.

Early in the morning he arrived at the education yard of her native home.

After gazing reflectively at the home, he said in a low voice: At my mother's native home, I feel my heart overflowing with deep emotion. I had the urge to visit Hoeryong whenever I was missing my mother, but I could not find the time to do so because of my heavy workload. In the 1970s, when guiding the construction of the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site, I passed by Hoeryong on the train several times. Yet I could not spare the time to come here.

The officials in his company were moved to tears, thinking of the anti-Japanese war heroine who had not been back to her birthplace.

She left her birthplace at 5 and, for two decades, went through fire and water on a foreign land. To her, Hoeryong was a place bringing back vivid

memories of her childhood and evoking warm affection for her relatives and the country.

She decided to visit Hoeryong above all else after defeating the Japanese imperialists and liberating the country, but she could not realize her wish.

She was working in Chongjin after returning to the homeland following its liberation, and on December 14, 1945, went to Puryong to learn about the reconstruction of the Puryong Metallurgical Factory and Komusan Cement Factory.

At the Puryong Metallurgical Factory she, accompanied by the officials of its reconstruction committee, met the workers who were repairing transformers and electric furnace. She told them that technology would be important, but what was more important in reconstructing the factory destroyed by the Japanese imperialists was their confidence and determination to do it by their own efforts. She called on them to strive to rebuild it into a splendid factory.

As she was talking with the workers, a girl appeared with a kettle in her hand. She poured her a glass of hot water.

She asked the girl about her family and was very pleased to learn that she hailed from Hoeryong. Stroking her hands, she yearned for her native home with teary eyes.

Hoeryong, which she had so much longed to see since she left it in her childhood, was not very far. It was not a long drive from the factory to her birthplace.

The anti-Japanese war veterans in her company decided to visit it with her without fail. They left the factory for Komusan. When their car arrived at a fork, they advised her to visit the cement factory on the way back from Hoeryong. They told the driver to go straight to her birthplace. She had him halt the car and got off it.

She gazed in the direction of Hoeryong and then said: After setting out the line of building a new Korea, General Kim Il Sung is making tireless efforts to implement it, even skipping meals and without having a good rest. It is not right for me to visit my birthplace now. I have to finish my work here as soon as possible and go back to Pyongyang to defend him.

This is how she went to the Komusan Cement Factory, though her

native home was within a hailing distance.

Kim Jong Il yearned so much for this historic place but postponed his visit. Always kept in his mind were his mother's wish for the well-being of all the Korean people and her behest that he should support the leader with loyalty.

He said to teary-eyed officials: My mother did not return to her birthplace at Hoeryong, either. After she came back to the homeland her comrades-in-arms tried to persuade her to visit Hoeryong on several occasions. Each time, however, she declined, saying that she was unable to pay a visit then and would find the time later because she had many pressing issues to deal with in assisting General Kim Il Sung, so she delayed her visit and ultimately failed to come here. Her birthplace at Hoeryong is a historic site that brings back deep memories of my mother. She was born and spent her childhood in a poor family. Her family was so destitute that they lived in a small room attached to someone else's house, as you can see. Few people today would believe that a great revolutionary was born in such a house. My mother's was a patriotic and revolutionary family that, in the years of national distress, fought the Japanese aggressors for the good of their country and people. As she was born and grew up in such a family, my mother at a young age harboured a bitter hatred for the Japanese imperialists, the enemy who were imposing every manner of misfortune and suffering on our people. So she was resolute in her decision to take part in the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle led by the great leader, and earned a worldwide reputation as a woman general of the guerrilla army.

Kim Jong Il stepped into the yard and looked round the house.

He saw the household goods and farm implements permeated with the sweat of his mother and her family members. Then he moved to the shed and then the backyard. There he saw a storehouse where hoes, baskets and other tools were kept, which her family used in tilling the rented land. Beside it were earthen jars.

After looking round the house, he came back to the education yard and gazed at the house again.

Then he said in a quiet voice: At the age of 5 my mother and her parents

left this house for north Jiandao. They probably felt they were forced to cross the Tuman River since her father, who was involved in the independence movement, was subjected to severe persecution by the Japanese police and they were deprived of even their small plot of rented land.

The officials told him that in the spot where he was standing, President Kim Il Sung posed for a camera, offering to take a photograph of him there.

At first he declined but, urged by them, posed for a photograph in front of his mother's native home.

Then they moved to the then Museum of Comrade Kim Jong Suk's Revolutionary Activities.

After looking round the museum, he said to the officials: From her early years when she embarked on the road of revolution, to the last moment of her life, my mother worked with devotion for the leader, for national liberation and the victory of the revolution, and for the people's well-being. You should renovate the museum and conduct effective education through it. Large numbers of people visit the museum, and you should give them a good understanding of our Party's revolutionary traditions and the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters' ennobling revolutionary spirit.

That day Kim Jong Il climbed Osan Hill to see the bronze statue of his mother. It depicted her with a bright smile wearing military uniform and a cap with a five-pointed star and holding a bunch of azalea flowers in her hands, just as she had done during the anti-Japanese war.

He stood in front of the statue for a long while and said in a choking voice:

“Gazing at the bronze statue of my mother in Hoeryong, my yearning for her grows stronger. She passed away too early.”

After a minute he continued: My mother's life, though short, was truly worthwhile. Before being a mother to a family, she was a loyal revolutionary soldier of the great leader and his closest comrade, a daughter of our country and people. She embarked on the road of revolution in her early years and, to the last moment of her life, devoted herself heart and soul to the leader, the country and the people. There has been no such a great mother in the world as mine, who devoted her entire life to her leader,

country and people. Hers was a life of loyalty to the leader, of struggle for the revolution and of devotion to the people's well-being. Indeed, it was the life of a great revolutionary and great mother, the brilliant life of a bodyguard who was unfailingly faithful to the leader. Since her life was so brilliant and worthwhile, our people still recollect her with deep yearning. For the imperishable exploits she performed for the good of her country and people, for the times and history, my mother will live for ever in the hearts of our people.

An official suggested to Kim Jong Il that he pose for a photo, saying that President Kim Il Sung posed for one there on August 27, 1991.

Other officials, too, entreated him to do so.

Looking up to the statue of his mother for a minute, he agreed with them and walked towards it slowly.

It was more than half a century since she passed away, who used to say in her lifetime that she would take her whole family to her birthplace after things were going well in the country.

Now Kim Jong Il was standing alone in front of her statue on Osan Hill, Hoeryong.

CHAPTER 46

TO BUILD AN ECONOMIC GIANT

1. STEPPING UP THE MODERNIZATION OF THE NATIONAL ECONOMY

Kim Jong Il set creating an economic giant as one of the central goals for developing the country into a thriving socialist nation in the new century, and directed close attention to stepping up the modernization of the national economy.

His primary concern was to work out realistic long-term plans of technical upgrading for the modernization of the national economy.

On January 5, 2002, he visited the then Kim Jong Thae Electric Locomotive Factory, his first field guidance trip for that year.

He said to the factory officials: These days I have been pondering long over how to develop our country's railway. My purpose in coming to this factory today is not to solve the problems of materials and electricity and boost production. Others are accelerating the pace of modernization by introducing cutting-edge science and technology. You should not merely seek ways of increasing production from the previous level, now that we have entered the new century. Taking the requirements of the new century into consideration, you should plan what to do on the basis of cutting-edge technology. You should press for technical upgrading to make things that are more useful and more excellent. At this factory I have been expecting you to make such a suggestion, but you have not done so. The technical officials of the factory should redouble their efforts.

Then Kim Jong Il listened to what the officials said about the direction of technical upgrading for the factory.

He stressed that to achieve innovative results in line with the demands of

the new century they should draw up a proper long-term plan for the modernization of the production lines.

He went on to say:

“It is urgent to work out reasonable long-term plans for the modernization of the national economy, too. Commissions and ministries should not simply complain about the sluggish economy. Instead, they should, first of all, form special teams to draw up proper long-term plans for its modernization.”

That day he told the senior officials of the Cabinet that commissions and ministries should make three alternative plans for technical upgrading, emphasizing that they should form special teams with about 30% of their staff and draw up long-term plans for technical innovation and upgrading.

On January 16 he gave advice on such problems as stages and objectives for planning, order of priority and ways of technical upgrading, and methods of making long-term plans to this end.

On February 27 he had the Central Headquarters for Drawing Up Long-term Plans for Technical Upgrading organized with the Premier of the Cabinet as its chief and the Vice-Chairman of the State Planning Commission as its deputy chief. And then he saw to it that ministries, national organs and the sectors of the national economy formed their respective planning teams.

In planning, he stressed, it was necessary to guard against two tendencies: One of lacking confidence in the internal efforts and technology and the other of hesitating to make bold and ambitious plans in line with the requirements of the new century and the latest trends in scientific and technological development.

He made sure that the economic officials of the State Planning Commission and all other units involved in planning went to the new factories and enterprises, which the Party put forward as yardsticks, with the aim of setting proper standards for modernization. On several occasions he told them about the units that were pushing forward technical upgrading on the principle of self-reliance and the global trends in economic development. He also gave advice on the direction for readjusting the distribution of industries and economic structure and developing the

economy to a new, higher level.

He set it as an important economic strategy to modernly equip the country's major industrial establishments in the upcoming several years and led the efforts to this end.

On January 9, 2005, he told the senior officials of the Party Central Committee and the Cabinet: Modernizing the national economy is an intrinsic requirement of economic development and a pressing task in view of the actual conditions of the country's economy. This matter brooks no further delay and it is the most important goal of economic construction. We should modernize the national economy in such a way that one project will help towards finishing ten projects, ten a hundred and a hundred a thousand. We should complete one by one those that are urgent and cost-effective and, on the basis of this, carry out other projects to improve the comprehensive technical equipment of the national economy. The modernization of the national economy in the new century precisely means the upgrading of the production equipment and lines based on the new scientific and technological advances in the IT era. Scientists and technicians are chiefly responsible for this.

Kim Jong Il initiated the modernization of many industrial establishments, from machine-building factories that were pivotal in modernizing the overall economy to condiment factories that were indispensable in improving the people's diet. Rectifying some deviations, he led the efforts to put the national economy on a modern and scientific footing as demanded by the new century.

He visited a number of factories and enterprises, giving advice on the direction for updating the production lines and praising workers for their achievements to inspire them to further efforts.

On August 5, 2003 he made the rounds of some light-industry factories in Pyongyang to get first-hand information about their modernization projects. On January 12 and 13, 2005 he looked round several factories and enterprises in North Phyongan Province and adopted measures to step up the updating of their equipment.

One day, after giving field guidance at the major industrial establishments in North Phyongan Province including the Ragwon Machine

Complex, he summoned their general directors.

Then he said to them: Four years have passed since the dawn of the new century and in these years many successes have been achieved in modernizing the national economy. This is only the first step. From this year onwards we should prioritize the upgrading of equipment at factories and enterprises. Now their equipment are almost old and backward, and they are not operating properly because of lack of raw and other materials. It is more urgent and reasonable to renew these equipment. This is the way to increase the production capacity and improve product quality. In my opinion it is good to set the upcoming two years or so as the period for renewing equipment at industrial establishments and make positive efforts to this end.

He went on to say that the upgrading of equipment at these establishments should be done properly as demanded by the IT era, the computer era, so as to develop the national economy to the global standards. He advised that it was important to draw up plans for the purpose and concentrate investment on implementing them and import some equipment if necessary.

He ensured that the Pyongyang Electric Cable Factory 326 was renovated as a model in the 21st century since it was essential in modernizing the overall national economy, so as to accelerate the pace of modernization and scientification of the industrial sector.

During his visit to this factory on October 31, 2005, he acquainted himself with the upgrading of its equipment. He was greatly satisfied with it, calling the factory a yardstick of modernization and an example for all other factories in the country to follow.

Noting that increasing the output of electric cables of varying sizes was essential in putting the national economy on a modern and scientific basis, he advanced tasks to be tackled by the factory.

He advised that to maintain regular production at a high level the factory should obtain plenty of raw and other materials, update the management of equipment and technical operation, and improve the producers' technical skills.

Then he said:

“The officials, workers and technicians of the Pyongyang Electric Cable Factory 326 should, in the same revolutionary spirit of

self-reliance and fortitude as they displayed during the Arduous March, take prompt measures to replenish and perfect the missing processes and put the production lines on a highly modern and scientific footing, thus renovating theirs as befits a model factory in the 21st century.”

Soon afterwards, with this factory as the yardstick, all other factories and enterprises in the country made redoubled efforts to upgrade their production lines, with the result that the scientific and technical foundations of the industrial sector were built up.

Kim Jong Il led the efforts to bring about a production upsurge and technical innovation in the agricultural sector, which, together with the industrial sector, constitutes one of the twin pillars of the national economy.

On May 21, 2003, with keen insight into the global trends in agricultural development, he gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, titled, *On Thoroughly Implementing Our Party's Policy on Agricultural Revolution*.

In this talk he underlined the need to bring about a revolution in agricultural production and technology to meet the requirements of the Songun era.

He said, **“At present, the major task for solving the rural question is to make a revolution in agricultural production and technology.”**

He continued to emphasize that the fundamental guarantee for making a radical increase in agricultural production lay in carrying out the Party's policy on agricultural revolution.

Then he specified what needed to be done for the purpose: In order to effect a revolution in agricultural production and technology it is important to distribute crops and strains on the principle of planting the right crop on the right soil and in the right season as required by the Juche farming method, manure and cultivate the crops in a scientific and technological way, bring about a radical improvement in potato farming, develop double cropping on an extensive scale and step up the seed revolution. It is also important to rely less on chemical fertilizer, mass-produce and use microbial and organic fertilizer, press on with the land realignment projects to transform all the fields into large ones favourable for mechanization, technically upgrade irrigation facilities and equipment and build more

modern ones, and improve forest and water conservation as a mass campaign to attain a higher level of irrigation in the rural economy. It is urgent to find satisfactory solutions to the scientific and technical problems that arise in carrying out the Party's policy on agricultural revolution, and encourage agricultural workers to study the latest advances in agricultural science and technology and learn the skill of using modern farm machinery, so as to ensure that all farm work is done in a scientific and technological way. Important ways for carrying out the Party's policy on agricultural revolution are promoting assistance to the countryside and ensuring enough supplies from the state, improving the guidance and management of the rural economy, enhancing the role of agricultural guidance organs and officials and intensifying Party guidance over the rural work.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the National Agricultural Conference was held annually on a large scale with the aim of inspiring agricultural workers with revolutionary enthusiasm and generalizing good experience.

On the other hand, he paid due attention to tideland reclamation, land realignment and construction of gravitational waterways to solve the problems of land and water, essential elements of agricultural production.

As a result, solid foundations were laid for boosting agricultural production: securing thousands of hectares of fertile fields on the Kumsong and Taegyedo tidelands at the beginning of the new century; completing in the main land realignment in the major rural areas within three to four years and thus transforming by late March 2004 over 284 000 hectares of paddy and non-paddy fields into large, standardized ones on a country-wide scale; finishing the Kaechon-Lake Thaesong gravitational waterway project in October 2002 to irrigate 100 000 hectares of farmland with thousands of millions of cubic metres of water from the Taedong River; building the Paengma-Cholsan Waterway in 2005 to irrigate tens of thousands of hectares of fields; and completing a gravitational waterway project in the Miru Plain.

Kim Jong Il also paid close attention to the seed revolution, potato farming and double cropping so as to bring about a decisive turn in resolving the food problem.

With the aim of starting the seed revolution by introducing superior

strains of potatoes in the northern highlands of the country, he visited Taehongdan County several times. He took realistic measures for the acclimatization of high-yielding strains to prove the vitality of the policy on the seed revolution through practice.

On August 16 and September 18, 2004, he looked round the venue of the national exhibition of high-yielding seeds. He praised the fact that many superior strains appropriate to the local conditions were bred to lay a solid material foundation for a radical increase in agricultural production.

Then he stressed the need to bring about a decisive turn in the agricultural sector on the basis of the successes achieved so far.

He set Taehongdan County as a model in improving potato farming and had its good experience generalized across the northern highlands. And he put emphasis on promoting double cropping in keeping with the specific situation in the given regions and doing crop cultivation, livestock and fruit farming, and all other farm work in a scientific and technological way.

He also made sure that agricultural scientists and technicians resolved problems arising in realizing the comprehensive mechanization of the rural economy and updating farming techniques and methods. He put forward the Migok Cooperative Farm in Sariwon, Sinam Cooperative Farm in Ryongchon County and Samjigang Cooperative Farm in Jaeryong County as models for other farms in the country, so that they would compete with one another to create better experiences for the increased output of cereals.

2. ADVANCING THE LINE OF ECONOMIC CONSTRUCTION IN THE SONGUN ERA

Kim Jong Il presented a new line of economic construction—prioritizing the defence industry while developing light industry and agriculture simultaneously—and led the struggle for its implementation.

In the new century the Korean people turned out with one accord in the struggle to implement the Party's line of building a thriving socialist country. From the outset, however, their progress was hindered owing to the US policy of hostility towards the DPRK.

As in the previous decades, the United States and its vassal forces intensified their political and military pressure against the socialist country and grew frantic in their war moves. On the other hand, they resorted to vicious schemes in trying to prevent the Korean people from developing theirs into an economic giant.

During the Arduous March and forced march Kim Jong Il gave top priority to developing the defence industry and led the Korean People's Army to stand in the vanguard of the struggle to overcome economic difficulties and lay the groundwork for achieving national prosperity. In the course of this he was more firmly convinced that the most realistic and correct way to build a thriving socialist country was to fully meet the requirements of Songun, the vitality of which had been demonstrated through revolutionary practice.

On September 5, 2002, he said: We live and carry out the revolution in the Songun era. This era demands that all problems arising in the revolution and construction be resolved on the principle of prioritizing military affairs. In economic construction, too, we should work in line with the requirements of the Songun era.

Then he continued, **“We should maintain it as an important line of economic construction to prioritize the defence industry while developing light industry and agriculture simultaneously.”**

On August 28, 2003, he gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party, state and economic organs, titled, *Let Us Implement to the Letter the Party's Line of Economic Construction in the Songun Era.*

In this talk he said that the Party, by reflecting the requirements of the Songun era, set forth a new line of economic construction—prioritizing the defence industry while developing light industry and agriculture simultaneously. Then he gave a scientific explanation of its validity, originality and vitality.

The line of economic construction in the Songun era is a strategic line of socialist economic construction that should be adhered to in the Songun era. This provides a sure material and economic guarantee for effectuating the Party's Songun-based revolutionary leadership and Songun politics.

This line is original in that it, in line with the requirements of the times

and the revolution, brings into proper combination defence building, economic construction and the people's livelihood improvement and resolves all these problems most successfully. It is the most revolutionary and people-oriented in that despite a complex and acute situation it defends the dignity of the country and nation and safeguards socialism while ensuring the people an affluent, cultured life.

The Party's line of economic construction in the Songun era is precisely the economic line for building a thriving socialist country.

This line makes it possible to build up the defence industry and accelerate the pace of overall economic construction, so as to solidify the material and economic foundations for building a thriving country and improving the people's living standards.

It is the most revolutionary and reasonable line as it helps towards building a thriving socialist country with great national strength, in which everything prospers and the people live happily without cause for envy. It is an original line rooted in President Kim Il Sung's major line of socialist economic construction and developed in line with the requirements of the Songun era, a new era of the Juche revolution, that constitutes a higher stage of the developing Korean revolution. It is the most scientific and reasonable line based on a comprehensive analysis of the actual conditions and possibilities for implementing the President's line.

At the end of the above talk Kim Jong Il clarified the key requirements, tasks and ways for carrying out the new line of economic construction.

According to this line he put the greatest emphasis on developing the defence industry to consolidate its might.

First, he had strict discipline established whereby all sectors and all units supply all that are needed for the defence industry without any conditions and on a preferential basis.

Next, he ensured that the munitions industry normalized production at a high level and put its production lines on a highly modern and IT basis.

He set the spirit of Kunja-ri created during the Fatherland Liberation War as the ideological sustenance for the production upsurge in the defence industry. During the war the workers in Kunja-ri ran short of everything and faced a critical situation. As they were unfailingly loyal to their Party and

leader, they defied death in manufacturing weapons to be sent to the frontline. They moved the machines into a tunnel and turned their leather belts manually. Despite severe difficulties they managed to produce submachine guns and mortars.

Kim Jong Il stressed that the officials and workers in the defence industry, by learning from the spirit of Kunja-ri, should make devoted efforts for the future of the country and perform their role as its masters, improving the style, method and all other aspects of their work.

And he had the new revolutionary novels intended for the service personnel sent equally to the workers in the defence industry for their ideological education.

He emphasized that putting the defence industry on a modern and IT footing was essential in manufacturing weapons and combat and technical equipment on the basis of cutting-edge science and technology, ensuring the best possible quality of military hardware and realizing the scientification and efficiency of production and management. He made sure that defence-industry factories strove hard to upgrade their equipment on the basis of latest science and technology and use computer in their production and management.

In particular he had the defence science sector conduct intensive research to resolve the problems in upgrading the military hardware, making new, powerful weapons of Korean style and putting the defence industry on a modern and IT footing.

Meanwhile, he showed close concern for the workers' living conditions.

Pointing to the necessity of doing soybean farming on an extensive scale like the service personnel, he had superior strains sent to the defence-industry factories. Then he visited many of them to learn about the farming, each time stressing that they should improve the workers' diet. He also encouraged them to spruce up their factories and workplaces and live and work with revolutionary optimism by learning from the revolutionary soldier culture of the army.

Under his specific guidance the factories and enterprises in the defence industry improved their appearance beyond recognition, and manufactured strong war deterrent to provide a firmer guarantee for modernizing the

army, arming all the people and fortifying the whole country.

A military parade was held on October 10, 2010, to mark the 65th anniversary of the Workers' Party of Korea. It fully demonstrated the might of the country's world-class defence industry.

Famous TV networks said, broadcasting the event, that the fine array of modern weaponry illustrated the advanced level of the DPRK's defence industry, and gave wide coverage of its missiles.

As for the intercepting missile system that was shown at the close of the parade, the world media commented: The cutting-edge system can intercept enemy aircraft or missiles within a radius of hundreds of kilometres. Now it is recognized as the monopoly of a few countries including the United States and Russia. By displaying its indigenous intercepting missile system at the parade the DPRK has shaken the world.

Western media said in a similar vein about the country's military strength.

The world-startling might of the defence industry is unthinkable apart from the energetic leadership of Kim Jong Il, who worked with devotion and made painstaking efforts for its development.

The following happened on December 31, 2010, when he was inspecting the Seoul Ryu Kyong Su Guards 105th Tank Division.

Seeing the tankmen under training, he said that their tanks were of a modern type and they could rival those of the enemy's main force, adding that he had guided the manufacturing of those tanks to the last detail. Recalling those days, he continued that the workers in the defence industry achieved a great success by developing such tanks of a modern type. He noted that those tanks could not be imported from anywhere and no country would be willing to sell them. Then he said, **“Those nations that cannot manufacture modern tanks will be very envious of us.”**

He saw to it that the service personnel played the leading role in implementing the line of prioritizing the defence industry while developing light industry and agriculture simultaneously.

On August 28, 2003, while making public a discourse on implementing to the letter the line of economic construction in the Songun era, he underlined the need to carry out this line by the political mode of Songun.

He continued to say: The validity and great vitality of our Party's Songun politics have been clearly demonstrated not only on the anti-imperialist military front but also on all other fronts of socialist construction. Whatever obstacles and difficulties may stand in the way of carrying out the line of economic construction in the Songun era, we can surely make a success of it if we adhere to Songun politics. This is because it is an invincible mode of politics that guarantees the victorious advance of the revolution and construction. Pushing forward economic construction by the political mode of Songun means waging a positive struggle to develop the economy in the revolutionary spirit and manner of the service personnel by putting forward the People's Army as the core, main force, and achieving the single-hearted unity of the army and people. As the main force of the revolution, our People's Army is taking the lead in economic construction as well. It has performed great feats of labour and set a shining example by making miraculous innovations. In this way it is rousing all the working people in the country to a heroic struggle and production upsurge. The workers and all other people should emulate the revolutionary soldier spirit of the People's Army and give full play to the spirit of defending the leader to the death, the spirit of thoroughgoing implementation and the spirit of heroic sacrifice in the practical struggle for economic construction. Thus they should raise fierce flames of great innovation on all fronts of socialist economic construction.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the service personnel, by displaying the revolutionary soldier spirit, took the lead in carrying out challenging tasks for the development of light industry and agriculture.

On June 17, 2002, he looked round the wheat and barley fields of a farm under an army unit. He said that he was most pleased to see the good yields of the earlier crops in spring at this farm as they re-confirmed the feasibility of double cropping in the country and the veracity of the Party's policy on it.

He went on: I have been told that last autumn, to make a success of double cropping, the unit had all its farms plough their paddy and non-paddy fields and apply dozens of tons of manure per unit area. The officers of the unit are steadfast in their stand and attitude towards Party

policy. I am greatly satisfied that the officers and agricultural workers of this unit have set a good example in implementing the Party's policy on double cropping as demanded by the Songun era. The People's Army should not rest on its laurels but continue to direct great efforts to double cropping, thus proving that it is exemplary in farming as well.

Then he advanced tasks and ways for effecting a new turnaround in double cropping. He had the chief secretaries of provincial, city and county Party committees called immediately to visit the farm and see the bumper crops with their own eyes, so as to encourage them to raise a strong wind of double cropping the way the service personnel did.

He made sure that the army units worked hard to breed new high-yielding strains in the course of setting an example of double cropping. In August 2004 he told the senior officials of the Party, the state and the army attending the exhibition of high-yielding strains that a breakthrough for a decisive turn in the country's agricultural production was made by succeeding in double cropping and farming new strains of soybeans and then in breeding superior strains of other crops suited to the Korean climate and soil and cultivating them.

He said:

“The People's Army is the pioneer and pacesetter of agricultural revolution in the Songun era. The high-yielding strains it has bred according to the Party's policy on seed revolution can be called Songun strains which precisely mean fruits born of the revolutionary soldier spirit in the Songun era.”

He also had the army set an example in developing light industry and, with it as the spark, kindled flames for its growth across the country.

On April 7, 2009, looking round the Samilpho Specialty Factory, he learned in detail about the fact that, though on a limited area and with a small number of employees, it was producing hundreds of kinds of specialties in large amounts by relying on domestic materials.

He called it a model of self-reliance and a highly profitable treasure, and stressed that he was planning to have similar foodstuff factories of a modern type built in all provinces.

He praised the management and employees of the factory once again for

their achievements, noting that they were exemplary in ideological viewpoint and style of work as well. He said, **“Songun politics is bringing a huge benefit. Its validity and vitality become more apparent as the days go by. The People’s Army has played a pacesetter role in developing light industry and foodstuff-processing industry as well.”**

The flames for the development of light industry, kindled by the army under Kim Jong Il’s leadership, flared up throughout the country. In all its provinces foodstuff-processing bases sprang up, modernly equipped to meet the requirements of the new century. All light-industry factories relied on their efforts and technology to increase product range and improve quality, thereby mass-producing popular consumer goods.

3. KINDLING FLAMES FOR A GREAT LEAP FORWARD AND INNOVATIONS

Kim Jong Il ensured that all sectors of socialist construction kindled flames for a great leap forward and innovations as demanded by the developing reality to bring about a new turn in building an economic giant.

He paid concern to giving free rein to the revolutionary enthusiasm of working people so as to make notable innovations in all sectors and all units.

His plan was to effect a fresh turnaround in building a thriving country by stepping up the general advance of the Songun revolution in the same spirit and manner as had been displayed during the post-war period of great Chollima upsurge. He initiated the holding on a large scale of the Conference for the General Advance of the Songun Revolution, the first of its kind in the nation’s history, and had careful preparations made for it.

On February 2, 2005, the conference was opened in Pyongyang amid great expectations and interest of all the people.

A letter of congratulations in the name of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea and its Central Military Commission was read out, and all those attending the conference expressed their firm determination to achieve victory on all the fronts for building a thriving country. And then an appeal was adopted, calling upon the people to demonstrate once again the

heroic spirit of Juche Korea and the might of its single-hearted unity and raise fierce flames for a great leap forward and innovations in all the sectors of the revolution and construction, in order to celebrate the 60th anniversaries of the Party and national liberation as grand festivals of victors in the Songun revolution and bring about a decisive turn in building a thriving country.

On the 4th, the day after the closing of the conference, he said to the senior officials of the Party, the state and the army: As the Conference for the General Advance of the Songun Revolution was brought to a successful end, I am planning to meet the participants. I will congratulate them and pose for a camera with them. The conference reviewed successfully the proud history of the Korean revolution in which one victory after another has been achieved under the Party's Songun-based leadership. It was also significant in that it demonstrated to the whole world the unshakeable faith and will of the Party, the army and the people that are fully determined to scale the peak of a thriving socialist country by bringing about a new revolutionary upsurge in all sectors of the revolution and construction on the strength of Songun. This conference reaffirmed that we will invariably hold up the banner of Songun and fight to the last against the US imperialists who are resorting to vicious schemes in trying to isolate and stifle our country.

He continued, **“The Conference for the General Advance of the Songun Revolution issued an appeal to all the service personnel and other people. All sectors and all units, in hearty response to the appeal, should launch an all-out offensive for a great revolutionary upsurge.”**

After the conference Party and working people's organizations at all levels conducted among their members and other people intensive education aimed at giving them a full understanding of the spirit of the conference. In Pyongyang, provinces, cities, counties, factories, enterprises, cooperative farms, universities and colleges, mass rallies and other meetings were held successively to rouse the people to an offensive for the general advance of the Songun revolution.

Newspapers and radios gave wide publicity to the units, Party members and other working people that were making miraculous achievements in

production and construction amid fierce flames for a great revolutionary upsurge. The sector of art and literature created large numbers of works depicting the spirit of true persons in the Songun era.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the vanguard sectors, basic industries, of the national economy made a breakthrough for the struggle to build an economic giant.

He advanced tasks to this end: drawing up realistic plans to shore up these sectors on the basis of Party policy and scientific calculations of the economic and technical conditions; making careful arrangements for the economic work; and then controlling its processes to carry it through.

Especially, in a talk given on August 2, 2007, to the senior officials of the Party and state economic organs, he set shoring up and prioritizing the vanguard sectors, basic industries, as the most urgent task for economic construction.

He said: In circumstances of harshness unprecedented in history we have made great changes under the Party's Songun-based leadership, developing our country into a politico-ideological power and a world-class military power. It does not stand to reason that we cannot effect a revolutionary turn in the vanguard sectors, basic industries, which are the fundamental key to building an economic giant.

He continued to specify ways to this end: taking substantial national measures to shore up these sectors; inspiring the officials and working people of the relevant economic organs and enterprises to further efforts for innovation; holding higher the revolutionary banner of self-reliance; radically improving economic officials' ideological viewpoint, stand and attitude towards their work; and making Party organizations and officials throw their full weight behind the work of developing these sectors.

He also ensured that the state concentrated efforts on supplying equipment and materials to the vanguard sectors, basic industries, on a preferential basis and adopted necessary measures to resolve problems, conducted in a unified way economic planning and administration for electric-power, coal-mining and metallurgical industries and rail transport and developed them on an equal footing by taking them as the links in the chain. In addition, he saw to it that the ministries of Electric-Power

Industry, Coal Industry, Metallurgical Industry and Railways, as well as their subordinate organs and enterprises, gave priority to maintaining close ties and cooperation and promptly resolving problems arising in this aspect, and combined production with technology, particularly ongoing production with technical upgrading.

He led these sectors to raise fierce flames for a great leap forward and innovations in building an economic giant.

He set resolving the problem of electricity as one of the priorities in building an economic giant and improving the people's living standards in the new century, and paid primary attention to developing the electric-power industry.

Soon afterwards, a short-term plan from 2003 to 2005 was worked out with the aim of easing the strain on electric power, followed by a dynamic campaign to increase power output radically in a few years.

Kim Jong Il gave field guidance at many construction sites of power stations, taking steps to supply plenty of materials and equipment and build large-sized hydropower stations in all other parts of the country.

On December 11, 2004, he visited the construction site of a dam in Phalhyang (Eighth Valley–Tr.) for the Orangchon Power Station.

Recalling his visit in July the previous year, he said that he managed to find time to come there and learn about how the project was proceeding.

Then he looked round the dam under construction. The mountains were so high and rugged, and Phalhyang was the deepest valley adjacent to Ihyang (Second Valley–Tr.) and Samhyang (Third Valley–Tr.). They were named so according to the order in which sunbeams would arrive at them in the morning.

The mammoth dam was looming large, and Kim Jong Il praised that the builders had done a lot of work since he last visited it. By building the dam dozens of metres high, he said, they transformed the area beyond recognition. He spoke highly of them for their great feats of labour.

He added: The dam stands in an optimal place. I have been told that research institutes confirmed that the waterflow is plentiful for the Orangchon Power Station. I agree that the dam is in a really good location. President Kim Il Sung fixed the site of this dam and it is regretful that the

construction of the power station could have been completed earlier if we had carried on the project as instructed by him.

Then Kim Jong Il moved to the construction site of Unit 1 of the power station, some distance below the dam, and inquired about the progress of the work. He praised the builders for having completed in the main the tunnelling for the waterway and the construction of generator room in a little more than one year and a half after launching the project in 2002. He went on to stress that after building Unit 1 of the power station they should not rest on their laurels but immediately buckle down to the construction of Unit 2.

With this field guidance trip as a momentum, they launched the construction of big dams in many other parts of the country.

As part of a measure to meet the growing demand of the national economy for electric power, Kim Jong Il had small- and medium-sized power stations built in various forms wherever practicable and ensured that reserves for increased output were tapped at the existing power stations.

In order to rapidly boost the output of coal he underlined the need to supply coal mines with power, equipment and materials in a concentrated way and put a focus on major big coal mines with large deposits and favourable mining conditions, especially those in the service of thermal power stations, to achieve innovative production results there. He also took measures to increase production at small- and medium-sized coal mines and provide good living conditions for the colliers working in the pits.

He gave field guidance at several mines to revitalize the metallurgical industry. He adopted such measures as supplying larger amounts of minerals, the raw materials of the metallurgical industry, and providing everything needed for metallurgical factories on a priority basis to help them keep the production facilities and technical processes in a good state of repair and maintenance, normalize production at the earliest possible date and establish the Juche orientation as instructed by the President.

On December 12, 2004, at the Songjin Steel Complex, when he was making the rounds of its production lines including the newly-equipped one for the Juche-based system of steel making, he was satisfied to learn that a good prospect had been opened for making steel by relying on domestic

efforts, technology and materials. Then he set a more ambitious goal for the complex.

This visit marked a milestone in establishing the Juche orientation in the metallurgical industry, putting it on a highly modern footing and boosting production.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the rail transport sector, the arteries of the country and the pilot of its economy, met the demand for transport in building an economic giant.

He visited several factories and enterprises, stressing the need to satisfy the demand for the rolling stock by taking prompt measures to repair electric locomotives, carriages and wagons, and to implement the Party's policy on modernizing rail transport in line with the requirements of the new century.

He paid close concern to improving the methods of economic management, in particular maintaining socialist principles in this aspect and enhancing the responsibility and role of economic officials.

In August 2003 and on several other occasions he specified tasks and ways to this end, saying that socialist principles are the lifeline of socialist economic management and, if they are not adhered to, it is impossible to bring into play the advantages of the socialist economy and develop it, that in the long run this will have a serious impact on economic construction and the people's economic life, and that it is necessary to improve, with unshakeable confidence in the advantages of the socialist economy, the methods of its management in conformity with the intrinsic nature of that economy based on collectivism and as demanded by the developing reality.

With a view to updating the management and operation of factories and enterprises he adopted measures to improve planning, management of finances and labour, payment for the work done, maintenance of equipment, technical control and banking as appropriate to the changed environment, and to optimize labour administration along with the modernization of industrial establishments.

He made sure that officials in the rural economy strove to heighten the zeal of the farmers in direct charge of agricultural production and give fuller play to the advantages of the socialist collective economy as President

Kim Il Sung instructed in the rural theses.

Pointing to the necessity of bringing into fuller play the advantages of the socialist system of the rural economy, he said:

“Our socialist system of the rural economy established by the President is the most advanced socialist system of collective economy that not only suits the specific conditions of our country but also helps towards rapidly increasing agricultural production. Long ago, he said that we should pursue the collective economy to boost the output of cereals, that we can neither increase agricultural production nor resolve the rural question if we adhere to private farming, and that we should not care whether others pursue private farming or something else, but work hard to develop the socialist system of the rural economy.”

He pointed out that as the President had instructed in the rural theses, the agricultural guidance organs should give effective guidance over the rural economy to bring about a turn in providing cooperative farms with ample material and technical conditions and improving their management. He advanced tasks for promoting assistance to the countryside and heightening the farmers’ revolutionary enthusiasm and creative activeness.

CHAPTER 47

HOLDING FAST TO THE LINE OF PRIORITIZING SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

1. INSPIRING SCIENTISTS AND TECHNICIANS TO FURTHER EFFORTS

ARRANGING A GRAND MEETING OF SCIENTISTS AND TECHNICIANS

The Workers' Party of Korea defined science and technology as one of the three buttresses for building a thriving country, the other two being ideology and arms, and Kim Jong Il was steadfast in his determination to turn the DPRK into a sci-tech power in the near future.

He paid primary concern to giving fullest play to the soaring revolutionary enthusiasm and creative activeness of scientists and technicians across the country.

On October 15, 2003, with a view to rousing them to implement the Party's line of prioritizing science and technology, he published his work, titled, *On Thoroughly Implementing the Party's Line of Prioritizing Science and Technology*.

Pointing to the necessity of holding fast to this line, he said:

“The essential requirements of our Party's line of prioritizing science and technology are to develop cutting-edge science and technology rapidly in a short historic period, raise the country's science and technology to an international level and provide a sure scientific and technological guarantee for building a thriving socialist country.”

What is fundamental in implementing this line is to set the major thrust

properly and concentrate efforts on it, he said. He continued that to make a breakthrough, a focus should be put on the branches which were essential in developing the country's science and technology and building a thriving country in the new century, and, on the basis of the successes achieved in those branches, all other branches should be developed.

He also specified tasks and ways to this end—making a great leap forward in developing the country's science and technology, improving the role of scientists and technicians, and promoting the development of science and technology through a campaign involving the entire Party, the whole country and all the people.

A national conference of scientists and technicians was held on October 29, 2003.

The conference reviewed the results of the Five-Year Plan for Scientific and Technological Development and set forth tasks for carrying out another five-year plan geared to developing the national economy, improving the people's living standards and achieving breakthroughs in building a thriving country.

The main tasks of the new plan were to develop cutting-edge science and technology rapidly, raise the country's science and technology to advanced international level, and spur the technical upgrading and modernization of the national economy in accordance with the line of economic construction in the Songun era.

To this end, it was important to direct primary efforts to developing the core, basic technologies, i.e. IT, nano technology and bioengineering, generate international-level research findings through the rapid development of such basic sciences as mathematics, physics, chemistry and biology, and resolve scientific and technological problems arising in the technical upgrading and modernization of the national economy.

The conference put forth goals and ways for scientists and technicians to bring about a revolutionary turn in developing the country's science and technology.

It marked a new milestone in inspiring scientists and technicians to implement the Party's line of prioritizing science and technology, demonstrating the might of Songun politics by dint of science and

technology, and developing the country's science and technology and achieving national prosperity.

It was followed by a Party-wide information and motivation campaign to give the people a clear understanding of Kim Jong Il's above-mentioned work and develop the country's science and technology rapidly according to the Party's line.

All the scientists and technicians in the country, filled with the revolutionary enthusiasm and determination to support the Party's Songun-based revolutionary leadership by dint of science and technology, turned out in the efforts to implement the new five-year plan for scientific and technological development.

In late October 2005, when this drive was at its height, a national meeting of the pacesetters in the shock brigade movement of scientists and technicians was held.

This movement was a mass technical innovation drive in which teams of scientists and technicians went to factories, enterprises and construction sites and conducted creative activities with the producer masses so as to resolve important scientific and technological problems conducive to economic development and introduce new research findings and advanced techniques into production.

Kim Jong Il gave instructions on how to make a success of the above meeting and ensured that it was attended by the officials and model members of the February 17 Scientists and Technicians Shock Brigade working on the spot, the scientists, technicians and university teachers who had distinguished themselves in the shock brigade movement and the officials of ministries, central agencies, research and educational institutions, factories and enterprises that were throwing their full weight behind the movement.

The meeting reviewed the achievements and experiences gained in conducting the shock brigade movement in accordance with the Party's policies on the scientific and technological revolution and mass technical innovation movement, and discussed the tasks and ways for developing it as required by the Songun era.

Those who delivered the report and made speeches said that scientists and technicians should become stalwarts of the Party treasuring their

socialist country and its bright future more than scientific achievements and their honour, and devote their wisdom, enthusiasm and pure conscience to them. They stressed that they should be prepared as able talents finding the worth of their life in supporting Kim Jong Il's Songun-based revolutionary leadership by dint of scientific and technological achievements.

In 2007 Kim Jong Il proposed holding a national conference of intellectuals with the aim of giving full play to their spiritual strength in building a thriving socialist country and encouraging them to fulfil the mission and duty they assumed for the times and revolution.

On November 30 that year the conference was held in Pyongyang.

It proudly reviewed the arduous yet worthwhile 15-year struggle since the holding of the Conference of Korean Intellectuals, in which the intellectuals had firmly defended Korean-style socialism and ushered in the dawn of a thriving country. Then it discussed tasks for them to play the vanguard role in demonstrating the country's political and military might and achieving national prosperity. It adopted a letter of pledge to Kim Jong Il in reflection of the unanimous desire of all the participants.

Kim Jong Il ensured that fully play was given to the revolutionary enthusiasm and creative activeness of scientists and technicians in bringing about a new revolutionary upsurge. In 2010 he proposed convening a national conference of scientists and technicians in the Songun era.

The conference took place in Pyongyang in late March that year.

The day before the opening of the conference, the delegates attended a ceremony of paying tribute to President Kim Il Sung who lies in state at the then Kumsusan Memorial Palace, and visited the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery on Mt Taesong. In the afternoon they listened to the recording of *The Duty of Scientists and Technicians in Carrying Out the Technological Revolution*, the speech which the President had delivered at the Conference of Scientists and Technicians on March 22, 1963.

Amid great interest and expectations of the scientists and technicians throughout the country the conference was held on March 31, 2010.

It was attended by thousands of scientists and technicians who made remarkable achievements in making the national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientific.

The official who delivered the report said that Kim Jong Il set prioritizing ideology, arms, and science and technology as the strategic line in building a thriving country and performed great exploits by leading the efforts to implement the Party's line of prioritizing science and technology. He enumerated the successes achieved in developing the country's science and technology, and presented what needed to be done to build a sci-tech power.

The conference reviewed the notable achievements and experiences in this sector and demonstrated the unshakeable determination of Korean scientists and technicians to push back the frontiers of science and technology and catch up with global standards.

VISITING RESEARCH INSTITUTES

Kim Jong Il was steadfast in his will and determination to provide the launching pad for developing the country into an economic giant and spur the advance for an upsurge in improving the people's livelihood by dint of science and technology.

He visited one research institute after another to rouse the scientists and technicians to implement the Party's line of prioritizing science and technology.

In the early years of the new century he inspected the Hamhung Branch of the State Academy of Sciences twice as it held an important position in developing the chemical industry and building a thriving country.

He visited the branch on June 7, 2002, the year of the 50th anniversary of the founding of the then Academy of Sciences by President Kim Il Sung.

He was guided to the exhibition hall of scientific achievements and went over the research results on the permanent preservation of revolutionary relics and remains, as well as the latest exhibits. Highly praising them for their advanced level, he told officials about global trends in the development of one of them. He stopped in front of a board illustrating the prospects of the chemical industry. He said that he was very much interested in the recent plans for the revitalization and reconfiguration of the industry. He commented on them in the light of cost-effectiveness and pointed to the necessity of conducting a careful financial calculation for their materialization.

He was also pleased to see the samples of new products and underlined that it was indispensable to ensure that the research findings were introduced in the relevant economic sectors to make them bring actual benefits.

At the computer room for chemical research he said that the branch should be equipped with TB computers to promptly resolve the problems arising in the development of cutting-edge science and technology, and promised that he would have necessary equipment supplied to it.

He told officials that scientific personnel were the assets of the country and the source of national pride and that if they were roused actively, they would play a significant role in building a thriving country.

He continued to say:

“Ideology is the main thing in scientific research and a key to the solution of all problems. Success in their scientific research depends on for whom they work, how they work and for what. No matter how excellent the equipment they have for their scientific research, they cannot prove their merits unless they are well prepared ideologically.”

He added: Scientists should steadily develop cutting-edge science and technology by buckling down to their research with a lofty sense of loyalty to the Party and revolution, the country and people. And they should make positive efforts to adopt scientific advances made by other countries. For scientists, self-reliance means not merely making new scientific and technological achievements on their own but also turning other countries’ successes to their own advantage.

He underscored the need to introduce research findings into the relevant economic sectors instead of resting content on them at the experimental stage and to promote scientific and technological exchange with other countries.

Noting that the visit was worth his while and he was greatly satisfied, he said that the research findings were very interesting.

That day he met two couples, all with a doctor’s degree, asking about their families and achievements and praising that they were valuable talents.

On February 5, 2009, during his visit to the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex, he saw the aqueous organic coating material developed by the Hamhung Branch and spoke highly of its good quality.

On June 30 the same year he visited the branch again. Looking round

the exhibition hall of scientific achievements, he stressed that the scientists of the branch should conduct intensive research to make a tangible contribution to ensuring the 150-day campaign a success.

Displayed at the hall were the research results they had generated following his former inspection trip in 2002.

Kim Jong Il said: Looking round the exhibition hall, I have realized that the scientists of the Hamhung Branch have achieved lot over the past years. They should, in the future, too, work harder to resolve the urgent problems in developing our Juche-oriented chemical industry. Scientists should focus on the research projects that will render a substantial contribution to building a thriving country.

As for their attitude and stand, he said that scientists and technicians should endeavour to introduce their research results into practice, that they should focus on making things better than foreign products by relying on domestic resources, and that they should improve their qualifications.

On October 8, 2002 he inspected the Potato Institute of the then Academy of Agricultural Science.

He said to the officials in his company: The Potato Institute holds an important position in implementing the Party's policy of carrying out a revolution in potato farming. A turning-point cannot be effected in potato farming unless scientific methods are introduced into it. Today I am pleased to see the well-equipped institute. Now I have full confidence in it. As seeds are fundamental to potato farming, the institute should concentrate on improving them.

Kim Jong Il stressed that the officials and scientists of the institute should render positive services to putting potato farming on a scientific footing in the Songun era by resolving the scientific and technological problems arising in the implementation of the Party's policy.

In 2011 he visited a number of important research institutes, encouraging the scientists and technicians who were conducting intensive research to surpass the cutting edge and underscoring the need to raise fiercer flames for prioritizing science in all sectors.

On January 19 that year he visited the Bioengineering Branch of the State Academy of Sciences.

He looked round the room dedicated to the history of the branch and then several research sections. He praised the scientists and technicians for developing medicines for curing malignant diseases by using biotechnology and thus laying solid foundations for promoting public health. He was also satisfied with the fact that they found satisfactory solutions to the problems arising in the development of several economic sectors.

Then he went to the exhibition hall of scientific achievements. On display there were valuable research findings and inventions conducive to economic development.

He was briefed on the technique of diagnosing major infectious diseases on the basis of genetic analysis, the core of biotechnology, the successes achieved in applying this technique and the reagents for testing potato viruses which had been developed by the branch and were introduced in the production of potatoes. He spoke highly of the scientists, calling them magicians, and praised the branch for succeeding in separating, culturing and transplanting stem cells.

The young medical scientists of the branch, by conducting intensive research under an ambitious plan, had developed a cutting-edge technique, which had been the monopoly of a few countries.

After being told about their devoted efforts, Kim Jong Il praised them for their ennobling spirit and said that it was a fruit of the boundless loyalty to the Party and spirit of devoted service cherished by the young scientists who were determined to faithfully support the Party's Songun-based revolutionary leadership.

Underlining the importance of the research into the application of stem cell techniques for medical treatment, he said: The recent advances in bioengineering open up bright prospects for the development of biotechnology. Such miraculous successes and experiences eloquently prove the veracity and vitality of the Party's policy of prioritizing science and technology as the lifeblood in building an economic giant. They also show that if all officials, scientists and technicians cherish a lofty sense of loyalty to the Party, the revolution and the people and work hard to translate into reality the Party's idea of pushing back the frontiers of science and technology, it is possible to raise all sectors to the international level in a

short period and effect a remarkable turn in improving the people's living standards and building a thriving country.

Going over the innovative plans designed by the scientists of the branch, Kim Jong Il said that he felt as if he were in a dreamland and praised them for having provided a sure guarantee for rapidly developing agriculture, fruit farming and foodstuff industry by dint of cutting-edge technology.

That day he emphasized that bioengineering was one of the key criteria for estimating the level of a country's science and technology, adding that the scientists and technicians of the branch should strive hard to improve their qualifications with iron nerve and confidence in beating the world.

He went on:

“The scientists and technicians of the Bioengineering Branch, fully aware of their important duty, should rapidly develop the country's biotechnology to make an active contribution to improving the people's living standards and building a thriving country.”

For long hours he inquired in detail about the problems raised by the officials concerned and stressed that they should be incorporated in a decision of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee.

On January 21, two days later, recalling his visit to the Bioengineering Branch, he told the senior officials of the Party Central Committee that the officials and scientists of the branch were all patriots and faithful personnel and that they achieved miraculous successes in their field by conducting intensive research in response to the Party's slogan of “Break through the cutting edge!” He instructed that the branch should be relocated to a good building.

On March 3 that year he inspected the Pyongyang Vegetable Science Institute and the Pyongyang Floriculture Institute, which established the Juche orientation in production and had been furnished with modern equipment.

Early in the morning he visited the Pyongyang Vegetable Science Institute.

He was briefed on the state of affairs in front of the map showing the panoramic view of the institute and looked round several parts of the hydroponic greenhouse including the tomato and cucumber cultivation grounds.

Noting that all good species of vegetables seemed to be in the

greenhouse, he said that he felt as if he were in a vegetable shop and that the hydroponic greenhouse was really excellent.

He continued that another hydroponic greenhouse should be built.

Then he made the rounds of the PVC sheeting-covered greenhouses with no heating system. He praised the scientists and technicians of the institute for providing a scientific guarantee for increased production by ensuring that these greenhouses were more than 5°C warmer than a solar-heated greenhouse. He added that such an achievement was inconceivable apart from their uncommon creative spirit and patriotic enthusiasm for making a higher leap and advancing faster.

Before leaving the institute, he said: The Pyongyang Vegetable Science Institute has bred new species of vegetables and developed techniques to surpass global standards. This success is attributable to its officials, scientists and technicians who, keeping their feet firmly planted on this land and looking out over the world, strove hard with an unshakeable determination to generate excellent research findings and thus faithfully support the Party's cause of building a thriving country. This clearly proves the veracity and vitality of the Party's policy of prioritizing science and technology as the main link in the whole chain of building a thriving country. It shows that if all officials, scientists and technicians make proactive efforts to translate into reality the Party's idea of surpassing the cutting edge, all sectors can be raised to the international standards in a short period and a radical turn brought about in building a thriving country and improving the people's livelihood.

Kim Jong Il continued to specify tasks to be tackled by the institute in its research and production.

Then he went to the Pyongyang Floriculture Institute. He was guided to a greenhouse, in which he saw a stand filled with a new strain of cymbidium and other full-blown flowers. He praised that it had a lot of beautiful and fragrant flowers, and specified what needed to be done to produce more fragrant flowers conducive to the people's cultural and aesthetic life.

After inquiring about the research findings, he praised the scientists for introducing latest scientific advances into flower cultivation. At the tissue

culture section he stressed the significance of widely propagating fine species of cosmos.

Making the rounds of other research sections, he said that the institute had laid solid foundations for the scientific research. Underlining that those foundations were essential to the success in its research, he praised the institute for having made notable progress in many projects.

He said with a happy smile on his face that he would spare nothing for the officials and researchers of the institute, and posed for a photograph with them.

Before his departure he emphasized that it was the Party's intention and determination to ensure that the Pyongyang citizens and other people tend beautiful flowers and lead a noble and civilized life in a cultured environment. Then he expressed his expectations and belief that the institute would achieve greater successes in its research and cultivation of flowers.

2. FOR A FRESH LEAP IN DEVELOPING SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

DIRECTING CLOSE CONCERN TO DEVELOPING CUTTING-EDGE SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Kim Jong Il led the efforts to turn the country into a sci-tech power by raising its science and technology to the cutting-edge level as soon as possible.

In February 2003, the first year of the new five-year plan for the development of science and technology, he presented tasks and ways for rapidly developing latest science and technology and integrating them with the economy—identifying national priority projects and concentrating on them.

His particular concern in this regard was bioengineering. Bioengineering, together with IT and nano technology, constituted the core of basic sciences in the new century.

Korean scientists made some progress in this field.

For example, in 1999 a team of young scientists buckled down to developing an innovative technology, which had been such a challenge in

developed countries over the past decade. In November the following year they took a huge step forward and achieved notable successes in July 2002 and in April and August 2003. Foreign scientists on a visit to the country inquired about it and said: We did not imagine that Korean scientists have overtaken us. We have been impressed by the research findings of an international level you achieved in such a difficult situation. We are envious of you as you are working under your leader's close care. It is surprising that Kim Jong Il has such a keen interest in the development of science and technology.

In June 2004 Kim Jong Il said that stem cell was a worldwide concern, emphasizing that research into stem cell and genome should be made a priority.

Later he acquainted himself with how the stem cell research was progressing and ensured that it was conducted under the unified guidance of the state.

In January 2011, while inspecting the Bioengineering Branch of the State Academy of Sciences, he was very pleased to learn that the scientists made headway in the stem cell research and other fields.

He paid due attention to developing IT in the new century.

On January 21, 2008, as his first field guidance trip of the year for the scientific research sector, he went to the venue of the 18th national software contest and exhibition.

He went over the programs developed by colleges, universities and research institutes.

The exhibition afforded a glimpse into the rapidly-developing software technology of the country. The translator program in particular was rated as the one of an advanced international standard conducive to the development of the country's science and technology.

For long hours he learned about the performance of the programs and their development.

Then he commented that the programs were of an advanced standard and it was really a great exploit. He spoke highly of the scientists and technicians who developed excellent translators conducive to the development of the country's science and technology. He continued to

praise that all of them were meritorious workers in the Songun era who, though unassuming, worked with devotion for their country and people.

After a while, he asked them what were the knotty problems arising in their research work.

They said no problems, adding that for them, nothing was more glorious than receiving his guidance. He praised them again for their ennobling spirit.

He went on:

“Now our Party demands that IT, software technology in particular, be developed rapidly. As I often say, it is high time that our country strove to catch up with global standards. To this end, you should develop many excellent programs like the translators you have presented this time.”

He added: At present the United States is resorting to underhand schemes in trying to prevent our country from attaining a higher level of development in science and technology, IT in particular. However, it is miscalculating. Resourceful Korean people can raise their software technology to a higher level in a short period.

Then Kim Jong Il posed for a photograph with the laudable scientists and technicians.

True to his instructions they made a determined effort to develop more excellent software and raise the country’s science and technology to the cutting-edge level.

Later, at the 19th national software contest and exhibition, they presented more than 850 programs, contributing to the modernization of the vanguard sectors, basic industries, of the national economy. They also made concerted efforts to develop a Korean version of Operating System and introduce it across the country.

On December 16, 2008 Kim Jong Il inspected the Electronic Business Institute in Jagang Province.

He looked round the software board, server room and development section, praising the scientists for their successes.

As for the tasks facing them, he said: You should perfect the Korean version of Operating System and contribute to putting the overall national economy on an IT footing. It is important to work out a concrete plan for IT

development and set it as the top national priority. What is fundamental in developing software is adhering to our own style, not imitating others. It is essential in developing IT to prioritize scientific research, increase the ranks of scientists and technicians in this field and improve their qualifications as soon as possible.

Kim Jong Il made sure that all branches of science and technology made efforts to attain the cutting-edge level so as to give a powerful impetus to the construction of a thriving country.

Later, some scientists of the State Academy of Sciences were dispatched to a factory. They worked hand in hand with its technicians to develop an advanced level of flexible manufacturing system in a short period. Thus it was made possible to increase the variety of processed goods and their processing speed and ensure the accuracy of reproduction and high quality.

Kim Jong Il inspected the factory and gave thanks to them for their successful research.

The scientists at the Mathematics Research Institute of the State Academy of Sciences made huge progress in developing the country's basic sciences.

Worldwide, the basic equation of fluid motion was a challenge in the theory on differential equation.

The Korean scientists conducted intensive research into the qualitative characteristics of this basic equation and succeeded in laying a theoretical foundation for fluidics.

This gained recognition from the world academic circles.

Other scientists of the Mathematics Research Institute made a tangible contribution to upgrading the production lines of the Chonnaeri Cement Factory.

The flames of the revolution in science and technology flared up in all other sectors, generating valuable research findings one after another.

AROUSING SCIENTISTS AND TECHNICIANS TO THE MODERNIZATION OF THE NATIONAL ECONOMY

Kim Jong Il led scientists and technicians to kindle the flames of the revolution in science and technology at the outset of the new century, with

the aim of accelerating the modernization of the national economy.

He saw to it that they played the pacesetter role in upgrading the machine-building industry, the main link in the whole chain of modernizing the national economy.

He visited factories and enterprises in this sector, clarifying the direction and scientific ways for the updating of the production lines.

On May 16, 2004 he visited the Ragwon Machine Complex and praised it for upgrading its production lines.

Upholding the Party's idea of prioritizing science and technology, the management of the complex roused its technicians to modernizing the heat-treatment shop.

A senior official of the complex told him that the heat-treatment shop introduced modern equipment by carrying out the task given to it by him during his visit two years previously.

Kim Jong Il praised it for its achievement and examined the equipment in operation.

After looking round the shop he said: This heat-treatment shop has been well-equipped. It is a great achievement. It looks excellent and meets the requirements of the new century. The workers of other factories and enterprises will be envious of it if they come here. They have to introduce such equipment in their heat-treatment processes.

He continued:

“The Ragwon Machine Complex must not regard the modern equipment and techniques for heat-treatment as their monopoly. It should show the equipment to other units and teach them the techniques. Teachers at colleges and universities have to see such modern heat-treatment equipment. This will help them teach their students modern heat-treatment techniques. In addition, the officials of other factories and enterprises need to see the modern equipment.”

True to these instructions the complex channelled great efforts into generalizing its equipment and techniques. It developed a new model of hydraulic excavator and increased its production, while directing due concern to improving product quality by means of cutting-edge technology.

The scientists at the Physics Research Institute of the State Academy of

Sciences, in cooperation with the workers and technicians of the complex, developed diamond tools and carried out Kim Jong Il's instructions on boosting the output of excavators and improving their quality.

On June 18, 2010 Kim Jong Il inspected the complex again and praised the scientists of the above institute for introducing the diamond tools into its production lines.

All sectors of the national economy, including the electric-power, metallurgical, mining and chemical industries, held fast to the principle of prioritizing science and technology. Economic officials encouraged scientists and technicians to enhance their role in rapidly developing the country's science and technology, closely combining them with production and implementing the line of economic construction in the Songun era.

On several occasions Kim Jong Il said: Science and technology are the key to the rapid development of metallurgical, chemical and other major industries. Now a big reserve in boosting production is in developing science and technology. It is important to make an exact demand on scientists and encourage them to improve their qualifications. The level of the country's science and technology is determined by the qualification of scientists and technicians.

Kim Jong Il directed special concern to making the metallurgical and magnesia industries Juche-based.

In particular, he underlined the significance of establishing the Juche-based iron-making system true to President Kim Il Sung's instructions.

The scientists at the State Academy of Sciences and the researchers at universities went down to metal factories and cooperated with the technicians there to perfect the production lines for the Juche-based iron-making system and put them on a modern footing, especially by introducing CNC technology.

Kim Jong Il set out a task of formulating a uniform methodology for establishing the above iron-making system.

At that time the scientists at metallurgical institutes, through close cooperation with the technicians and workers on the shop floor, made progress in their research. However, they had yet to formulate a uniform methodology for establishing the above system, which was impeding the

manufacturing of equipment and the readjustment of the production lines.

During his visit to the Songjin Steel Complex on September 3, 2009 Kim Jong Il said: Now it is high time you stopped insisting on your own methods for establishing the Juche-based iron-making system. It is urgent to systematize the successes, techniques and experiences gained so far and formulate a perfect methodology. You should do so the way you build a pyramid, and a national scientific deliberation need to be arranged for the adoption of necessary measures.

Kim Jong Il recounted the differences between the Juche-based iron-making system and the conventional one, as well as its economic advantages. Noting that the establishment of this new system would be of historic significance in making the metallurgical industry Juche-based, he said that was the reason why it was named Juche iron.

Under his energetic leadership the iron-making system of Korean style was brought to completion.

He also guided the scientific research to create a Juche-based magnesia industry.

On January 23, 1982 and on several other occasions President Kim Il Sung emphasized the need to use anthracite in the calcination of magnesia clinker.

The scientists at the Refractory Research Institute of the State Academy of Sciences had long been focusing on the tests for the establishment of a Korean-style light burned magnesia production system. During the Arduous March and forced march, however, the country's magnesia industry went sluggish owing to the imperialists' isolate-and-stifle schemes and economic blockade and the fuel price hike worldwide.

To cope with the prevailing situation Kim Jong Il advanced a task of carrying out President Kim Il Sung's instructions on establishing the Juche orientation in the magnesia industry.

On January 30, 2009 he had the February 17 Scientists and Technicians Shock Brigade formed and dispatched to the Tanchon Magnesia Factory.

The shock brigade members and the technicians and workers of the factory made concerted efforts to restructure the production lines and develop a scientific method of using anthracite abundant in the country for the production of magnesia clinker. They also succeeded in the research to

produce light burned magnesia using powdered anthracite and introduced the method into the then Taehung Youth Mine, Ryongyang Mine and Songjin Fireproof-Materials Factory.

On May 20, 2009 Kim Jong Il visited the Taehung Youth Hero Mine and praised it for producing magnesia clinker with anthracite and setting up the light burned magnesia production system of Korean style.

On May 27 he pointed to the necessity of boosting the output of magnesium ores and magnesia products, fully establishing the Juche orientation in the magnesia clinker industry and pressing forward the research for the production of the magnesia products of second-stage processing. During his visit to the Tanchon Magnesia Factory on June 5, he praised the scientists of the Refractory Research Institute again for setting up the light burned magnesia production lines.

On June 17 he had university graduates in thermal engineering, refractory engineering and analytical chemistry posted at the Refractory Research Institute. On July 22 he assigned to some scientists and technicians the task of cooperating with the February 17 Scientists and Technicians Shock Brigade members working under the then Tanchon Area Mining Guidance Bureau to resolve the problems arising in the production of light burned magnesia and introduce the successful research findings in production.

Subsequently, the State Academy of Sciences laid material and technical foundations for the light burned magnesia industry of Korean style and introduced industrial methods of producing light burned magnesia with anthracite into the Taehung Youth Hero Mine, Tanchon Magnesia Factory and Ryongyang Mine.

On the other hand, the scientists of the Hamhung Branch made great headway in the research to turn out quality products with light burned magnesia.

FOR MORE SCI-TECH ACHIEVEMENTS CONDUCTIVE TO THE IMPROVEMENT OF THE PEOPLE'S LIVELIHOOD

Kim Jong Il made sure that scientists and technicians played the pivotal role in resolving the problems arising in the improvement of the people's livelihood.

He led them to focus on agricultural science so as to render a positive contribution to resolving the food problem.

On March 16, 2004 he visited the site of land realignment in South Phyongan Province, and clarified tasks for carrying out the project.

Underlining the need to increase the production of cereals, he said:

“Farming should be put on a scientific footing to boost cereals production. The present is the era of science. Farming should be done in a scientific and technological way, according to a scientific system and method, to meet the requirements of the era.”

That day he specified tasks for the development of agricultural science and technology—introducing machines and agrochemicals in running the rural economy and resolving the seed problem.

On April 19, about a month later, he told a senior official of the Party Committee of Jagang Province about the level of the country’s agricultural science and the trends in other countries, and underscored the need to take decisive steps for its development.

At that time the country’s agricultural science was not in line with the requirements of the times. In particular, the research into high-yielding strains was more or less at a standstill. Actually, the seeds of potato, soybean and other high-yielding crops consuming less fertilizer were being imported.

Pointing out the proclivity to import, Kim Jong Il said: It is a global trend to intensify the research into micro-organism in the sector of agricultural science, and scientists have coined the term “white agriculture.” This shows that agricultural science is making rapid progress worldwide. Our country, too, should reduce the dependence on chemical fertilizer and other agrochemicals, and develop and apply microbial fertilizer and bio-pesticides. Now agricultural officials believe that chemical fertilizer and other agrochemicals are essential to farming. They should boldly break with this outdated view. Using microbial fertilizer and bio-pesticides in the agricultural sector is also effective in promoting human health and improving the fertility of soil. It is urgent to introduce advanced technology of other countries in several sectors of the national economy. At the same time our scientists and technicians should improve their role to overtake the countries advanced in this field.

Kim Jong Il directed great efforts to developing high-yielding strains and introducing them across the country, and kindling the flames of the seed revolution in animal husbandry, pomiculture, industrial crop farming and sericulture.

On August 16 and September 18, 2004 he went over the high-yielding strains bred by the army and said: President Kim Il Sung stressed that great efforts should be channelled into breeding superior strains to raise good crops as demanded by the Juche farming method. However, the agricultural sector has failed to pay due attention to it. Our officials and scientists, while experiencing all manner of difficulties caused by the severe food shortage over the past decade, have keenly realized that the seed problem is fundamental to good farming. High-yielding strains should be cultivated on an extensive scale to bring about a decisive turn in the country's agricultural production, and it is also necessary to breed more superior strains in accordance with the Party's policy on the seed revolution.

Kim Jong Il was also concerned with the research into the methods of cultivating crops.

True to his instructions Nampho Agricultural College conducted intensive research into the methods of cultivating rice on the tideland.

The research findings were introduced in the hundreds of hectares of paddy fields on the tideland and proved highly effective.

This method was gradually applied across the country, making a great contribution to increasing its cereals production.

Kim Jong Il acquainted himself with the successes achieved by the research team of the college and spoke highly of them.

Subsequently, the research into the methods of cultivating crops gained momentum.

In order to resolve the food problem he paid concern to the research into superior breeds of domestic animals.

He emphasized: Breeds are fundamental to livestock farming. The same is true of goat farming. Milk production cannot be increased if we keep on raising indigenous goats. Hybridizing them is the key to developing superior breeds of goats and boosting the country's milk production in a few years.

Kim Jong Il ensured that university graduates were posted at the Animal Husbandry Research Institute to increase the ranks of its researchers and ample conditions provided for them to keep up-to-date with global trends and intensify research.

Efforts were stepped up to develop superior breeds of rabbit and other domestic animals and make them acclimatized to local conditions.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the problems pertaining to the living conditions were resolved by introducing advanced technology.

On March 19, 2007, while inspecting an army unit, he was told that scientists from the State Academy of Sciences helped it resolving the problem of water by an innovative method.

It was when they saw some soldiers toiling up a hill to carry water to their unit that the scientists decided to develop a pump using no power. They conducted a close study of latest data, both domestic and foreign, and designed a new type of pump suitable to local conditions.

Kim Jong Il inquired about how tap water was made available at the army unit and said that the pump made by the scientists was very interesting and it was cost-effective to pump up water to the tank dozens of metres high without using electricity.

Scientists also contributed to resolving the problem of drinking water for the residents on the island of Hwanggumphyong in Sindo County, North Phyongan Province.

Long ago, President Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il visited this island and stressed that the problem of drinking water should be resolved promptly. On later occasions they said in a similar vein.

However, it was such a huge challenge, both technological and financial, that the islanders were still suffering from the shortage of drinking water.

Thanks to the scientists' painstaking efforts, it was confirmed that drinking water could be obtained on the island itself, and thus 90% of the estimated investment was saved.

As shown above, scientists and technicians worked with devotion to resolve, by dint of advanced technology, the scientific and technological problems arising in the improvement of the people's livelihood.

3. SUCCESSFUL LAUNCH OF ARTIFICIAL SATELLITE KWANGMYONGSONG 2

On August 31, 1998 the DPRK launched its first artificial satellite Kwangmyongsong 1 on a trial basis. This satellite achieved orbit at the first attempt and over more than ten years after that, the country made strenuous efforts to raise its space science and technology to a higher level.

Kim Jong Il directed concern to developing the country's satellite information technology onto an international standard as soon as possible.

On April 28, 1995 he watched a video featuring the research findings based on satellite data. He praised them for their advanced level, saying that the technology for the processing and interpretation of satellite data could be called the latest technology and it should be developed onto a higher level.

Space scientists made notable progress in their research projects, rendering a tangible contribution to the technical upgrading and modernization of the national economy.

Kim Jong Il paid concern to developing the technology for the manufacture and launch of artificial satellite.

At that time technical data and experimental equipment were in short supply owing to the hostile forces' blockade. Korean scientists and technicians took great strides towards developing a multi-purpose microsatellite for the survey of resources and establishing its operating system. This technology was the monopoly of a few developed nations.

After inquiring about how the microsatellite project was progressing, Kim Jong Il underlined the need to press on with it on the basis of the achievements made so far and adopted measures for the prompt supply of necessary equipment and materials.

Early in 2009 full preparations were made for launching the artificial satellite Kwangmyongsong 2.

This satellite and its launch vehicle *Unha 2* were indigenous; the designing, manufacturing, assembling, construction of the launching ground

and observation after the launch were all conducted by relying on domestic efforts and technology.

The United States and other hostile forces resorted to vicious schemes in trying to deprive the DPRK of its right to launch artificial satellite for peaceful purposes.

Kim Jong Il, while adopting military and diplomatic countermeasures to frustrate the enemy's moves, led the efforts to launch the country's second artificial satellite.

He ensured that precedence was given to ensuring the legitimacy of the satellite launch.

On February 24 that year a spokesman for the Korea Space Technology Committee stated the DPRK was gearing up for the launch of a pilot communications satellite by means of a launch vehicle at the Tonghae Satellite Launching Ground. In early March the DPRK acceded to the international treaties related to satellite launch. It also sent prior notice to the International Civil Aviation Organization, International Maritime Organization and other relevant international organizations, saying that it would launch the satellite at any point from 11:00 to 16:00 between the 4th and 8th of April and specifying the coordinates of the potential danger spots on which the first and second rocket stages might fall.

On April 5, 2009 Kim Jong Il went to the Satellite Control Centre and acquainted himself with the preparations for the satellite launch.

On 11:20 a.m. the artificial satellite Kwangmyongsong 2 blasted off accompanied by enthusiastic applause.

Kim Jong Il was satisfied to see the whole process of the launch and said that the successful launch of Kwangmyongsong 2 was a momentous success as significant as a nuclear test and the scientists involved were all treasures of the country. Then he gave thanks to them in the name of the Central Committee and the Central Military Commission of the Workers' Party of Korea and the National Defence Commission of the DPRK. He continued to say that, to mark the successful satellite launch, he would pose for a camera with the scientists, technicians, workers and officials at the Satellite Control Centre, adding that all those involved in the project, including some at the satellite launching ground, should be invited to

Pyongyang. He stressed that colourful functions should be arranged in congratulation of the meritorious people.

The Korean Central News Agency issued a report on the satellite launch.

That day he said: Our satellite launch is a complete success. Now it is sensational news around the world. It is the great victory of the Juche idea and Songun idea. The principle of independence is a truth and it always wins. Ours is a just cause, so it has won and will win only victories.

He summoned senior officials of the Party Central Committee and told them: Last night I thought that if President Kim Il Sung had known that we would launch the satellite, he would have blessed us with its success. The multistage launch vehicle and the artificial satellite have been developed by relying entirely on our own efforts, wisdom and technology. The scientists and technicians involved are in their thirties or forties, some of whom are women. Our young people are creditably performing their important role in such fields related to cutting-edge technology as that for the development of artificial satellite. They embody the true features of the young people in the present era, and we have great potentialities as we have such talents. To us, the ranks of these young people equipped with our Party's revolutionary ideology are more precious than hundreds of tons of gold. That we have succeeded in launching the artificial satellite this time signifies that we have arrived at the gates of a thriving country. What we have to do now is to open the gates and step into it. All officials, Party members and other working people should have national self-respect and pride in having manufactured and launched artificial satellite and possessing it, and turn out with one accord in the general onward march for a new revolutionary upsurge.

The DPRK's satellite launch became the focus of international attention.

Over 2 000 mass media reported on the significance of the event and its effect on the international community under such headlines as *Korea Shakes the World*, *Korean Rocket Lifts Off*, *Rocking the Earth* and *Korea's Satellite Launch; Double Victory*. More than 150 political parties and organizations issued statements to extend their congratulations to the DPRK. Many personages described it as a world-startling event adding another brilliant page to the history of space exploration, saying that it testified to the

certainty of the Korean people's victory in the construction of a thriving country.

On April 8 a mass rally was held in Pyongyang in celebration of the successful satellite launch. It was followed by similar rallies in provincial seats, cities and counties making a festive atmosphere pervade the whole country.

Late in April Kim Jong Il posed for a photograph with the scientists, technicians, workers and officials who rendered services to the successful launch of Kwangmyongsong 2.

Waving back to the cheering people, he expressed his expectations and belief that the scientists and technicians, as befits the pacesetters in building a thriving country, would generate valuable research findings and introduce them in economic sectors, thereby proving themselves worthy of the Party's trust.

CHAPTER 48

USHERING IN A GOLDEN AGE OF CULTURAL CONSTRUCTION IN THE SONGUN ERA

1. TO TRAIN THE DEPENDABLE BACKBONE OF THE SONGUN REVOLUTION

Kim Jong Il led the efforts to effect a turnaround in training talented personnel as demanded by the reality in which the building of a thriving socialist country was in full swing, so as to increase the ranks of the dependable backbone of the Songun revolution with an ennobling spirit and profound knowledge.

In 2004, to mark the 20th anniversary of the publication of the work *On Further Developing Educational Work*, he arranged the 12th National Conference of Educational Workers and ensured that it served as a turning-point in rousing educational workers to the implementation of the Party's education policy and developing educational work in the Songun era.

The conference, held on October 26, set up a milestone in translating into reality the Party's idea of education and defending its leadership exploits in this sector.

Kim Jong Il paid concern to improving the education system and updating the content and methods of teaching as demanded by the new century.

He took necessary steps to this end: Updating the curricula in natural sciences at colleges of education in provinces, establishing a continuous higher education system from regular to postgraduate courses for a short period, readjusting the indexes for the courses and teaching programmes accordingly, rounding out the systems for talent-training and university and college education, and developing the study-while-you-work system.

On April 11, 2007 he gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee and the Cabinet, titled, *The Grand People's Study House Is a Precious Legacy Left by the Great Leader and the Great Temple of Learning for All the People*. With this as a momentum, a revolutionary habit of studying was established across society and the socialist education system improved.

On June 8 and 10, 2002 Kim Jong Il pointed out that primary and secondary schools should be renamed in conformity with the characteristics of educational stages.

Thanks to these measures, the education system including courses was renovated as demanded by the developing reality.

Kim Jong Il directed due concern to updating the content of education in the Songun era.

He ensured that definite priority was given to the political and ideological education. As instructed by him, Kim Il Sung University developed the education in the revolutionary history of the peerlessly great persons of Mt Paektu by putting the main emphasis on the explanation of their greatness. He saw to it that all other educational institutions learned from the experience gained by the university, so as to bring about a radical turn in this type of education. He also paid concern to compiling new textbooks for such subjects as *Fundamentals of Kimilsungism*, *Juche Philosophy* and *Juche-oriented Political Economy*, with a view to giving students a profound, theoretical understanding of the Party's ideas and theories. In addition, he made sure that the education in logic was reflected in the teaching programme and conducted effectively in conformity with the characteristics of different courses.

He took necessary steps to improve the content of education with the emphasis put on developing education in science and technology in keeping with modern trends. The then Ministry of Education made prompt arrangements for incorporating latest scientific and technological advances into the content of education, re-compiling the textbooks on the subjects for basic sciences in such a way as to help students learn cutting-edge science and technology, enhancing the quality of computer education and developing the teaching of foreign languages.

Kim Jong Il led the efforts to update the teaching methods.

Under his guidance the educational sector strove to apply the heuristic method as instructed by President Kim Il Sung and conferred the title of October 8 Model Educationist and the registration certificate of a new teaching method on the meritorious teachers. It also ensured the quality and effectiveness of teaching to the maximum by encouraging the use of computer, DVD players, multimedia presentations and other visual aids as demanded by the IT era. It made efforts to give students a profound, working knowledge by increasing the proportion of experiment and internship, closely combining theoretical education with practice and education with productive labour, and developing innovative methods for assessing students' creative application abilities.

Kim Jong Il stressed the need to improve the responsibility and role of teachers and provide more favourable conditions and environment for educational work.

On June 26, 2005, as for the pressing tasks facing the educational sector, he said: Teachers should apply themselves to the educational work with great pride and a high sense of responsibility. Education is a very sacred and honourable undertaking for training pillars for the future of the country and nation. Heroes, labour innovators, excellent scientists and national cadres are produced from among those whom teachers brought up through their painstaking efforts and with great enthusiasm. Just as good children are brought up by their mothers, so good disciples are trained by their teachers. Teachers are career revolutionaries who are responsible for bringing up dependable successors to the revolutionary cause of Juche. It is important to conduct effective education among them so that they, full of pride and dignity in being career revolutionaries, will devote all their wisdom and energies to the education of the rising generations without wavering in the face of ordeals and difficulties.

Referring to the need to improve teachers' qualifications to ensure that they would fulfil their responsibility and role as career revolutionaries, Kim Jong Il resumed: The quality of education and the academic performance of students are determined by their teachers' qualifications. Colleges of education should steadily improve the teaching environment

and conditions and the content and methods of education to produce competent teachers possessed of a profound knowledge and fine teaching skills. In particular, measures should be adopted for the systematic re-education of the teachers who left colleges and universities long ago.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that a social climate was established of giving preferential treatment to teachers and respecting them and, in 2008, adopted a national measure of instituting the Order of Teacher's Honour and Teacher's Honour Medal, and conferring them on meritorious teachers.

He visited some secondary schools, attending classes as an observer and giving teachers a great encouragement.

Following his January 2006 visit to Kim Chaek University of Technology, he inspected many other colleges and universities and underscored the need to train a larger number of competent personnel, who would carry out the cause of building a thriving country, and establish a social climate of prioritizing education.

He paid concern to the state support and social assistance to education.

He took steps for supplying modern equipment to Kim Il Sung University and other major universities, building an e-library and a gymnasium at Kim Chaek University of Technology and renovating Kim Hyong Jik University of Education and other educational institutions at different levels.

He also made sure that the Movement for Winning the Title of Model County in Education was promoted and, in 2005, had the Korean Education Sponsors' Foundation established.

On May 7, 2008 he made public a discourse, titled, *On Effecting a Revolutionary Turn in Educational Work in Line with the Requirements for Building a Thriving Socialist Country*.

He pointed to the necessity of improving educational work and then said: If no regard is paid to the backward state of education, it is impossible to develop modern science and technology rapidly, raise the cultural and technical level of working people and train excellent personnel who have been prepared politically and ideologically, scientifically and technologically, to meet the requirements for the building of a thriving socialist country. This will have serious consequences for the revolution and

construction and the future of the country. Therefore, we should concentrate our efforts on improving educational work. We should conduct educational work in accordance with our Party's Juche-oriented idea and policy on education and the socialist education system, and in conformity with the requirements and interests of our revolution, the actual situation in our country and its practical conditions.

He continued to present tasks to this end—holding fast to the theses on socialist education as the permanent guideline in the educational sector, improving the education system as demanded by the times and the developing revolution, updating the content and methods of education, putting educational work on a scientific and IT footing, developing pedagogy and pressing forward educational work as a Party-wide and nationwide undertaking.

As part of a measure to improve educational work, Kim Jong Il directed close concern to developing Kim Il Sung University into one of the most prestigious universities in the world.

In 2009 alone he inspected the university three times.

On March 19, he visited the newly-built swimming gymnasium of the university.

After being briefed on the formation and internal structure of the swimming gymnasium, he looked round its interior and exterior and learned in detail about the construction and technical equipment.

With a broad smile on his face he said: The swimming gymnasium of Kim Il Sung University is flawless even by global standards. It is my present to the teaching staff and students of the university. Long ago, I made up my mind to have an excellent swimming gymnasium built for them, but I couldn't carry out my plan soon for some reason. This thought has been weighing heavily on my mind. Today, seeing this top-notch swimming gymnasium, I feel relieved. Now I can save my face before them.

On September 30 Kim Jong Il visited the swimming gymnasium again, and on December 11 visited it for the third time.

He inquired about the construction of an e-library, a task which he had set out during his previous visit, and emphasized that the e-library should be built at the highest possible level as the best one in the East and it was his

present to the university's teaching staff and students for the Day of the Sun the following year.

Then he went on:

“Our Party is steadfast in its determination and will to develop the university named after the great leader into one of the most prestigious universities in the world, the supreme temple of Juche-oriented education and science.”

The current hallmarks of a most prestigious university are not its size, extent and educational equipment but the quality and performance of the talents it produces, he said. He added that the university should improve the quality of education in keeping with the requirements of the IT era to produce many talented personnel capable of surpassing the cutting edge, particularly scientists who would distinguish themselves in the science sector.

The e-library of the university was built in no more than nine months.

On April 12, 2010 Kim Jong Il visited the university to see the e-library.

He walked into the lobby and gazed around it.

The front wall was embossed with his autographic propositions: **“Keep your feet firmly planted on this land and look out over the world! Be reliable supporters of the Songun revolution possessed of a lofty spirit and rich knowledge! Redouble your efforts to get the great Party and Kim Il Sung’s Korea admired by the world! December 17, 2009 Kim Jong Il”**

He praised the builders and was guided to the catalogue hall, in which the head of the e-library briefed him on it. Then he made the rounds of the access corridor, students' reading hall on the second floor, computer room, academic exchange room, online lecture room, discussion room, reading hall and general lecture hall.

When he came back to the lobby, a senior official of the university said to him, “This is the year of the 50th anniversary of your admission to Kim Il Sung University. On September 1, 50 years previously, you posed for a photograph in a student's uniform. I wish you pose for another at this lobby of the e-library.” To his and other officials' repeated requests, Kim Jong Il agreed and posed for a camera before the front wall.

Then he looked round the Pedagogical Science Exhibition Hall and spoke highly of the teaching staff and students for having achieved a lot over the past decades. Going over the relief map showing the master plan for the construction of the university, he set out tasks for developing it into a world-class university in line with the requirements of the new century.

Some days later, to mark the Day of the Sun, the e-library was inaugurated with due ceremony.

Later, all other educational institutions made dynamic efforts to solidify their material and technical foundations, with the result that the overall educational work took another huge step forward.

2. FOR A FRESH TURN IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF ART AND LITERATURE

Kim Jong Il prioritized the role of revolutionary art and literature in encouraging the people on the general onward march to build a thriving country, and led the efforts to make greater progress in all genres of art and literature.

He set as models the artistic and literary works created by the army and its performances, and led it to creditably play the pacesetter role in developing art and literature in the new century.

He showed special concern for the art troupes of the army.

Under his detailed guidance the State Merited Chorus produced a number of works giving the service personnel and other people a great encouragement, thereby developing into a chorus of national significance and a bugler sounding the advance for the implementation of the Party's Songun politics. And the military artistes played a pivotal role in cinematic art and performing art.

Kim Jong Il led military artistes to raise practical issues, though not great in form, and give a philosophical explanation of them through skilled artistic depiction, and showed close concern for the whole process of creating such literary and artistic works.

True to his intention they produced *Notes of a Woman Soldier*, a feature film which, through the depiction of the ideological training of a woman soldier, illustrates the seed that people should bear in mind their precious country, wherever they may be. They also produced *The Battalion Commander on Chol Pass*, a film showing the conscience and moral obligation of an officer of the revolutionary army, and other films. In performing art they created many hits of great cognitive and educational value, all illustrating the truth that victory is guaranteed by Songun.

On August 30, 2003 Kim Jong Il said: The art troupes of the People's Army have produced many good light comedies on the theme of the implementation of our Party's Songun politics. The creative workers and artistes of the April 25 Film Studio of the Korean People's Army created such light comedies as *Promise, Blessing, Letter* and *Comrades*. They all have good contents and characteristic features. They give a vivid portrayal of the unfailing loyalty to the Party and the leader cherished by the service personnel and their indomitable fighting spirit and devotion to the people. They also depict in a deep-going way the Party's Songun-based revolutionary leadership.

Kim Jong Il, whenever he was inspecting army units, saw the artistic performances given by the service personnel and praised them for their high ideological and artistic qualities and militant mettle, thus encouraging them to take the lead in the mass artistic activities in the Songun era.

On October 25, 2009 he saw the performances given by the companies that were attending the 33rd Art Festival of Service Personnel and praised them for their lofty ideas and spirit and strong policy-oriented principles. Saying that the audiences would fully understand the service personnel's ideas and spirit, he stressed that the officials of the Party Central Committee, ministries and central agencies should see them.

During the Arduous March he initiated the holding of artistic performance of army officers' wives and made it a tradition to stage it on an annual basis. On several occasions he saw the performance and set it as an example of mass cultural and artistic activities in the Songun era.

In June 2010 he saw the third round of the second artistic competition of army officers' wives.

As for his impression he said to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee: The narrative works are all excellent. They have been written in plain language. Civilian writers should learn from this popular style of writing.

He added that it was necessary for civilian writers to see the performance as all its works put on stage were exemplary.

Then he said:

“It is important to disseminate across society another form of revolutionary soldier culture that has been created in the Songun era through the artistic performance of service personnel’s wives. Then the people will emulate the lofty spiritual world of the service personnel’s wives.”

He saw to it that all genres of art and literature created excellent works in line with the requirements of the new century by applying the service personnel’s creative and fighting spirit.

On February 3, 2003 and February 23 and April 14, 2005, he gave talks to writers and journalists under the title *Writers and Journalists Should Hold High the Pen of Juche, the Pen of Songun*.

He said:

“Our Party’s philosophy of the pen is that the revolution can advance full of energy, vigour and optimism thanks to the efforts of the men who wield the pen.”

He led writers to give full play to their creative enthusiasm and militant mettle in bringing about the full blossoming of Juche-oriented literature.

He paid special concern to the April 15 Literary Production Company.

He often inquired about the writers of the company and their plans, underlining the need to rouse them to create many works of high ideological and artistic value with a novel seed by using popular sentences, words and expressions and reflecting the people’s ideological feelings and emotion. He presented tasks facing the company: setting ambitious goals and creating more revolutionary novels, raising their ideological and artistic standards, instilling in all writers and officials in charge of deliberation and guidance a high sense of responsibility and pride in creating revolutionary novels to hand down the leader’s greatness and

immortal exploits to posterity, giving a truthful portrayal of all incidents and episodes on the basis of historical facts, and replenishing the ranks of writers with talented young people.

He ensured that the Central Committee of the Writers Union of Korea arranged the fifth campaign for creating 100 full- and medium-length novels for the five-year period between 2001 and 2005. He set the key objective of this campaign as creating more than 60 full-length novels dealing with the 63 unconverted long-term prisoners who had been all repatriated to their socialist homeland. He had a non-permanent guidance committee set up to this end and took several occasions to clarify the ideological and aesthetic problems.

The novels were created in a little more than three years, rendering a contribution to making the people strong in faith and will.

Kim Jong Il directed concern to developing poems and songs in line with the requirements of the Songun era.

He went over some poems and songs and gave advice on them.

Such famous works as songs *The Land of Taehongdan* and *We Call Them First* and epic poems *For All Ages* and *Motherland, Boast of Your Young People*, added to the flower garden of Juche-oriented literature.

He was also concerned with the production of films.

He inquired about the state of affairs in the sector of cinematic art and learned that some films produced in the new century were out of sync with the people's ideological and aesthetic requirements. He took steps to arrange a study session on the Juche-oriented ideas of art and literature for a fresh turnaround in the production of films.

He received a report about the study session held on January 12, 2002 and underlined the need to overcome stagnancy in the production of films and TV series and effect a sweeping upsurge in this sector. On July 10 he pointed to the necessity of conducting in various forms and by various methods the education work geared to arming the creative workers, artistes and other people in this sector with the Party's Juche-oriented ideas of art and literature. And on October 9 he adopted measures to give precedence to scriptwriting.

Soon afterwards, several parts of the feature film *The Nation and*

Destiny and some other films on the theme of the reality were produced at a high level, encouraging the people in their efforts to build a thriving country.

Kim Jong Il designated creating Korean-style music suited to the people's aspirations and sentiments as one of the important problems arising in the development of art and literature in the Songun era.

In December 2001 and February 2003 he acquainted himself with the work of the National Symphony Orchestra and set out some important tasks—posting talented instrumentalists to the National Symphony Orchestra; improving the practical abilities of creative workers and artistes; renovating the Moranbong Theatre, the base of the symphony orchestra; and expanding the sphere of its external activities.

On December 3, 2004, after listening to the recording of the new symphonic suite *Long Journey of Songun*, he visited the Moranbong Theatre and gave guidance over the symphony orchestra's creative work.

He highly praised it for its excellent performance and stressed the following points: ensuring the philosophical profundity of the symphonic suite, improving arrangement to sustain the features of the symphony orchestra, accentuating the tones of instruments and enhancing the instrumentalists' skills.

On December 25 that year he saw again the performance given by the symphony orchestra at the Mansudae Art Theatre. He commented: The new prelude to the symphonic suite *Long Journey of Songun* reflects the revolutionary soldier spirit. It has been rearranged well. Now the symphonic suite can be called a perfect work.

In the period from 2004 to 2011 he saw the performances by the symphony orchestra and guided its creative work on over 20 occasions.

He paid due concern to creating revolutionary songs of high artistic value so as to inspire the people to further efforts in building a thriving country.

In January 2002 he emphasized that creative workers and officials should direct primary concern to creating songs, and that writers and composers should broaden their political views, get a keen insight into the Party's policies and improve their creative skills.

On May 10, 2002 he told a writer that although artistic qualities are important in creating a work, an art devoid of revolutionary character is not an art in the true sense of the word.

On September 28 the same year he told a senior official of the Party Central Committee that it was necessary to create many folk songs depicting the Korean people's lifestyle and emotion.

On several other occasions he underscored the need to create many songs on the theme of the genuine features of Korean-style socialism and the country.

Under his detailed guidance many famous songs were reproduced in line with the requirements of the new century, including *Unforgettable Echoes over Lagoon Samil, Though I Am Leaving* and *The Glow over Kangson*. He also led the Mansudae Art Troupe to discharge its mission and duty in producing Korean-style music as demanded by the Songun era, as befits the model troupe that had created the Mansudae spirit in the 1970s.

On January 16, 2009 the Samjiyon Band of the Mansudae Art Troupe was established to meet the people's growing aesthetic demands.

On January 25 he saw its performance and spoke highly of it, before specifying the tasks facing the band and the ways for their implementation.

On April 6 the band staged its first public performance, all aspects of which were based on the Party's Juche-oriented theory of aesthetics. It demonstrated the true features of the unique Korean-style musical art that was making notable progress as demanded by the new century and in conformity with the people's sentiments.

Kim Jong Il directed close concern to developing the Juche-oriented art of drama.

On December 11, 2009 he entrusted the National Theatrical Troupe with the task of reproducing the light comedy *An Echo among the Hills*, a hit in the 1960s.

The officials and creative workers of the theatrical troupe made painstaking efforts to implement this task. To their surprise, the work produced a great sensation among the audiences.

On April 26, 2010 Kim Jong Il saw the light comedy and said: This time the officials, creative workers and artistes of the National Theatrical

Troupe, true to the Party's intention, have made a determined effort to carry out the task given to them by it, most faithfully, most creditably, most sincerely, most honestly and most thoroughly. The essential point of this work is that everyone must not rest on their laurels but make uninterrupted innovation and advance with a high aim. The light comedy is effective in rousing officials, Party members and other working people to the implementation of the tasks set out by the joint slogans of the Central Committee of the Party and its Central Military Commission. Art troupes should generate such appealing works of great cognitive and educational value.

On May 8, about ten days later, Kim Jong Il saw the light comedy again at the Mansudae Art Theatre and specified what needed to be done to improve the work.

On July 13, 2011 he saw the drama *We Will Recollect Today* produced by the National Theatrical Troupe.

He spoke highly of it and commented that, seeing the drama, the people would recollect their iron will, not their painful past.

He said:

“The drama has given a vivid portrayal of the ennobling spiritual world of our people who live and work with hope, confidence and optimism about the future, without wavering or faltering in the face of severe trials. After all, this work has given a profound philosophical explanation of the fact that today our memories of the Arduous March are not those of our sorrows but of our faith and will.”

Then he gave the creative workers and artistes his special thanks, defining the drama as a work of great cognitive and educational value.

He also directed concern to developing mass-based cultural and artistic activities. When inspecting factories and enterprises, he saw performances given by the workers' art groups and encouraged them to conduct brisk artistic activities in line with the requirements of the Songun era. As part of a measure to develop these activities he ensured that the national art festival of working people attended by blue- and white-collar workers and retired people was included in the National Art Festival for the Day of the Sun beginning in 2008.

On January 30, 2011 he saw performances given by the workers' art groups of the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex and February 8 Vinalon Complex. He spoke highly of them, commenting that the performances were an example of the new noble culture of the working class in the Songun era based on the revolutionary soldier spirit.

3. CARRYING OUT THE PEOPLE-ORIENTED HEALTHCARE POLICY

Kim Jong Il led the public health sector to carry out the Party's people-oriented healthcare policy.

He paid primary concern to implementing the Party's policy on preventive medicine to promote the people's health and protect their lives.

When epidemics were rapidly spreading around the world, he had medical workers and other people enlisted to adopt emergency preventive measures against them.

In 2003 the World Health Organization warned that a strange epidemic was prevalent in dozens of countries and regions, infecting thousands of people and killing many of them.

Called SARS (Serious Acute Respiratory Syndrome–Tr.), the epidemic was a sort of pneumonia with a high rate of infection since there was no vaccine against SARS infection. For the terrific rate of infection and mortality, it was known worldwide as black plague. International organizations and countries took special precautions to prevent the spread of the epidemic, sometimes canceling or postponing international events.

To cope with the dangerous situation Kim Jong Il had positive steps taken to ward off the plague.

The Cabinet organized the central headquarters of the State Emergency Anti-Epidemic Commission with its subordinates in provinces, cities and counties, which established a well-regulated system to control the anti-epidemic work in a unified way.

As a result, no cases of SARS occurred in the country.

In August 2003 avian flu, also called fowl pest, appeared in Asia. By

early February 2004 millions of chickens, and even some people, were killed.

On February 6, 2004 Kim Jong Il said that avian flu was killing poultry in some Asian countries, noting that wild ducks, wild geese and other migratory birds might carry the plague into the country. That year he had necessary precautions taken on several occasions.

Accordingly, a rigorous anti-epidemic system was set up across the country and proactive efforts were made to prevent an outbreak of the plague. In 2005 and subsequent years the anti-epidemic work continued under the unified control of the State Emergency Anti-Epidemic Commission.

By the close of 2006 measles swept neighbouring countries. In early 2007 Kim Jong Il took emergency steps to meet the demand for vaccines and ensured that vaccination was carried out in a responsible manner to round off the epidemic work as soon as possible and guarantee stable living conditions for the people.

He also paid close concern to preventing damages from sandy dust.

Sandy dust used to occur on an average of one day in the dry period of spring. From 2004, however, it became more frequent because of less precipitation and widespread desertification. Obviously, it had a negative impact on the Korean peninsula.

In March that year, when sandy dust hit the country for the first time, Kim Jong Il ensured that a mass campaign was launched to prevent damages from it.

According to his instructions, a well-knit observation and information system was set up, precautions were taken in all the sectors of the national economy, and thoroughgoing measures were adopted for the prevention of diseases and the sanitary and anti-epizootic work.

Kim Jong Il directed concern to improving medical services by applying the Party's people-oriented healthcare policy.

On November 5, 2006 he said: The public health sector should work hard to defend the Party's healthcare policy and give full play to the advantages of the people-oriented healthcare system. Medical workers take responsibility for the people's lives and health, so they should cherish more

tender affection for them than anybody else. They should be equipped with the spirit of devoted service to the people and strive hard to promote their health. Prompt steps should be taken to ensure adequate supplies of medicine. What is badly needed now is household medicine. Primary concern should be paid to producing them.

Kim Jong Il stressed that medical workers should improve their clinical skills, saying that defending the Party's healthcare policy and bringing into full play the advantages of the people-oriented healthcare system is just the way to safeguard and add brilliance to socialism.

On May 25, 2008, during his visit to Hamhung College of Medicine, he emphasized that doctors in the public health sector should devote themselves to treating their patients with warm affection for them.

He said, **“Just as man cannot exist without love, healthcare is inconceivable apart from devotion. Devotion is an intrinsic attribute of socialist healthcare and its lifeblood.”**

He also directed close concern to updating conditions for medical services.

He conceived a plan to upgrade as demanded by the IT era the educational and medical equipment of the then Pyongyang Medical College, the “pedigree farm” in medical education, and the hospital attached to the college and model all other healthcare centres after them.

At that time the Party and administrative officials of the college and the hospital were making concerted efforts to create a better environment for education and medical treatment.

On March 16, 2004 Kim Jong Il said that they should put the main stress on modernizing equipment. Later he had modern equipment sent to the hospital to refurbish the rooms for treatment and operation.

As a result, the college and the hospital gained new appearances as hubs of medical education and treatment.

On August 2, 2007 Kim Jong Il inspected the North Hamgyong Provincial People's Hospital.

Looking round the interior of the building, he pointed out that medical considerations had been ignored in designing the laboratories, which were of the same size as other rooms. He said that no unauthorized access should

be allowed to the laboratories and they should be made germ-free and kept in tranquility, that the rooms for gastric secretion examination and gastroscopy diagnosis should be next to each other, and that for this reason the room for gastric secretion examination should be away from the experiment and check-up department.

At the resuscitation and intensive treatment department he said that the rooms of the department should be supplied with enough medicines and equipment for first aid treatment to guarantee the patients' lives since most of them would be unconscious. He continued to point out other issues—readjusting the size of the door to the resuscitation room to ensure enough space for hospital beds and the staff, standardizing the doors of the elevators in the hospital according to their uses, installing various forms and sizes of beds, placing glass windows in the rooms if necessary and controlling access to the operation rooms to make them germ-free.

According to his instructions the Ministry of Public Health and the provincial, city and county people's committees worked out and implemented the plans to renovate the people's hospitals in their respective regions on the model of the above hospital in North Hamgyong Province, with the special stress on ensuring sterilization of the operation rooms.

On September 16, 2005 Kim Jong Il visited the Hungnam Pharmaceutical Factory, which was responsible for providing materials to all other pharmaceutical factories in the country.

He looked at the medicines on display, inquiring about the production, and told the officials of the factory: The key to solving the problem of medicines is to rapidly increase the output of household and popular medicines. In solving the problem of popular medicines it is important to bring the production of Western medicines in close combination with that of Koryo medicines. Enough supply of Koryo medicines will help to a great extent towards solving the problem of popular medicines.

Grinding herbs is an outdated method of making Koryo medicines. In order to raise efficaciousness of Koryo medicines decisive measures should be adopted to make extracts by putting their production on a scientific and industrial footing.

Looking round the shop floor, Kim Jong Il pointed out such problems

as safety and purity of the products and their packaging. He emphasized that they should modernize their factory and make it a smart model as befits the mother factory.

On February 4 the following year he inspected the Kanggye Koryo Medicine-Processing Factory. He was satisfied to learn that the officials and workers of the factory renovated their factory and were mass-producing efficacious medicines by using medicinal herbs abundant in the region. At the showroom he was briefed on the process of making extracts by vacuum concentration and underlined the need to increase the rate of concentration and purity.

After looking round the rooms for technical preparation and packaging, he moved to the pill shop. There he saw the pill-makers and mixers running, and told the officials that it was important in guaranteeing hygiene of the medicines to make all the production lines from primary processing to completion and packaging air-tight, out of reach of workers.

On April 7, 2011 he paid a third visit to the renovated factory. He made the rounds of the computer control room, liquid medicine shop in which CNC technology was introduced, the shop for extracting supercritical fluid and others. He was very glad to see the modern production lines and products. He said that in using the supercritical fluid extractor, refining was as important as increasing the extraction rate, adding that the ads and leaflets must contain only the clinically proved effects. He encouraged the officials, workers and technicians of the factory to increase the output of popular and famous medicines conducive to promotion of public health.

Under his wise leadership the factory and other medicine producers built up their material and technical foundations and maintained regular production, ensuring enough supply of efficacious medicines for the people and contributing to giving full play to the advantages of the free medical care system.

Kim Jong Il directed concern to improving medical services at sanatoria.

On March 16, 2007 he said that there are many hot springs and spas in the country and they should be widely used to promote the people's health,

instructing that all the mineral springs should be identified and necessary steps taken to develop them. Later he adopted measures to build sanatoria near mineral springs and run them more effectively.

He also paid concern to establishing a nationwide telemedicine network. On January 27, 2010 he learned about the progress made in this sector and stressed that the Ministry of Public Health should effectively run the telemedicine system between central hospitals and provincial hospitals and expand the network to cover the hospitals in major cities and counties.

4. TO TURN SONGUN KOREA INTO A SPORTS POWER

Kim Jong Il led the efforts to turn the country into a sports power by establishing the Juche orientation in sports and developing it on the basis of modern science.

In order to develop all events to world standards by applying Korean-style playing principles and tactics he ensured that the sports sector drew a lesson from the reviewing of the results at the 28th Olympic Games and made good preparations for the 29th Olympic Games.

On December 15, 2004 he gave specific instructions on preparing under a long-term plan for the upcoming international competitions including the 29th Olympic Games and the 4th East Asian Games slated for 2005, organizing national teams through the careful selection of players and coaches, inspiring a strong sense of competition among players and improving supply services and conditions for training.

After watching a soccer match, he told officials that even though all conditions were unfavourable before the country's liberation, a soccer star nicknamed "mechanical legs" was produced, but now there were few famous players despite excellent conditions.

Once he commented after watching an international soccer match: I think that our players have lost the game partly because our soccer techniques are backward and mainly because those who commanded the game failed to make proper arrangements for it. As is the case with all other affairs, a sports game can be a success only when it is played according to a

scientific strategy and tactics. However, the strategy for the above game was not proper, so no good preparations were made to ensure the players' optimum physical conditions and effective tactics. That's why the players could neither run quickly during the game nor play it according to scientific tactics.

On September 12 and 30, 2006 Kim Jong Il gave a talk to the senior officials of the Party and the army, titled, *Let Us Radically Develop the Country's Sports by Applying the Playing Principles and Methods of Our Style*.

As for the coaches' responsibility and role, he said: A coach is in a team what a commander is in an army. If the commander of an army is prompt in seeing through the enemy's schemes and weak points and applying a new appropriate strategy and tactics, the army will win the battle. Likewise, if the coach of a team is prompt in seeing through the opponent's tactics, characteristics and weak points and applying various appropriate tactics, the team will win the game. Coaches should rid themselves of outdated experience and way of thinking, always using their brains to develop new tactics. The performance of a team is determined by its coach's practical abilities. Coaches should make efforts to steadily increase their knowledge of sports science and technology and improve their technical qualifications. They should draw up scientific plans for their players' training and make an exacting demand on them to make them fulfil their training tasks unconditionally.

He also referred to women's soccer: Foreigners commented that Korean women's soccer has reached global standards, but we should not rest on our laurels. Frankly speaking, our women players lag behind in technical terms, as compared with those of the excellent European and American teams. Therefore, we should identify what remains backward in our soccer techniques and develop them one by one.

Kim Jong Il directed concern to developing Taekwon-Do in line with the requirements of the Songun era.

He specified how the Korean players should demonstrate the dignity of the nation and their pride in living in the motherland of Taekwon-Do at the 13th Taekwon-Do World Championships.

He underlined the need for women judokas to retain their world championship. On October 14, 2007 he stressed that soccer and marathon should be further developed, describing them as symbolic of sports events.

On June 25, 2008, with a view to putting sports on a highly scientific footing, he gave a talk, titled, *On Rapidly Developing Sports Science*.

He noted that the country's sports was not catching up with global standards and specified important tasks and ways for rapidly developing sports science.

Stressing that it was urgent to put sports on a scientific basis by prioritizing and developing sports science, he said, **“The leading officials, researchers, coaches and players in the sports sector and all other people should be aware that the country's sports will not be able to reach a higher standard in line with the trend of the times unless it is put on a scientific footing. They should make proactive efforts to implement the Party's intention of putting sports on a scientific basis.”**

He continued: What is of primary importance in sports research is to establish the Juche orientation. It is necessary to develop sports science creatively in a Korean way in conformity with the Korean people's ideological, spiritual and physical characteristics and advantages and the country's actual conditions, according to the Party's Juche-oriented sports policy. The main stress in developing sports science should be put on developing the Juche-oriented playing principles and methods, advanced by the Party, comprehensively and scientifically in conformity with the features of each event. The major concern in sports research should be to develop the events to which the Party attaches importance. The Workers' Party of Korea has already set forth a policy of prioritizing the more prominent sports events which suit the tastes and physical constitution of the Korean people and in which they excel and developing all other events proactively. Marathon and soccer are symbolic of the sports events, and boxing and table tennis can be said to suit the Korean people's physical constitution.

Kim Jong Il pointed out such issues as developing teaching and training on the basis of modern sports science, improving technical, tactical and physical training in conformity with the features of each event and the

players' physical conditions, and introducing scientific methods in the selection of reserve players. He also specified problems arising in developing sports science—prioritizing sports medicine and dietetics, stepping up research on how to relieve fatigue and conducting intensive research to increase the output of modern sports equipment and improve their quality.

He directed concern to implementing the Party's policy of making sports mass-based.

On January 4, 2002 he gave an official of the then Sports Guidance Commission (the present Ministry of Physical Culture and Sports—Tr.) important instructions to this end—widely using the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium and other stadiums and gymnasia for mass-based sporting activities and furnishing them with apparatuses and equipment for physical training and sporting activities to ensure that they would always be packed with working people, youth and children.

He saw to it that the broad sections of people were enlisted in various sporting activities.

On January 10, 2002 he said that the national sports festival of workers and the Paektusan-Prize sports contest of the officials of ministries and central agencies should be arranged on a large scale to mark the 90th anniversary of President Kim Il Sung's birth, the February holiday (Kim Jong Il's birthday—Tr.) and the 70th anniversary of the Korean People's Army, adding that colourful amusement games should be organized in provinces to enliven the social atmosphere for mass-based sports. On March 27 he inquired about the preparations for the above festival and resolved all problems to ensure that it served as a milestone in developing mass-based sports.

Later he had national mass-based sports festivals held on all major holidays and anniversaries and made sure that fierce flames for mass-based sports flared up in the schools and workplaces across the country.

At the 14th Asian Games held between September and October in 2002 Korean players exalted the honour of their country, breaking world records in women's weightlifting, winning gold medals in shooting, judo, table tennis and gymnastics, and placing first in women's soccer and marathon.

They also obtained gold medals at the 15th World Women's Weightlifting Championships and the 72nd World Men's Weightlifting Championships held in Poland in November the same year.

After winning the 13th AFC Asian Cup, Korean women beat Japan 3:0 in the semi-final and China 2:1 in the final, thus winning the 14th AFC Asian Cup in June 2003. The DPRK team also placed top at the 3rd FIFA U-20 Women's World Championship held in Moscow in September 2006.

A young Korean girl won gold medals in three categories at the World Judo Championships in September 2003 and also in the 57kg category in September 2005, thus becoming a thrice champion.

Korean players topped the total rankings, winning men's and women's team events at the 13th, 14th, 15th and 16th Taekwon-Do World Championships held in 2003, 2005, 2007 and 2009, respectively, thereby demonstrating the dignity of the motherland of Taekwon-Do.

In 2009 and 2010 in particular, Korean athletes won a lot of medals at international competitions, giving a great encouragement to their fellow countrymen in their struggle to build a thriving country.

5. PRESERVING AND SUSTAINING NATIONAL TRADITIONS

Kim Jong Il wisely led the efforts to preserve and develop the traditions of the Korean nation.

He made sure that the people valued their national identity and strove to sustain the national traditions and folk customs.

On February 26, 2002 he reminded the senior officials of the Party Central Committee that it was *Jongwoldaeborum*, the fifteenth day of the first month by the lunar calendar, and told them about the customs concerning the folk holiday. He said that on this holiday the Korean people used to cook side dishes with nine dried edible herbs and *ogokpap* (boiled five cereals-Tr.) and make taffy. He added that now there were many who were ignorant of such customs and stressed the need to inform them of the customs unique to the nation.

The following day he said in the following vein: We should value our national identity and defend it more firmly than other countries. If countries and nations fail to preserve their inherent national identity and grow heterogeneous, they will go to ruin. We must not connive at any trifling tendencies towards abandoning or reforming our national identity but give warning against them. We should give wide publicity to our nation's unique customs and intensify education in them, so as to encourage and carry them forward.

He adopted positive measures to sustain and develop the culture and customs of the nation in all realms of social life.

He had the information campaign for the purpose launched in various forms and by various methods, and education intensified to bring home to students the traditional culture and customs by incorporating them into the curricula. He also paid concern to the information work about the nation's traditional costumes.

He took steps to celebrate lunar New Year's Day in Korean style.

Lunar New Year's Day is Korea's folk holiday. According to historical records, this day had been celebrated as a national holiday until the last period of the feudal Joseon dynasty, to speak nothing of the periods of the Three Kingdoms and Koryo. In Korea the solar calendar has been introduced since January 1, 1896. All the families except the royal family celebrated lunar New Year's Day. This custom continued even after the country's liberation and gradually disappeared because New Year's Day by the solar calendar was prioritized after the Korean war.

On one occasion Kim Jong Il underscored the significance of lunar New Year's Day but over the following decade it was regarded as an ordinary holiday.

On January 2, 2003, stressing the need to preserve and develop the national traditions, Kim Jong Il said:

“It is advisable to make it a tradition to celebrate New Year's Day by the lunar calendar in a big way.

“We should celebrate not only New Year's Day by the lunar calendar but also such folk festivals as *Jongwoldaeborum* (the fifteenth day of the first month by the lunar calendar) and *Hangawi* (the

fifteenth day of the eighth month by the lunar calendar or the Harvest Moon Day) in a more significant way so as to sustain the cultural and life traditions unique to our nation in every way.”

On several other occasions, he took steps to observe lunar New Year’s Day in grand style and make it a tradition.

Under his close concern folk games were encouraged including seesawing, viewing the first full moon, tug of war, kite-flying and *yut* and people preferred playing these games wherever they were.

He also paid particular concern to encouraging and developing the traditional dishes.

On February 16, 2003, he was pleased to learn that on *Jongwoldaeborum* traditional foods including *yakpap* and *ogokpap* were served at the restaurants in Pyongyang, saying that the coming generations should be taught how to cook the traditional foods.

On February 19, 2003 he reiterated the importance of developing traditional foods, taffy in particular.

He said that since olden times Korean taffy had been famous in neighbouring countries and that families often made it. He recollected with deep emotion that in 1956, when he was touring the revolutionary battle sites in the Mt Paektu area, he tasted black taffy made of potatoes.

He continued: The foodstuff industry has not paid due attention to the production of taffy, so there are many children who have not yet tasted taffy. In olden times white taffy was our people’s favourite but nowadays it is difficult to find it. It would be good to encourage the traditional custom of making white taffy on lunar New Year’s Day. Korean taffy varies in kind, some made of sorghum, corn, white rice, glutinous rice, potato and sweet potato, and some others coated with sesame and pine nuts.

Kim Jong Il attached importance to preserving and managing cultural relics, the precious treasure of the nation.

On June 1, 2002, while guiding the work of several sectors in South Hamgyong Province, he visited the Ryangchon Temple in Kowon County.

The temple, built in 753, is quite big and much older than the Songbul Temple in Mt Jongbang and Woljong Temple in Mt Kuwol, both of which have a longer history than other remaining temples.

He stopped in front of the Taeung Hall, the main building of the temple, and said that its exterior was not painted properly and it did not look like an old building. He pointed out that those who did the painting were less skilful than their ancestors.

Referring to the importance of preserving and maintaining cultural relics in good condition and the ways for doing so, he said:

“It is important in maintaining the Juche character and national identity and fostering patriotism to preserve and manage the cultural relics in good condition and conduct effective education in them among the people. As the cultural relics showcase our people’s superb architectural techniques and artistic talents, special concern should be directed to preserving and managing them. …All sectors should be effective in sustaining and adding lustre to our people’s excellent national heritage including the cultural relics, to ensure that our people take greater pride in and dignity of being members of the Korean nation.”

During his visits to the Simwon Temple on February 10, 2003 and to the Anbul Temple on April 8 the same year, he stressed the need to restore the cultural relics to their original state and keep them in good condition, so as to add glory to the nation’s history spanning 5 000 years. And on July 31, 2005 he guided the work of restoring the house of widow Paek, the monument to Kye Wol Hyang and the memorial to Paek Sonhaeng (Sonhaeng means good conduct–Tr.) in Pyongyang.

Afterwards, the Pagyon Falls, Tomb of Hwang Jin I, Tomb of Pak Ji Won, monument to Kye Wol Hyang, Taedong Gate, Ryongwang Pavilion, Sungryong Hall and Pothong Gate were restored to their original state.

Kim Jong Il showed close concern for educating the people in patriotism by means of the cultural relics.

On August 9, 2007 he visited the Jonggwang Temple in Riwon County, South Hamgyong Province.

After being briefed on the relics he looked round the interior and exterior of the temple inquiring about their preservation and management.

The Jonggwang Temple was built in the mid-7th century. Preserved in their original state at the temple were some valuable paintings and other

relics reflecting the characteristics of contemporary society.

Noting that only when they are well versed in their national history, people can cherish ardent patriotism, national pride and self-respect, Kim Jong Il said that the historical relics should be well preserved to inform the people of the culture created by their ancestors.

Looking round the relics, he resumed: Genuine articles should be displayed at the temple. Only then will it look old and lifelike. It is necessary to remove all the fakes from the temple and redo the painting in an original style. Since the cultural relics that showcase our nation's superb architectural skills and artistic talents are valuable cultural wealth of the country, special emphasis should be put on keeping them in a good state of maintenance.

On May 24, 2008 Kim Jong Il visited the Ryonghung Temple in the Paegunsan Pleasure Ground.

The temple, built in 1048, shows the Korean ancestors' architectural skills and artistic talents. It is said that the temple was named so in the sense that it prospers and even dragons admire it.

In the Taeung Hall he saw the ceiling painted in golden colour, jade green pillars, genuine sculptures of mystical monkey-shaped animals lying on both sides of the Buddhist altar, genuine painting hanging behind the Buddhist image and a two-storey niche on the Buddhist image.

Looking up at the painted ceiling, he asked if the ceiling was original. An official answered that it was partly repainted in 1967.

After comparing the original part with the repainted one he commented: Obviously, the original looks mild. Our painters are not skilful enough. Painting becomes significant only when it is preserved in its original state.

He went up to the Unha Pavilion. Unha means that one can enjoy beautiful scenery at the pavilion.

Twelve monks, four cranes and four stags were drawn on the ceiling of the pavilion. The sculpture of a crab was characteristic of the pavilion. By nature a crab carries a stone on its back until it dies. Told that the sculpture was there to support the Unha Pavilion for all eternity, Kim Jong Il said that it sounded reasonable. And then he looked at other genuine objects—wooden fish, bell, wooden basin and container for making rice cake.

He went into the Hyangno Hall where a chief priest used to offer burning incense all day long and then moved to the Muryangsu Pavilion in which the image of Amitabha stands. Listening to a monk's explanation, he specified the principles and ways for unearthing and verifying historical remains.

Then he said:

“Cultural relics are the country’s precious cultural wealth. Therefore, it is necessary to preserve and maintain in good condition the cultural relics permeated with our people’s wisdom and resourcefulness and conduct effective education by means of them. We should be effective in sustaining our nation’s superb cultural heritage to inspire the people with greater pride in and dignity of being members of the Korean nation.”

As shown above, thanks to his energetic leadership the nation’s precious cultural relics could be properly preserved and effectively used to educate the people.

6. ESTABLISHING A SOUND AND CULTURED WAY OF LIFE

Kim Jong Il wisely led the efforts to establish a sound and cultured way of life in line with the requirements of the Songun era.

In his talks to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on February 10 and July 2, 2003, he said:

“Establishing a cultured way of life is not a simple matter of routine, but something very important that is related to the belief in socialism and in the victory of the revolution.”

He continued: In the days of the Arduous March and forced march, as they were convinced of the justness of the socialist cause and the future of the country, the soldiers could create a model of a revolutionary, sound and cultured way of life that is representative of the Songun era and the people in Jagang Province made redoubled efforts to spruce up their native homes, villages and workplaces, living optimistically in the face of manifold

difficulties. We should be superior to any other country and nation in the way of life, as well as in ideological and spiritual life. Only then can we win victory in the confrontation with the enemy and demonstrate the dignity of our country and nation, the might and advantages of our style of socialism in the new century.

Then he advanced tasks for raising a strong wind to establish a cultured way of life across the country in line with the requirements of the times.

He paid primary concern to creating a proper living environment and establishing the sound and cultured Korean-style way of life.

He stressed that even though everything was in short supply, the people in Jagang Province turned their native homes and villages into a socialist fairyland and were leading an optimistic life with confidence in the future. He called this a true picture of the country advancing under the banner of Songun. He underlined the need for all cities and counties of the country to follow the example of Jagang Province and lay out their living environment, including villages, streets, houses and workplaces, as demanded by the new era.

All sectors and all units strove hard to spruce up their cultural and welfare facilities including halls of culture, hostels and canteens, and ensure high quality of service, so that all their employees would enjoy the benefits of the Party's people-oriented policies without feeling any inconvenience in their life.

Kim Jong Il directed due concern to developing food culture.

On July 9, 2002 he said that attention should be paid to improving culinary skills, noting that the country's economy could be soon boosted at a high rate but it would be difficult to develop culinary skills in a short period. He continued that officials concerned should direct attention to developing culinary skills and make strenuous efforts to this end, and specified ways for doing so.

On October 15, three months after that, he underscored the need to ensure effective operation of the restaurants in Pyongyang in which specialties of provinces were served.

He said: Arrangements should be made for these restaurants to compete

with one another by serving the specialties of their respective provinces. This will be effective in developing culinary skills. A cooking competition attended by these restaurants should be organized in a scrupulous way. And those that are excellent should be given wide publicity through TV and radio, and awarded prizes. It is important to develop culinary skills in provinces and disseminate good skills and experiences. Then the people's dietary life will be improved further.

Kim Jong Il made efforts to establish a revolutionary and cultured way of life across society.

On March 6, 2002 he pointed to the necessity of developing cultural and leisure activities in a socialist way through intensive information work. He noted that angling is part of leisure activities, adding that the lines of anglers on the banks of the Taedong or the Pothong would add beauty to the scenery of the capital city.

He led the efforts to build public facilities for the working people's cultural and leisure activities and provide sufficient conditions for them.

During the Arduous March and forced march he visited Mt Chilbo several times and set the orientation for developing the scenic beauty on the east coast. He gave guidance over all the processes ranging from designing to building work to make it a famous resort for the people as befits "Mt Kungang of North Hamgyong."

The pleasure grounds in Mts Kuwol, Myohyang and Ryongak, Songam Cave and Ullim Falls; parks, amusement parks, holiday camps for workers and farmers, Central Zoo and Central Botanical Garden; and other famous mountains and beauty spots are associated with the affection of Kim Jong Il who devoted his whole life for the wellbeing of the people.

CHAPTER 49

TO MARK THE CENTENARY OF THE BIRTH OF PRESIDENT KIM IL SUNG

1. KINDLING THE FLAMES OF A NEW REVOLUTIONARY UPSURGE

TORCH OF KANGSON

The year 2008 was drawing to a close, a year in which the Korean people celebrated the 60th anniversary of the founding of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea. It was about three years before the centenary of the birth of President Kim Il Sung.

At this historic juncture Kim Jong Il was shouldering a heavy responsibility. Over the past few years the Korean people achieved many successes tightening their belts, and yet they had a lot to do and many things were in short supply. The enemies were persistent in their moves against the country as they did not want to see it grow strong and prosperous.

On December 24, 2008 Kim Jong Il visited Kangson to kindle the flames of a new revolutionary upsurge.

Immediately after Korea's liberation Kim Il Sung inspected the then Kangson Steel Plant (today's Chollima Steel Complex-Tr.), though his native home at Mangyongdae was within hailing distance. At the plant he roused the workers to the struggle for building a new Korea. After the Korean war he called on them to bring about the great Chollima upsurge, saying that additional 10 000 tons of steel would greatly help the country. In hearty response to his appeal, the workers produced 120 000 tons of steel from a 60 000-ton-capacity blooming mill.

Upon his arrival at the Chollima Steel Complex, Kim Jong Il went to the monument to the President's field guidance. He surveyed the compound of the complex with a meaningful look, saying to himself that he came there after such a long absence.

There was a mosaic mural depicting the President sitting on a broken block and specifying the orientation for postwar rehabilitation, as well as the poplar tree that had been there as a witness to that day. Kim Jong Il was briefed on the monument and looked round the historic place. Then he moved to the steel workshop No. 1.

He stopped in front of the UHP electric arc furnace, which the employees of the complex built by themselves.

He was greatly satisfied to learn that the officials, technicians and workers had pooled their wisdom and efforts to develop the UHP electric arc furnace, the quintessence of the modern steel-making industry, on their own, saying that the arc furnace was magnificent.

And then he looked into the furnace. An official handed him a pair of protective glasses but he refused, his eyes glued to the molten iron.

The employees of the complex had undergone many difficulties in building the furnace. Its outmoded equipment were consuming much electricity and impeding production growth. However, upgrading them was a financial challenge.

At that time Kim Jong Il underscored the need to renovate the Chollima Steel Complex, saying that the complex is the birthplace of Chollima associated with the leadership exploits of the President and that it should be put on a modern footing at all costs to glorify his exploits.

True to his instructions the management and employees of the complex buckled down to the modernization project.

At first they presumed that as they should modernize the complex in a far-sighted way, it would be reasonable to import equipment from another country with an advanced steel-making industry. Negotiations began, but the price was too high. Worse still, owing to the blockade imposed by the United States, the deal was cancelled.

In August 2007 Kim Jong Il said that as the renovation of a metallurgical factory would be costly and time-consuming, the project

should not be carried on in a haphazard way and that a focus should be put on the processes that could bring great benefits with less fund and they should be upgraded stage by stage.

The workers of the complex were filled with confidence and courage.

In November that year, their favourite song *The Glow over Kangson* was rearranged under Kim Jong Il's concern.

*A glow appears by morning and by evening
But the red glow over Kangson shines all day long.*

...

The people in Kangson regarded this song as an expression of the great trust and appeal of Kim Jong Il who wished they would strive hard in the same spirit and stamina as were displayed by their forerunners in carrying out postwar rehabilitation on the debris of war in the Chollima era.

The whole of Kangson seethed with enthusiasm.

The technicians, including those who had retired, applied themselves to designing the UHP electric arc furnace and ladle-refining furnace in Korean style, and the shop floor workers manufactured the equipment in a short period.

Kim Jong Il dispatched officials of the Party Central Committee to the complex to resolve the knotty problems.

In the course of carrying out the modernization project the officials and workers of the complex realized the validity of Kim Jong Il's instructions that the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance is the key to achieving final victory and bringing forward bright future.

That day, Kim Jong Il was guided to a room in which the charts showing several production lines were displayed. A senior official of the complex told him that they were sorry that the development of Korean-style UHP electric arc furnace had been delayed because they failed to promptly understand his intention.

Kim Jong Il told the official: The complex built the UHP electric arc furnace by taking into account the local supply of electric power, materials and electrodes. Thus it has opened up a bright prospect for boosting the production of steel. It is a great success. You succeeded in developing the new furnace within a few months. This shows that the workers of the Chollima

Steel Complex are carrying forward the fighting spirit of the 1950s.

He specified the goals and direction for developing the complex in line with the world trend, stressing that they should install a continuous rolling mill after perfecting the Juche-based iron-making system.

Then he said:

“The Chollima Steel Complex should raise the fierce flames of a new revolutionary upsurge next year.”

He continued to tell the officials that the development of the steel-making industry was fundamental in revitalizing other sectors of the national economy and the country could attain the status of a thriving nation in 2012 when it would mark the centenary of the birth of President Kim Il Sung. He added that the Chollima Steel Complex should kindle the flames of another revolutionary upsurge in the same spirit as had been displayed in the days of the great Chollima upsurge.

He continued:

“When Kangson, the birthplace of Chollima, is stirred, the whole country will be seething with enthusiasm. And when the workers in Kangson are making a dynamic advance, all other workers in the country will make greater headway, and every sector and unit of the national economy will raise more fierce flames for a general onward march to build a thriving country.”

After seeing the UHP electric arc furnace, he went to the canteen for smelters.

He was pleased to see mineral water there, and went into the kitchen and read the menu. To everyone’s surprise, his face clouded. After a few moments he said: I feel cold because the temperature in the canteen is low. Even though the smelters are served with a nutritious meal, it will not be good for their health because the canteen is cold. It is a serious mistake that the officials have not taken any steps for the convenience of the workers.

Stepping into the room dedicated to the history of the steel complex he said to the officials: It is much warmer in this room than in the canteen. Before New Year’s Day you should make sure that the canteen is kept warm. The general director and the chief Party secretary of the complex should apologize to the workers and take necessary steps to keep the

canteen at a normal temperature before New Year's Day.

After posing for a photograph with the meritorious workers of the complex, he said to the officials of the complex: Now we should adorn every day of the general onward march of the Songun revolution with heroic feats. The workers in Kangson should be the first to respond to the appeal of the present era. This time, too, they should take the lead in the struggle for another revolutionary upsurge by racing against time at the pace of Chollima. In order to raise the fierce flames of a new revolutionary upsurge, the Chollima Steel Complex should give full play to the invincible mental strength that our people fostered true to the intention of the Party in the annals of the arduous revolutionary struggle. To give free rein to the people's mental strength is fundamental in kindling the flames of a new revolutionary upsurge in building a thriving nation.

He underlined the need to raise the flames of a new revolutionary upsurge in the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and specified ways for all sectors to achieve unprecedented production growth in socialist construction.

Before departure, he said to the officials of the complex, looking reluctant to leave:

“I want to emphasize once again that the workers in Kangson should kindle the fierce flames of a new revolutionary upsurge just as they held high the torch of the great Chollima upsurge in hearty response to the decisions of the December 1956 plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee in the postwar years.”

After his visit the complex seethed with vigour.

On December 28, 2008, with a firm resolve to stand in the vanguard of the struggle for a new revolutionary upsurge, the workers in Kangson sent a letter to other working people across the country calling on them to raise a strong wind of upsurge by turning out with one accord in hearty response to the Party's call.

In answer to this letter the working people across the country made redoubled efforts.

The meaningful year 2008 came to a close and the hope-filled year 2009 began.

HISTORIC 150-DAY CAMPAIGN AND 100-DAY CAMPAIGN

On the eve of the year 2009 the whole country was overflowing with vigour in response to the appeal of the workers in Kangson, issued after Kim Jong Il's field guidance trip.

At this crucial juncture he paid close concern to preparing the joint editorial for the significant year.

He ensured that the joint editorial set out clear objectives, ways and tasks to rouse the whole Party and all the people to a new revolutionary upsurge.

Soon afterwards, the mass media made public the joint editorial of *Rodong Sinmun*, the organ of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, *Joson Inmingun*, the newspaper of the Korean People's Army, and *Chongnyon Jonwi*, the organ of the Central Committee of the then Kim Il Sung Socialist Youth League, under the title of "Let Us Glorify This Year as a Year of a New Revolutionary Upsurge Sounding the General Advance."

The joint editorial defined that the general orientation for that year's struggle was to make a leap forward for a great revolutionary upsurge on all sectors by giving full play to the indomitable spirit and using all potentials built up in the flames of Songun. It also advanced tasks such as launching a vigorous political and ideological offensive, applying the mode of struggle and creation of Korean style, creating the speed of the general onward march in the Songun era and ensuring the fullest development of socialist culture.

On January 2, 2009 Kim Jong Il said that the kernel of the joint editorial was to bring about a new revolutionary upsurge that year and an all-people offensive should be launched to make great innovations and leaps forward in all sectors and thus effect a turnaround in socialist construction.

Stressing that the flames of a new revolutionary upsurge should be raised, first of all, on the economic front, he said that the country had risen to the honourable status of an politico-ideological power and military power but failed to attain the goal of building an economic giant and that if it attained that goal, it could put up the doorplate of a thriving nation.

He continued to say: To turn our country into an economic giant is not a goal to be attained in the distant future. We have the seasoned and experienced Party, the people who have been tempered in the revolution and construction, the potentialities of the self-supporting socialist economy and reliable scientific and technical forces. In recent years alone many factories and enterprises have been modernized and major projects completed, with the result that the material and technical foundations and production potentialities of the national economy have been built up. This year we should launch a new general advance to develop the national economy to a higher level by enlisting all potentials to the full.

He stressed the need to make a coordinated innovation in metallurgical, electric-power and coal-mining industries and rail transport, improve the people's livelihood by boosting agriculture and light industry, develop science and technology and raise fiercer flames of technological revolution in every sector of the national economy. He underlined that all sectors and all units should make the most of the potentialities they had accumulated so far, so as to create an incomparably high speed of general advance in the era of Songun.

Pointing to the necessity of launching a vigorous politico-ideological offensive to give free rein to the people's unlimited mental strength, he said that their mental strength is the might of their independent ideology and the flames of a great revolutionary upsurge are a manifestation of their mental strength. He added that the history of a new revolutionary upsurge representative of the 21st century could be created only when the mental strength of the masses was brought into full play. Then he noted that Party organizations and officials, fully aware that they could overcome all manner of difficulties and effect a new revolutionary upsurge only by motivating the people ideologically, should mix with them to enlist their mental strength to the full.

Emphasizing that the country could win final victory as long as it was guided by the great Party and supported by the service personnel and people with unlimited mental strength, who were resolved to go through fire and water in response to the Party's call and work an epoch-making miracle, he said:

“The whole Party, the entire army and all the people should achieve solid unity around the Party and create the history of a new revolutionary upsurge, thereby demonstrating the might of Songun Korea to the world.”

From the outset of the year 2009 he inspected many units to ensure that the torch of a new revolutionary upsurge kindled in Kangson flared up across the country.

The number of the units that he inspected in the first quarter of the year following his visit to the Wonsan Youth Power Station on January 5, 2009 was more than four times higher than that in the same period of the previous year.

On February 17 that year he said to officials: I have travelled by train and lived in it without going home for two months since the end of last year. I have been making a forced march to give guidance over several sectors of the national economy. It seems that I am accustomed to this forced march living in the train day and night. During the past two months of the forced march there have been many holidays including lunar New Year’s Day. On these days I wanted to have a rest at home having a good time with my family, but I could not do so.

With a view to raising fiercer flames of a new revolutionary upsurge and effecting a decisive turn in building a thriving country, he proposed launching the 150-day and 100-day campaigns successively.

Travelling around the country and witnessing the people’s mounting revolutionary stamina, he decided to launch a 150-day campaign with the aim of stepping up the building of an economic giant.

He designated the duration of the campaign as the period from April 20 to September 16, 2009, and set the goals of this campaign to be attained in the four vanguard sectors of the national economy—metallurgical, electric-power and coal-mining industries and rail transport—and in agriculture and light industry. He ensured that the Party guidance teams for the 150-day campaign comprising the officials of the Party Central Committee and other Party, administrative and economic officials were organized and dispatched to the subordinate units, and he set up a well-regulated control and guidance system.

He wisely led the campaign to ensure it a success.

He visited nearly 100 units in the economic sector to encourage the masses to boost production by giving full play to their mental strength.

In May and June 2009 he inquired about the work of the Party guidance teams that had been dispatched to the factories, enterprises and cooperative farms and said that they should give effective Party guidance over the ongoing production, throw their full weight behind the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions, go deep among the masses and lead other officials and workers through personal example so that they would fan the flames of an all-out struggle. He added that the teams should give a strong push to technical upgrading and modernization, direct concern to boosting production and improving product quality, and resolve the knotty problems in the livelihood of the employees.

He ensured that they put special emphasis on implementing the Party's mass line.

During his visit to the Namhung Youth Chemical Complex in May 2009 he acquainted himself with the work of the Party guidance team there and said that attention should be directed to the work with the masses in accordance with the Party's mass line. In late June he told the senior officials of the Party Central Committee that administrative officials should focus on boosting production and Party officials on implementing the mass line.

He had a fireworks display arranged in celebration of the Day of the Sun and May Day to give the people a great encouragement in their efforts to build a thriving nation.

The 150-day campaign proved quite successful. The industrial sector overfulfilled its plan by 12%. Many factories and enterprises overfulfilled their yearly plan ahead of schedule. In particular, as compared to the same period of the previous year rapid growth was made in the production of major industrial goods and the volume of freight transportation increased by 18%. In the period of the campaign over 50 construction projects and 110 modernization projects were carried out, thus solidifying the foundations of the national economy.

Kim Jong Il decided to top off the 150-day campaign with the field guidance trip to the construction site of the Huichon Power Station, and visited it on September 17 for the second time.

A few days later, the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea published a press release on the successful conclusion of the 150-day campaign.

On October 10 he said to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee:

“In response to the Party’s appeal our people have brought to a successful conclusion the 150-day campaign aimed at glorifying this year as a year of great changes that will set up a milestone in building a thriving country. Thus they have achieved in all sectors of socialist construction great victories and successes that will be etched in the history of the country.”

He roused all the people to another campaign spanning 100 days from September 23 to December 31.

The 100-day campaign was a final offensive to glorify 2009 as a year full of auspicious events to be recorded in the history of the country and provide a springboard for scoring a greater victory in the next year of the 65th anniversary of the Party.

The main thrust of this campaign was economic development.

Kim Jong Il specified goals to be attained in the 100-day campaign, just as he had done in the 150-day campaign.

His inspection trips continued in the whole course of the 100-day campaign.

For over 60 days after the end of the 150-day campaign he visited more than 30 units.

Ministries including four vanguard sectors, central agencies and thousands of factories and enterprises, dozens of which were visited by Kim Jong Il, in provinces around the country overfulfilled their plans. The national plan of the total industrial output for the 100-day campaign was overfulfilled by 9%, which was a 38% increase as compared to the corresponding period of the previous year.

The yearly plan of the total industrial output was overfulfilled by 3%, an 11% increase over 2008. This led to an upturn in the national economy.

On December 26, 2009 the Korean Central News Agency released a report, titled, *The Long Road of Patriotic Devotion Will Go Down in the*

History of the Country, which said that in 2009 Kim Jong Il gave field guidance at over 200 units to bring about a turning point in building a thriving country.

2. LEADING THE VANGUARD SECTORS OF THE NATIONAL ECONOMY TO BRING ABOUT AN UPSWING IN PRODUCTION

FOR A GREAT LEAP FORWARD IN BUILDING THE HUICHON POWER STATION

Kim Jong Il made efforts to kindle the flames of a new revolutionary upsurge in the electric-power industry as it was essential in developing the country into an economic giant and improving the people's living standards.

He defined the Huichon Power Station as one of the major construction projects for 2009 and advanced a plan to complete it by 2012 in which the Korean people would mark the centenary of the birth of President Kim Il Sung.

On January 8, 2009, when setting out the task of completing the construction of the Huichon Power Station by 2012, he said that resolving the problem of electricity was fundamental in effecting a turnaround in building a thriving country and the Huichon Power Station should be built to ease the strain on electricity for Pyongyang.

Originally, it was a large-scale power project envisaged in the process of the national re-surveying of hydraulic resources that had been undertaken in the mid-1980s.

On January 18 he reiterated the pressing need to build the power station and entrusted the task to the soldier-builders. On February 25 he had the National Defence Commission issue an order on enlisting the whole Party, the entire army and all the people in completing the project by 2012.

He visited the construction site several times, fully convinced that the project could be completed in three years by relying on the mental strength of all the people and the economic potentialities of the country.

He visited the construction site in an out-of-way mountain for the first time in March 2009.

At that time there was nothing special at the site of the Ryongnim Dam of unit 1 of the power station, except some flagpoles and wooden panels marking the location of the dam and its height and length.

After inquiring about the location and size of the dam, he exclaimed that it was a huge dam. He then called the cameraman and instructed him to shoot the scene, saying that the site would be under water in some three years' time and the photographs would go down in history.

The project was so huge that it was estimated to take more than a decade. However, though foundation work was yet to begin, Kim Jong Il was certain that it would be built within the set period.

He said: Thorough preparations should be made to build the power station by 2012. It seems easy to say that they could finish the huge task of dam-building in three years, but it would be hard to do so if they were not firm in their resolve. However, I believe that the soldier-builders will carry out the task without fail. Now this is a desolate place in which only the sound of the flowing stream can be heard. But thanks to the builders' heroic struggle we will in the near future see a tall dam and a big artificial lake here. To bring forward the day of completion the builders should wage a dynamic struggle in the revolutionary soldier spirit.

An official told Kim Jong Il that he was very impressed by his visit to the construction site in the rugged mountains before anybody else.

Kim Jong Il said: I have been told that officials have not yet visited the construction site of the Ryongnim Dam. I have become used to inspecting construction sites in remote regions. I have always travelled an untrodden path. It is a temperament and work style of revolutionaries to advance ahead even in the face of trials although others may hesitate to do so.

That day he went to the construction site of unit 2 of the power station. He praised the soldier-builders for having excavated 100 000 cubic metres of earth and built mixing ground, cement silo and aggregate selection area. He highly praised them for having worked with devotion in the spirit of the 1950s displayed by the combatants of the Korean People's Army and other Korean people in defending their country to the death and in the

revolutionary soldier spirit of the 1990s displayed by the service personnel in overcoming the grim trials facing the country with a do-or-die determination.

He continued to note that the construction of the Huichon Power Station was more challenging than that of the Anbyon Youth Power Station or the Wonsan Youth Power Station, affirming that the project would be completed in three years since there were the army and people faithful to the Party and the powerful Juche-oriented industry established by President Kim Il Sung.

He added:

“The builders of the Huichon Power Station will demonstrate the mettle of Songun Korea once again by creating a new speed in the course of its construction. We are optimistic about our victory. I believe in the inexhaustible strength of our service personnel and other people.”

On September 17, 2009, when a new construction speed of the Songun era was being created in building the power station, he visited the construction site again.

He learned about the dam building of unit 2 of the power station and praised that they finished in five months the amount of work estimated to take five years.

Noting that leaps forward and innovations were being made one after another there, he said, **“The speed that is being created in building the Huichon Power Station is precisely the Huichon speed, a new Chollima speed based on the revolutionary soldier spirit that is representative of the Songun era.”**

The Huichon speed was the attacking speed of the a-match-for-a-hundred, heroic Korean People’s Army capable of capturing any stronghold with lightning speed flying the flag of the Supreme Commander, the speed of all the service personnel and other people keeping pace with the leadership of the revolution on the forced march, single-heartedly united behind it, and the speed of Songun Korea storming ahead towards the goal of a thriving nation in a race against time.

That day Kim Jong Il said: I have been inspired with firm conviction.

Here you can clearly see what an inexhaustible strength people have. Since there are the army and people unfailingly loyal to the Party and the revolution, we can surely accomplish any epochal, grand nature-remaking project as we wish.

On January 3, 2010 he visited the construction site for the third time. This was his first field guidance trip of the year, and it was around minus 30°C, the coldest day in 65 years.

At that time dam building was in full swing at unit 2 of the power station.

Looking round the construction site, Kim Jong Il said: As a saying goes, a good start leads to a successful end. You have made notable progress in dam building within a short period, as you drew up a bold plan. Dam building, tunnelling, laying of power cables and production of generating equipment are being conducted in a three-dimensional way, so the Cabinet, ministries, central agencies and all other units of the country should supply on a preferential basis equipment and materials necessary for building the Huichon Power Station.

Kim Jong Il got into his car and was taking his departure, when the soldier-builders, recognizing him, raised enthusiastic cheers.

He got off and waved back to the cheering soldiers.

Later, recalling the day, he said that he could not forget the soldiers cheering loudly with puffs of breath.

On January 7, 2010, back from the construction site, he sent a letter of special thanks to all the builders.

On April 17 the same year he inspected the construction site for the fourth time. One year previously, he had met the soldiers of a Guards unit at the completed Nyongwon Power Station and promised them to see again in Huichon.

He went into a waterway tunnel where those soldiers were building a surge tank. The interior of the tunnel was not covered in concrete and water was dripping from the low ceiling. The electric wires and lamps were hanging below.

At first the officials accompanying Kim Jong Il dissuaded him from entering the tunnel. But he dug in his heels, saying that his soldiers were

working in the tunnel and he came there since he had been told that the soldier-builders of the unit expanded the section of the tunnel under their charge as scheduled. He told the officials that he wanted to see it with his own eyes and they did not need to worry about his safety.

Inside the tunnel he saw the long-stretching channel and structures and said: Today I have walked through the tunnel to see the surge tank under construction, and I think it is worth my while. If I had not come into the tunnel I would not have seen this great structure the soldier-builders took so much pain to set up without getting enough sleep at night. In the future, after switching on the power station, this tunnel will be filled with water. Then no one can see this surge tanks for ever. The Guards unit that has performed heroic exploits in the tunnelling work should be named **Huichon Shock Brigade** and it should be given wide publicity. The soldier-builders of the unit came to the construction site of the Huichon Power Station soon after building the Nyongwon Power Station, so I could not pose for a photograph with them. Today I will pose for one. They are praiseworthy as they completed the Nyongwon power project with credit and are taking the lead in carrying out the Huichon power project.

Then Kim Jong Il posed for a camera with them all.

On November 3 that year he inspected unit 1 of the power station, and on December 21, unit 2 in which over 96% of the dam-building work was done.

In several parts of the construction site he saw the slogan *Let us take responsibility for the safety of the project and guarantee its absolute quality for all eternity!*

The slogan embodies the ennobling outlook on the future held by the soldiers in the Songun era who are resolved to become roots for the future of their country, he said. He affirmed that thanks to the devoted struggle of the soldiers and other builders there a bright prospect was opened up for finishing the large-scale construction of the Huichon Power Station by 2012. He called upon them to wage a bold offensive to bring forward the day of completion.

A little more than two years after its launch the construction of the Huichon Power Station was nearing completion. This was a result of the

energetic guidance and devotion of Kim Jong Il who visited the construction site six times, encouraging the soldier-builders to perform heroic exploits.

He also ensured that other hydropower projects were carried on around the country and a high level of power generation maintained at thermal power stations.

He inspected power generation bases and construction sites of hydropower stations in the country to ensure full operation of the existing equipment and increase of hydraulic resources.

TO ESTABLISH THE JUCHE ORIENTATION
IN METALLURGICAL INDUSTRY AND DEVELOP
COAL-MINING INDUSTRY AND RAIL TRANSPORT

Kim Jong Il lead the workers in the metallurgical and coal-mining industries and rail transport to stand in the vanguard of the struggle for a great upsurge and make a breakthrough for it.

He defined the metallurgical industry as the pacesetter, pioneer and foundation in building a thriving socialist country, and ensured that priority was given to developing it.

He saw to it that the factories and enterprises in the metallurgical industry made sustained efforts for technical upgrading to perfect the Juche-based system of making steel and increase the output of iron and steel.

Back in the late 1950s, Kim Il Sung pointed out the necessity of making iron with anthracite and brown coal abundant in the country, saying that the adherents of the Juche idea should strive to develop the Juche-based iron-making system. Under his close concern tests were conducted in revolving furnaces and new-type blast furnaces to develop various techniques for the production of iron and steel.

During the Arduous March the research into such techniques was impeded and, worse still, the shortage of electricity and inadequate supply of minerals and coking coal hindered the production of iron over several years.

To establish the Juche-based system of producing iron and steel presented itself as a pressing task.

Kim Jong Il underscored the importance of this task on several occasions, resolving the problems arising in its implementation.

He paid special concern to establishing the Juche-based system of making iron at the Songjin Steel Complex, the pivot of the country's metallurgical industry.

In March 1998, when he was making effort to kindle the torch of Songgang, he took necessary steps to ensure that the steel complex maintained regular production, stressing the need to establish the Juche orientation in developing the iron and steel industry.

The technicians and workers of the steel complex buckled down to the research project and, in December 1999, developed an innovative method.

Experts and many other people, however, were skeptical about the new technique in its initial stage. Occasional accidents caused them to grow less confident.

The employees of the steel complex persevered with the research and succeeded in it in January 2001.

Being reported on the news, Kim Jong Il said that the Juche-based system of making iron established by the Songjin Steel Complex was very interesting, and gave instructions on setting up a new line to maintain regular production.

The employees of the steel complex carried out the huge task of replacing the old line with a new one and began to normalize production.

In December 2004 Kim Jong Il visited the steel complex and looked round its new line for long hours.

Calling it a great success, he said that he was most pleased that they managed to implement President Kim Il Sung's instructions, and encouraged them to set a more ambitious goal for a leap forward. Later the technicians and workers of the steel complex conducted research to develop a new steel-making technique.

In September 2009 Kim Jong Il visited the steel complex again to inquire about the research. He praised that the technique was entirely new and expressed full support for it.

In the middle of December that year they succeeded in developing the unique technique—producing steel without cooling molten iron.

At dawn on December 18, 2009, upon learning the news, Kim Jong Il came to the steel complex.

Seeing the molten iron, he said: At last the Songjin Steel Complex has succeeded in establishing the Juche-based system of producing steel. Thus it has taken the lead in carrying out the President’s instructions. The Juche-based system of producing steel established by the heroic workers of the Songjin Steel Complex is a great miraculous exploit that can be performed only by the loyal people who are thoroughly equipped with the President’s revolutionary ideology, the Juche idea, and support the Party with pure conscience and obligation.

Kim Jong Il looked very pleased, as he was stroking the steel ingots in front of a furnace.

He resumed:

“That the workers of the Songjin Steel Complex have perfected the Juche-based system of producing iron and steel by relying on their efforts and technology is a historic milestone in the development of the metallurgical industry; it is a great revolution and a victory more significant than the successful launch of the third nuclear test.”

He stressed: I think it unnecessary to write a treatise on how the iron produced by the Juche-based system is turned into steel. It will be enough to come to the Songjin Steel Complex, listen to the experience it gained, and see steel with one’s own eyes. Our Party, army and people will never forget the exploits its workers performed in fully demonstrating the heroic mettle and spirit of the Korean working class, who are determined to move mountains at a go if it is their Party’s directive, and in laying the solid foundation for the prosperity of the country and the well-being of the future generations.

The officials of the steel complex recounted that he had kindled the torch of Songgang and visited the steel complex several times to encourage its workers and bestow warm affection on them as they were striving hard to establish the Juche-based system of producing iron and steel. They chalked their success up to his extraordinary wisdom and sagacious guidance.

Kim Jong Il told the officials: You are wrong. As a saying goes, there is no renowned general without loyal soldiers. Though I raised a torch, it would be useless if there were no faithful men following it. Since the workers of the Songjin Steel Complex have followed the Party holding high the torch of Songgang, Songun Korea has scored a proud success of establishing the Juche-based system of producing iron and steel. They are precious assets of the country and they should be seated on golden cushions. Such heroic workers unflinchingly loyal to the Party and the leader should be given prominence and their exploits propagated, so that the whole country can be aware of them.

Then he invited to Pyongyang the officials, technicians and workers of the Songjin Steel Complex who rendered a contribution to establishing the Juche-based system of producing iron and steel, and drew up the programme for their visit.

He said, **“I am very glad to see the Songjin Steel Complex mass-producing steel thanks to the Juche-based system of making iron. This is the happiest day in my life. I feel greatly satisfied.”**

He ensured that other factories in the metallurgical industry increased production by establishing the Juche-based system of producing iron and steel in conformity with their specific conditions.

During his visits to the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex in February and December 2009 and December 2010, he inquired about how their research projects were going and told officials that they should not be skeptical about the possibility of making iron without using coke, but buckle down to the projects with an attitude that they must introduce the Juche-based system unconditionally. He stressed that they should not assume that they were divorcing themselves from coke but think that coke was “dead.”

In March 2009 and February 2010 he visited the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex and adopted measures to maintain regular production under the Juche-based system, saying that the technique of producing iron and steel could be called the lifeline of the country’s economic development and its philosophy.

On May Day, 2009 he invited the employees of the Chollima Steel

Complex, Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex and other relevant units to Pyongyang and, together with them, enjoyed the revolutionary opera *The Flower Girl* and a performance given by the State Merited Chorus.

To encourage the workers in the metallurgical industry he had them join a soiree to watch a fireworks display and arranged a banquet in their honour.

Bearing in mind his deep trust in them, the workers raised fierce flames of a great revolutionary upsurge and boosted the output of iron and steel during the 150-day and 100-day campaigns.

Kim Jong Il took proactive steps to develop the coal-mining industry and rail transport.

The demand for coal was rapidly growing in electric-power, metallurgical, chemical and refractory industries.

In March 2009 Kim Jong Il inspected the Anju Area Coal-Mining Complex. He stressed that the coal from the area should be used as raw materials for the metallurgical industry, not as fuel, and strict measures taken to use it in developing the industry. Then he resolved problems arising in restoring the inundated pits and normalizing production.

In August the same year he visited the February 8 Jiktong Youth Coal Mine and underscored the need to increase the output of coal, saying that it was badly needed to produce chemical fertilizer, iron, steel and magnesia clinker and to run thermal power stations at full capacity.

In November 2009 and November 2010 and on several other occasions he underlined the significance of coal production and better arrangements for it.

He directed due concern to developing rail transport, the pilot of the national economy, for a great upsurge in other sectors. He took steps to set up a heavy rails production line and increase their output at the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex, and inspected the complex several times to this end. He also adopted additional measures of solidifying the roadbed, keeping the rails under regular repair and maintenance, establishing strict discipline in the rail transport sector, organizing transport effectively and setting up a well-knit command system, and ensuring enough supply of electric power.

3. TO PUSH BACK THE FRONTIERS OF SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION IN THE NEW CENTURY—INTRODUCTION OF CNC TECHNOLOGY

Kim Jong Il's primary concern in applying the Party's idea of breaking through the cutting edge was to raise the flames of the industrial revolution in the new century by introducing CNC technology of Korean style.

Since long ago he had made a close study of the world trend to develop the country's machine-building industry and ensured that positive steps to this end were taken.

At a time when the struggle for a new revolutionary upsurge was in full swing, he advanced the idea of breaking through the cutting edge in all sectors to beat the world and led the efforts to kindle the flames of a quantum leap in the development of science and technology.

On August 13, 2009 he told officials that it was good that the Party newspaper carried the political editorial *Break through the Cutting Edge* in the historic period when a dynamic struggle was being waged to build a thriving nation.

He said:

“Break through the cutting edge!”—this is the fighting slogan that we should uphold at present.”

He continued that this slogan was symbolic of the appeal of the Party Central Committee and a strong wind should be raised to break through the cutting edge in all sectors as well as the machine-building industry.

He had a song written on the theme of this technological revolution in the new century and ensured that it resounded throughout the country.

The song *Break through the Cutting Edge* was created in September 2009.

He ensured that this song was included in the numbers of the October Concert performed in the following month to make it a march in the new era of great upsurge.

He led the efforts to raise the machine-building industry to a higher level on the basis of the successes gained in introducing CNC technology.

For the mass-production of CNC machine tools needed in several sectors of the national economy he ensured that a factory was set as a model in manufacturing CNC machine tools. Then he gave field guidance at the factory and said that the latest-model large complex machining centre and other CNC equipment should be produced in large numbers.

He led the officials and technicians in this sector to develop a more efficient multi-axis CNC machine tool without resting on their laurels.

He paid particular concern to developing tools, taking it as essential in introducing CNC technology in the machine-building industry.

During his visit to a factory in November 2009 he said to the officials: In our country many factories and enterprises are upgrading their equipment by introducing CNC technology and a song about it was created. But we have not yet resolved the problem of tools. Tools are a criterion for estimating the level of the introduction of CNC technology. Today I have come to this factory though according to my schedule I have to inspect other factories.

He set out the task of turning it into a model factory in the Songun era, noting that it should upgrade its equipment on the basis of advanced technology in a matter of one year through a daring technical innovation campaign geared to resolving the problem of tools.

True to his instructions the officials of the factory and the technicians of the relevant units worked hard to improve the appearance of the factory; in a little more than one year they equipped the factory with modern machines for tool production, which they designed and manufactured by relying on their own techniques.

In November 2009 he underlined the need to develop indigenous CNC machine tools. During his July 2010 visit to a factory he set a new objective for achieving full automation. In 2009 and 2010 he inspected machine-building factories one after another, acquainting himself with the introduction of CNC technology in upgrading existing machine tools, clarifying ways to this end and encouraging the employees.

He ensured that all sectors of the national economy and all realms of

social life strove hard to break through the cutting edge, based on the successes the machine-building industry gained in the introduction of CNC technology.

He paid due concern to introducing CNC technology at locally-run factories, to say nothing of such major sectors as metallurgical, electric-power and coal-mining industries and rail transport.

Thanks to his brilliant leadership the strong wind of introducing CNC technology for the industrial revolution in the new century swept across the country and this provided a powerful impetus to the general onward march for a new revolutionary upsurge. This constitutes part of the valuable revolutionary legacy bequeathed by Kim Jong Il for the prosperity of the nation.

CASCADES OF VINALON AND FERTILIZER AND JUCHE ORIENTATION OF THE REFRACTORY INDUSTRY

For the adequate supply of raw and other materials urgently needed in several sectors of the national economy and for the people's livelihood, Kim Jong Il fanned the flames of innovation in the chemical and refractory industries.

In 2009 alone he visited several times the February 8 Vinalon Complex that has a major bearing on the economy of the country and the betterment of the people's livelihood. During these visits he acquainted himself in detail with the actual situation in the complex and, on this basis, unfolded a plan of modernizing the complex and boosting its production.

Already in the 1990s he conceived a plan for renovating this complex, a symbol of the country's chemical industry, to meet the demands of the upcoming new century.

Since the mid-1990s the operation of the complex had been virtually suspended because of the shortage of coal and electricity, and with the advent of the new century, the service life of its facilities expired, including the large-sized electrolyzer for the process of caustic soda.

When he visited the Hamhung Branch of the then Academy of Sciences in March 1999, he was told that some were claiming that the Vinalon

Research Institute should be disbanded.

He advised that they should find the theme of a research project in the stage of intermediate product and said: In five to ten years we should, at any cost, develop cutting-edge technology for producing valuable goods from the intermediate product of vinalon; Dr. Ri Sung Gi developed the technology of producing cotton from stone in the 20th century, contributing to the establishment of a Juche-oriented industry. Today you should generate better research findings to build up the vinalon industry in the 21st century.

In November 2006, during his visit to the then Hamhung University of Chemical Engineering, he went over the estimation plan of the urgent production of vinalon displayed at the hall of scientific invention. Later, after making a close study of it, he hardened his resolve to materialize that plan.

Subsequently, the renovation project of the February 8 Vinalon Complex was undertaken under an ambitious plan.

In August 2007 he inspected the complex again. After looking round the renovation site, he said that shoring up the complex was a pressing task and that when the comprehensive base for chemical industry was advancing vigorously, it could supply larger amounts of raw materials to several sectors including light industry. He continued that it should not slacken but concentrate efforts on spurring technical upgrading in line with the requirements of the 21st century to operate all the major production lines the following year. He also had the Cabinet and other related units resolve the problems arising in carrying out the project.

During his May 2008 visit, he inquired about the modernization plan worked out by the complex and agreed with it. While making the rounds of the newly-built production lines he spoke highly of the workers, saying that their mental strength was being brought into full play.

On February 2009 he visited the complex again. He reviewed the flow diagram of polyvinyl alcohol and told its officials that they must complete the establishment of the vinalon production lines within that year.

Noting that production-related buildings had been repaired and enough supplies of electricity and water ensured, he stressed that if some more lines were supplemented, it would be possible to normalize the

production of vinalon as soon as possible.

Stressing that they should make good preparations for it, he said to the officials of the complex:

“As the workers in Kangson have called for an upsurge, those at the February 8 Vinalon Complex should respond positively to their appeal. The former should advance with vigour in the western area and the latter in the eastern area. The vinalon complex should round out the vinalon production lines within this year and boast about them.”

After looking round the shop floor he underlined that the complex’s position and role were very important in developing the country’s economy and improving the people’s living standards.

Then he said:

“I want to stress once again that the February 8 Vinalon Complex must establish the vinalon production lines without fail. This is an order given to this complex by the Supreme Commander.”

Again in November 2009 he visited the complex and appealed to its employees to push ahead with the establishment of the new production lines in a big and audacious way and thus add eternal glory to the leadership exploits of President Kim Il Sung, who paved the way for building the vinalon industry.

In February 2010 he stayed for two days at the renovated February 8 Vinalon Complex in which the trial operation of the new lines was going on at the last stage. He touched vinalon cotton and said: It is a mega success as significant as an A-bomb test and a great auspicious event for the country that the complex has been renovated in a short span of time and commenced the mass-production of vinalon. We should think that this time the complex has been newly built in a modern fashion, not renovated, and its employees have demonstrated the mettle of the workers in South Hamgyong Province.

On March 6 a mass rally was held in celebration of the commissioning of the vinalon factory in Hamhung.

Kim Jong Il attended the rally and warmly congratulated the workers of the complex and other citizens in Hamhung for having performed feats of labour in renovating the complex.

He led the efforts to perfect the fertilizer production lines through coal gasification.

In the late 1960s a fertilizer production line based on anthracite gasification had been built in Hungnam, where other various methods were being used in producing chemical fertilizer.

However, as the supply of electricity was insufficient and the gasification line worn out, fertilizer was not being produced in plenty.

The same was true of the Namhung Youth Chemical Complex. Since the 1990s the difficulty of importing naphtha, a major material, caused a great hindrance to the production of fertilizer.

Kim Jong Il was greatly concerned about the production of chemical fertilizer.

While visiting another country in April 2004 he was informed of the fact that the country was using anthracite in producing fertilizer even though it was rich in crude oil.

He told the officials in his company that due attention should be paid to using the coal as crude oil was unavailable in Korea and underscored the need to undertake the anthracite gasification project immediately.

Soon afterwards, the Namhung Youth Chemical Complex, which had relied on naphtha, buckled down to the anthracite gasification project, and the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex, the lignite gasification project.

However, they encountered many obstacles in carrying out these projects.

At this juncture Kim Jong Il set it as a pressing task of national significance to establish a Juche-oriented fertilizer production system based on domestic raw materials, and underscored the need to complete the ongoing projects by concentrating efforts on them. In May 2009, when the 150-day campaign was in full swing, he visited the Namhung Youth Chemical Complex. He looked round the construction site of the anthracite gasification line and resolved knotty problems.

True to his instructions the employees of the complex made redoubled efforts to build the anthracite gasification line. They switched on that line in April 2010.

After looking round the new gasification line in June that year he was greatly satisfied.

He said: The anthracite gasification line has been equipped with modern machinery. The Party has advanced the slogan “Keep your feet firmly planted on this land and look out over the world.” The workers, scientists and technicians in Namhung, true to the Party’s intention, have devoted their wisdom and strength to building the excellent anthracite gasification line.

Kim Jong Il also led the efforts to build an ammonia production line based on lignite gasification at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex.

After completing the design of the ammonia production line, the complex stepped up preparations for its construction.

In February 2009 he visited the complex and learned about the ammonia production line based on lignite gasification, in comparison with other ammonia production lines. He supported its plan, saying that the ammonia production line based on coal gasification was very effective as it would consume less electricity.

That day he stressed that as the workers in Kangson were leading the country in the effort to kindle the flames of a new revolutionary upsurge, those in Hungnam should take the lead in the struggle to create a new speed of general onward march by spurring the technical upgrading of the ammonia production line.

In November that year he paid another visit to the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex and took a series of measures in advance. In August 2010 he visited the complex again and resolved all problems including the prompt delivery of necessary equipment and materials.

By the close of 2010 the complex nearly finished the construction of buildings and assembling of equipment needed for the gasification line.

Thanks to the workers’ vigorous struggle the gasification project was completed in October 2011.

Kim Jong Il made great efforts to establish the Juche orientation in developing the refractory industry.

His primary attention was directed to ensuring the domestic production of magnesia clinker.

As was the case with other sectors, the production of refractory was being greatly impeded by the insufficient supply of coking coal, which is

unavailable in the country. Komdok and Tanchon are world-famous for the deposits of magnesite. However, part of the products should be bartered for coking coal and the volume of production was dependent on the supply of coking coal.

Early in the 2000s Kim Jong Il said that dependence on coking coal was not the way to developing the clinker industry, pointing to the necessity of developing a Korean-style clinker production method, and specified tasks and ways to this end.

The officials and scientists at the then Taehung Youth Mine and the Tanchon Magnesia Factory succeeded in developing industrial methods for the production of clinker with the use of raw and other materials available in the country. Thus they provided a sure guarantee for boosting the output of magnesia clinker and light burned magnesia, making a tangible contribution to normalizing production at iron and steel plants.

During his visit to the Taehung Youth Mine in May 2009, Kim Jong Il was satisfied with the fact that it established the Juche orientation in the production of refractory.

After making detailed inquiries about the progress made in producing refractory without using coking coal, he said to the general director:

“That the Juche orientation has been fully established in the production of refractory can be called a revolution and it is a great exploit of historic significance in the development of our country’s industry. It is a great achievement that is no inferior to a successful nuclear test.”

Greatly pleased that the President’s plan was translated into reality, he said that the officials, designers, technicians and workers of the mine, who contributed to establishing the Juche orientation in the production of refractory, were heroes. He added that it would be good to confer the title of Hero on the mine, not merely on the equipment, and rename it the Taehung Youth Hero Mine.

He praised the workers again for their laudable exploit and said that they were not there with him and, as a token of his respect for them, he would bow to the flow chart showing the Korean-style refractory production lines.

4. FOR A RADICAL IMPROVEMENT OF THE PEOPLE'S LIVELIHOOD

BOOSTING AGRICULTURE AND FISHING INDUSTRY

Kim Jong Il wisely led the struggle to improve the people's material and cultural standards of living on the occasion of the centenary of the birth of President Kim Il Sung.

To steadily improve the people's living standards is the supreme principle governing the activities of the Workers' Party of Korea and one of the most important affairs which the great leaders prioritized all their life.

In 2009 and 2010 Kim Jong Il directed close concern to making the people well-off by shoring up light industry and agriculture.

In January 2009 he said that the flames of a new revolutionary upsurge should be kindled first in the economic sector, stressing that agriculture and light industry should be radically developed to improve the people's standard of living.

In January the following year he underlined that in the previous year the springboard for a leap to the pinnacle of an economic giant was provided through the modernization of the major factories and enterprises, adding that the priority for 2010 should be to solve the problem of the people's livelihood by concentrating efforts on light industry and agriculture.

He said:

“We should launch a general offensive by ensuring that the Party and the state focus their attention on improving the people's living standards. In this way we should make sure that today's success for a great upsurge leads to a greater exploit and glorify this significant year as a year of prosperity for the well-being of the people. Officials should make good arrangements and strive hard to resolve the problem of the people's livelihood.”

He paid close attention to increasing agricultural production by developing crop cultivation, animal husbandry and fruit farming.

In April 2009 he identified the most pressing task in socialist economic construction, to be resolving the food problem by bringing about an innovation in cereals production, and stressed that the agricultural sector should effect a new revolutionary upsurge.

He pointed to the necessity of boosting cereals production in the agricultural sector as a whole by encouraging model farms to effect a turnaround in production and other farms to follow their suit. He ensured that the emulation drive undertaken by several farms on the western coast spread to those on the eastern coast.

In December 2006 he visited the Migok Cooperative Farm in Sariwon and set it as a model for all other farms in the country. On June 7, 2007 he visited the Sinam Cooperative Farm in Ryongchon County and said that it should challenge the Migok Cooperative Farm. On June 10, some days later, he said that the Migok Cooperative Farm in Sariwon, the Sinam Cooperative Farm in Ryongchon County and the Samjigang Cooperative Farm in Jaeryong County should compete against one another. While giving field guidance at the Unhung Cooperative Farm in Thaecheon County in July 2008, he learned about its crop cultivation and encouraged it to participate in the above competition, thus expanding it to the middle areas of the country, as well as to the lowlands on the western coast.

Since then these four farms vied with one another to boost the output of cereals and all other farms launched a dynamic struggle to learn from their good experiences.

In February 2009 Kim Jong Il visited the Tongbong Cooperative Farm in Hamju County.

The officials of the farm told him that they would compete against the four farms on the western coast.

He said to them: I am planning to encourage these five farms to keep on competing against one another. It is good that the Tongbong Cooperative Farm has challenged the four farms on the western coast. It is one to four. In other words, this farm on the eastern coast is attacking the four farms on the western coast. I will make it public that the management of the Tongbong Cooperative Farm have pledged to take part in the socialist emulation drive. You should make redouble efforts in the future.

That day he said that improving the fertility of the fields was essential in boosting the per-hectare yield of cereals, and gave advice on the ways to this end. He said that as the farm was near the city of Hamhung and the township of Hamju, it would be good to bring manure from the urban areas and as the Hamju Pig Farm was not far from the farm, it would be easy to bring liquid manure from it.

He visited this farm in June and November and led it to set an example in farming on the eastern coast.

In June 2009 he inspected the farm again as it was making preparations for the farming process following rice-transplantation. He learned in detail about how they were working, and stressed the need to establish a suitable crop cultivation system and do double-cropping according to regional features. He said that the farm could take the first place in the socialist emulation drive, that it should not rest on its laurels but work harder for more yields, that he would wait for the news on its rich autumn harvest and that he was in firm belief that it would create a model in farming on the eastern coast.

In autumn that year the farm surpassed the level of the peak year.

He also visited the Migok Cooperative Farm in October 2009 and March 2010 and the Unhung Cooperative Farm in Thaechon County in November 2009, so as to encourage them to maintain the honour of being model units.

He inspected other farms one after another and encouraged them to learn from the experiences gained by these above model farms and do farming effectively on the principle of sowing the right crop on the right soil and in the right season.

His attention was also directed to developing animal husbandry, and fish- and fruit-farming.

Under his close concern, livestock farms mushroomed across the country since the late 1990s, with the result that the output of meat and milk was increasing rapidly.

He inspected poultry and other livestock farms, learning about their bottlenecks and taking a series of measures, so as to ensure regular production of eggs and meat and enough supplies of them for the local people. Stressing that the ideal solution to the feed problem in livestock

farms was to give full play to the advantages of the food production cycle, he led these farms and others for crop cultivation to establish the cycle.

He paid due attention to bringing about a fresh turn in fruit farming.

On November 22, 2008, with a view to supplying the people with tasty apples of new species, he proposed turning Wonhung-ri, Samsok District, Pyongyang, into an orchard.

He assigned this project to the soldier-builders and took steps to import saplings of superior species. In less than two years when the construction was in full swing he gave instructions about it on over 20 occasions and guided the whole course of the project to ensure its high quality—construction of a storehouse, fruit-processing factory, pig farm, net factory and houses.

Thanks to his tireless guidance, an orchard covering an area of over 100 hectares was laid out, and scores of buildings including a fruit storehouse and more than 500 houses were built in a short span of time.

In November 2009 Kim Jong Il inspected the Taedonggang Combined Fruit Farm under construction.

After being briefed on the project, he said to the officials: The Taedonggang Combined Fruit Farm is a flawless monumental edifice representative of the Songun era and the 21st century. Until now ten famous scenes of the Songun era have been produced in our country, and it will be good to include the singular scenery of this farm and call them eleven famous scenes of the Songun era. This scenery is worthy of the title.

That day he pointed to the necessity of increasing the orchard area and specified tasks for the second stage of the project.

In June 2010, upon being reported on the completion of the second-stage expansion project, he visited this farm again. He spoke highly of the builders, saying that the expansion project, which was as big as a grand nature-remaking project was finished on the highest level in a matter of six months and that this success could be made only under the country's socialist system where the leader, the Party and the masses achieved single-hearted unity.

Looking round the fruit storehouse and dried slice factory he said that it was made possible to provide the people with fresh fruits and tasty,

nutritious processed fruits all the year round. He then set forth tasks to be tackled by the fruit farm—expanding the orchard area, laying foundations for producing saplings on its own and building a general processing factory.

He directed concern to renovating the Kosan Fruit Farm as demanded by the new century.

The Kosan Fruit Farm, built in the 1960s, covered an area of over 1 000 hectares, mostly composed of hills.

In order to develop it into a large hub of fruit production on the eastern coast he visited the fruit farm in June 2009.

He made the rounds of its several places including the new fields, stressing the need to redesign it in line with the demands of the new century, increase national investment in the project and dispatch a shock brigade there.

He also took other steps to bring about a turn in developing fruit farming in the new century—building up Pukchong County as befits a unit specializing in fruit farming to add glory to the leadership exploits of President Kim Il Sung, and cultivating dwarf apple trees in the Sariwon and Hwangju fruit farms and several cities and counties.

He saw to it that the fish-farming sector strove hard to catch up with global standards and worked in an innovative manner.

His close concern was paid to raising rare fishes like sturgeon, terrapin, char and salmon.

In June 2009 he visited the Sinchang Fish Farm. He was greatly satisfied to learn that the farm succeeded in raising sturgeons for the first time in the nation's history and released them into the sea by going through an experimental stage. Noting that sturgeons were going back to the sea and the DPRK was advancing to stand at the forefront of the world, he set out tasks for building on the successes.

He visited the newly-built Ryongyon Offshore Fish Farm and Ryongjong Fish Farm in November 2010. He praised them for having succeeded in adapting sturgeons to the local sea water. He said that the fish farm in Ryongjong was worthy of the title of the 12th famous scene of the Songun era, and told the officials and technicians concerned that they should play a pacesetter role in developing the country's fish farming.

He also visited other new fish farms and breeding grounds, stressing the need to raise larger numbers of rare fishes including salmon and eel and highly productive fishes. He also set forth such tasks as protecting and increasing the output of terrapins of high medicinal value, building terrapin farms and raising char.

He inspected the Hungnam Taegyong Fishery Station, Wonphyong Taegyong Fishery Station and other fishing units, stressing that they should work devotedly for the good of the people.

FOR THE BETTERMENT OF THE PEOPLE'S LIVES

To mark the centenary of the birth of President Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il pushed the efforts to provide the people with a cultured, happy life.

He paid close concern to producing larger quantities of light industrial goods that were urgently needed for the improvement of the people's livelihood.

He was always concerned about the modernization of the textile industry. During his visit to the then Pyongyang Textile Mill in July 2009, he presented such tasks as increasing the rotational frequency of the spindles of spinning machines and improving the quality of printed cotton. When he visited another textile mill in July 2010, he highly praised it for maintaining regular production by introducing an integrated management system of flexible shaft weaving machines.

He also inspected the then Pyongyang Silk Mill in January 2009, the Huichon Silk Mill in October and the Kanggye Knitwear Factory in December, underlining the need to step up technical upgrading, improve the employees' technical skills and boost production, so as to make a tangible contribution to raising the people's living standards.

He took several measures for ensuring better quality of consumer goods and normalizing production in light industry.

He visited the Wonsan Leather Shoes Factory in February 2009, the Sinuiju Footwear Factory in November that year and the Hyesan Footwear Factory in May 2010, underscoring the need to improve product quality and

boost production so as to provide the people with plenty of better-quality shoes. At the Hyesan Footwear Factory he named the shoes for loggers **Rygangdo Padded Shoes**.

During his visit to the Hamhung Disabled Soldiers' Essential Plastic Goods Factory in December 2010, he set out tasks for increasing the output of vinyl chloride plastic goods and turning it into the parent factory and ensemble of vinyl chloride products. Looking round the exhibition hall of the consumer goods produced in South Hamgyong Province in August 2010, he stressed the importance of operating the specialized light-industry factories at full capacity and producing large quantities of, and high-quality, August 3 consumer goods at all units.

For the further development of the food-processing industry, he ensured that the foodstuff factories were put on a modern basis by generalizing the experiences gained at model units.

He visited the Ryongsong Foodstuff Factory in January and November 2010, with a view to setting it as a model unit in the food-processing industry. Afterwards, according to a measure adopted by him, the officials and technicians of the Pyongyang Condiments Factory, who were pushing forward the modernization project, scientists in the sector of light industry and teachers of the relevant colleges and universities in Pyongyang and other provinces looked round the production lines of the Ryongsong Foodstuff Factory.

While looking round the production lines of the renovated foodstuff factories, he emphasized that it was important to normalize production on a high level and ensure that the people would receive real benefits from them. He also inspected several food-processing factories, referring to the need to upgrade the production lines and improve the quality of products so as to supply the people with plenty of processed foods.

He also channelled great efforts into producing and supplying new kinds of drinks and processed foods.

He visited the newly-built Pyongyang Gum Factory, Taedonggang Foodstuff Factory and Kangso Mineral Water Factory in January and September 2009 and in November 2010 respectively, and the Pyongyang Wheat Flour Processing Factory in January and December that year. He

took appropriate measures to increase the production of processed foods, confectioneries, drinks and national liquor. He also said that green tea and cold tea should be made from the tea leaves cultivated at the Unjong Tea Plant and twisted bread should be made with modern equipment.

He directed close attention to developing the local industry that was taking a lion's share in producing consumer goods.

During his visits to the Changsong Foodstuff Factory and Changsong Textile Mill in November 2010 he said that the experiences gained by these factories eloquently proved that locally-run factories, though small in size, could produce large quantities of quality consumer goods if they buckled down to it. And he set forth tasks to be tackled in improving the quality of products and increasing their variety.

In November 2009, while going over the goods from the Sinuiju Grasswork Producers Cooperative, he praised it for producing various goods with agricultural by-products and wastes to contribute to the improvement of the people's livelihood and bring benefit to the state, and encouraged it to produce and supply more of those goods.

He directed close concern to developing commerce, public catering and other welfare services, and improving culinary skills and food culture.

In January and December 2008, in conformity with the ever-increasing demands of the people in the new century, he advanced a task of establishing commercial outlets which would sell famous domestic and foreign goods. And as part of a measure to this end, he had new shops built across the country. In August and September 2009 and in November and December 2010 he visited these shops and gave advice on their operation and services.

He paid due attention to improving the public catering services.

Looking round newly-built restaurants he emphasized the importance of improving culinary skills, ensuring food safety and better operation and services.

In June 2009, upon receiving the report that it succeeded in sturgeon farming, he visited the Sinchang Fish Farm and said that sturgeons should be sent promptly to the Okryu Restaurant so that the people could have a taste of them. He added that an aquarium should be installed in the

restaurant to enable the people to enjoy the dish looking at the swimming fishes. He stressed that he regarded it as one of the joys of being a revolutionary.

In February 2010 he said that a delicacy house should be attached to the Okryu Restaurant, in which the people would be served with different kinds of famous dishes. When the construction was under way, he underlined on several occasions that the kitchen should be well furnished and that the skills of cooking terrapins should be improved.

He visited the Delicacy House in October 2010 and said that it should serve famous dishes, including those of terrapin, sturgeon, quail, salmon and bullfrog, adding that the culinary skills should be disseminated throughout the country.

Developing food culture was also important for him. On occasions he stressed that several units should challenge one another in terms of their culinary skills, give wide publicity to them, and work hard to improve the people's diet, adding that provinces should sustain the features of their special and traditional foods.

He made efforts to effect a fresh turn in the construction of apartment blocks.

He paid particular concern to rebuilding the apartment blocks in Mansudae Street as befits a yardstick in the new century.

Going over the relief map of this street in December 2007, he underscored the need to improve the design and make full preparations for the construction to complete the project in a short period. Later he often inquired about the construction and took necessary measures. Whenever he was coming back from his field guidance trips, he would visit the construction site and advanced specific tasks.

In October 2009, when the project was over, he looked round the new houses and called them a model and standard in the construction of apartment blocks. He clarified tasks facing the construction sector—properly setting the major thrust, carrying on the construction one by one by concentrating labour and materials on the key sectors and projects, improving designs, establishing proper standards for building work and construction methods and adhering strictly to them, using good finishing

materials and strengthening supervision and control over the construction processes at relevant institutions.

He said:

“Officials of the Ministry of Capital City Construction and builders in the sector of capital city construction should carry out the Party’s construction policy just as the creators of the Pyongyang speed in the 1950s and the pacesetters of the Pyongyang heyday in the 1970s and the 1980s did. By doing so, in the new century they should create a new Pyongyang speed in capital city construction in the Songun era and usher in a new Pyongyang heyday.”

In hearty response to his appeal the builders constructed modern apartment blocks at the foot of Mt Haebang in less than one year.

In November 2010 he came to see them. He said that the new apartments were excellent in all aspects and when building other apartment blocks, there should be enough space between them to avoid shadowing. He also expressed his firm belief that the builders would stand in the vanguard of the struggle to implement the Party’s far-reaching plan for developing Pyongyang into a splendid city as befits the capital of the revolution.

Later, he initiated the construction of a modern street in the Mansudae area to mark the centenary of the birth of President Kim Il Sung. And he stressed that the apartment blocks should be arranged in a three-dimensional way and their layout and inner designs diversified. Going over the relief maps of some urban and rural areas and the blueprints showing their panoramic views, he illuminated ways for the architectural formation of the street.

He directed great efforts to building the bases for cultural and leisure activities.

In January 2009, looking round the renovated Ryongaksan Pleasure Ground, he said: President Kim Il Sung said that the officials in Pyongyang should not lean towards building Moran Hill into a public resort but direct due concern to sprucing up Mt Ryongak. The mountain should be laid out better so that more people will come and have a pleasant time here enjoying its beautiful scenery.

Then he specified what needed to be done in increasing the operational rate of the existing welfare service facilities and building the tourist paths.

In September that year, making the rounds of several places in Inner Chilbo of Mt Chilbo, he clarified ways for building it into a public resort. The following month he climbed Mt Myohyang. Walking along the mountaineering routes to the Isonnam Falls and Manphok Valley, he spoke highly of their unique designs. And he said that Mt Myohyang, one of the scenic beauties, should be developed into a splendid resort to be handed down to posterity.

He referred to the need to develop the Pasyon Falls, Sinphyong Kumgang and Jongbangsan Pleasure Ground into excellent public resorts.

In July 2008 he unfolded a plan for upgrading the amusement facilities in Mangyongdae, Mt Taesong and Kaeson Youth Park as demanded by the new century. On December 27 that year he said that the amusement facilities in Kaeson Youth Park should be replaced even if it would cost a large sum and took decisive measures to this end. Later, on several occasions, he gave instructions concerning the renovation project of the amusement park and provided guidance over its processes.

He visited the renovated amusement park in April 2010. Looking round the amusement facilities he gave advice on the time of operation, use of the facilities and illuminations.

In January, March and December 2009, in October 2010 and on other occasions he said that a swimming pool like alpa mare and a funfair should be built on Rungna Island, a swimming gymnasium, ice rink and aquarium in Pyongyang, and an open-air ice rink on the bank of the Taedong River.

He pushed the efforts to renovate nearly ten theatres in Pyongyang in line with the requirements of the new century. When the Pyongyang Grand Theatre and the National Theatre were renovated in April 2009 and October 2010 respectively, he visited them and praised that the traditional form and the modern style were combined in a harmonious way and the formative value and artistic quality of architecture were ensured on a high level.

He paid constant concern to building up the bases for cultural and leisure activities in provinces. When the Songdowon Youth Open-Air Theatre was renovated and the North Hwanghae Province Art Theatre was built in August and October 2009, respectively, he visited the theatres and stressed that they should make a tangible contribution to the people's

cultural and aesthetic life.

In order to turn the whole country into a socialist fairyland he gave priority to improving land administration including urban management and afforestation.

In February 2009 he visited Manpho in Jagang Province. Seeing the rational distribution of buildings, roads and welfare service facilities and the street lamps hanging low, he praised that he had not seen such a fine city as Manpho though he visited many cities across the country, and set it as a model for all other cities to follow.

In October 2009, with a view to covering all the mountains of the country with thick forests, he visited the Central Tree Nursery in which industrial methods were introduced in the production of saplings.

He looked round several places of the tree nursery including the open-air cultivation ground and greenhouse. He spoke highly of the employees for having put the sapling production on an industrial footing by working hard to adopt advanced techniques according to the Party's policy. And he said that good species of trees should be planted on the mountains that had been made bare during the Arduous March and forced march. Stressing that they should turn misfortune into a blessing, he added that all other tree nurseries should emulate the Central Tree Nursery.

Then he said:

“We should ensure that the whole Party, the entire army and all the people make strenuous efforts to cover the country with trees and flowers, so as to hand down to the coming generations beautiful rivers and thickly-wooded mountains.”

He resolved the problems concerning the annual production of tens of millions of saplings, including the problem of workers and technicians, and made sure that relevant officials were sent abroad to import saplings and seeds and learn the techniques for raising saplings.

He also directed close concern to the work of posts and telecommunications, so as to update the mass media and make the people get the substantial benefit of them.

CHAPTER 50

PROVIDING A FIRM GUARANTEE FOR CARRYING FORWARD THE REVOLUTIONARY CAUSE OF SONGUN

1. INHERITANCE OF THE REVOLUTION MEANS INHERITANCE OF ARMS

Kim Jong Il brilliantly solved the problem of inheritance of leadership on the principle of Songun, thus providing a firm guarantee for carrying forward and accomplishing the revolutionary cause of Songun.

On September 1, 2002, in a talk with the commanding officers of the Korean People's Army, he stressed the need to enhance the militant strength of the KPA to the maximum in conformity with the requirements of the Songun revolution. He stressed: In carrying forward and glorifying the revolutionary cause arms is the most powerful means, and if we hold fast to arms we can resolutely frustrate the offensives and schemes of the enemy of all hues and advance the revolution and construction victoriously in line with the ideology and intentions of the preceding leader.

Then he said, **“Inheritance of the revolution is inheritance of arms, and this is a serious lesson and truth shown by the history of the world revolutionary struggle full of vicissitudes.”**

With an eye to the distant future, Kim Jong Il had long directed special concern to bringing up in a far-sighted way his successor of the general type, perfectly equipped with the personalities and qualifications appropriate to a leader.

Kim Jong Il implanted the profound truth of arms in Kim Jong Un in the latter's early days so that he could establish an inseparable relationship with arms.

Kim Jong Un later told the teaching staff of Kim Il Sung Military University that arms is the baton of the Mangyongdae family that is handed down through the generations, and that when he was young, arms was relayed to him as the baton of revolution.

Kim Jong Il ensured that Kim Jong Un from his childhood got a deep understanding of the outstanding military leadership and achievements of President Kim Il Sung, who had pioneered and victoriously led the Korean revolution, and acquired a wealth of knowledge and techniques needed for military leadership.

Kim Jong Un had startled many people with abilities becoming to a great man since young; for example, at the age of 16, he wrote a paper on the outstanding military leadership and undying exploits of Kim Il Sung who led the Fatherland Liberation War to victory. All these are ascribable not only to his unusual endowments but also to the close concern and good education given by Kim Jong Il.

Kim Jong Il advised Kim Jong Un to study at Kim Il Sung Military University, and became his mentor, helping him go beyond the cutting edge of military science.

Before entering the university Kim Jong Un had a talk with Kim Jong Il. Kim Jong Il asked him to learn military affairs at Kim Il Sung Military University as he had so far acquired the knowledge of politics, the economy and culture. Kim Jong Un answered there and then that he would do so.

Kim Jong Il said: Among the world-renowned military generals and commanders, many of them are graduates from Frunze military academy or Voroshilov General Staff military academy in the USSR; even now those who are eager to become military commander look forward to entering one of them; why don't you intend to go to such a famous university?

Kim Jong Un replied: It is the tradition of our Mangyongdae family not to worship big powers; when guiding the youth movement in Jilin, the great leader did not follow the Comintern's advice on studying at the communist college run by it, but he went among our people to plant his feet on the soil of his own nation and fellow countrymen and formulate revolutionary lines and policies in conformity with the actual situation in our country;

when you were invited to study at Moscow University, you chose to enter Kim Il Sung University with a pledge to learn the leader's great ideology and become the master of the revolution in Korea; so with the will to learn the leader's and your Juche-oriented military science in my country and accomplish the revolutionary cause of Songun to the end, I made a determination to study at Kim Il Sung Military University.

Kim Jong Il said that he had looked forward to such an answer.

After he started learning at the university true to the intention of Kim Jong Il, Kim Jong Un learned the original military ideas, strategy and tactics of Kim Jong Il by racing against time.

During these days he presented numerous operational and tactical plans and superb inventions conducive to perfecting the combat preparedness of the KPA, bringing pleasure to Kim Jong Il.

One day Kim Jong Un asked Kim Jong Il to review an operations document he had prepared. It was an operations map of a KPA combined unit. Kim Jong Il was greatly pleased with its profundity and clever conception.

Without any word, he handed it over to an officer of the General Staff of the KPA, and told him to show it to officers of the operations bureau without informing them of its author.

On February 14, 2005, some days later, he recounted it in front of the commanding officers of the KPA, saying that the map received a good opinion of the officers.

Kim Jong Il inspected numerous military units together with Kim Jong Un who was studying at the military university, so that Kim Jong Un could possess the traits and qualifications of a Songun commander on a higher level.

In these days Kim Jong Un possessed leadership traits and military qualifications of Kim Jong Il, thus bringing about a new turn in strengthening the KPA.

At that time Kim Jong Il said that Kim Jong Un surely had a keen insight and analyzing and judging ability and that if a war broke out he would play a pivotal role in a place of strategic and tactical importance such as Height 1211 of the days of the Fatherland Liberation War.

On February 19, 2006, Kim Jong Il told the KPA commanding officers: I am going to have General Kim Jong Un carry forward the revolutionary cause of Songun; he is quite capable of carrying forward the cause; he is loyal to me, and has an encyclopedic knowledge of politics, military affairs, the economy, culture and other fields; in particular, his military insight and qualifications are beyond imagination; one should possess the power of pen and sword to carry forward the revolutionary cause of Songun and one, who does not, cannot lead the cause which was pioneered by force of arms and which should be accomplished by force of arms; you, too, might know that Comrade Kim Jong Un worked out an operations plan for an army corps; he has not only a high level of military theory and art of command but also strong courage and pluck; now, my wish has come true; I intend to have him command the front if a war breaks out.

Under the meticulous care of Kim Jong Il, Kim Jong Un finished the whole course of Kim Il Sung Military University with top honour.

KPA commanding officers took part in a party held in presence of Kim Jong Il on December 24, 2006, the 15th anniversary of appointment of Kim Jong Il as the KPA Supreme Commander and the 89th birthday of Kim Jong Suk, the anti-Japanese war heroine.

Kim Jong Il, together with Kim Jong Un, entered the hall. After acknowledging the cheers of commanding officers, Kim Jong Il said that he would inform them of the news that Kim Jong Un had finished the whole course of Kim Il Sung Military University with full marks.

Kim Jong Un was awarded the graduation certificate and badge of the university.

After receiving the certificate and badge, Kim Jong Un said: Now that I was awarded the diploma and badge of a university named after the great leader I cannot find words to express my gratitude to General Kim Jong Il as I am reminded of the great efforts he made for me; he taught the profound truth of arms to me when I started the first step of my life and had me form a tie with arms; the General advised me to study at Kim Il Sung Military University and became my great mentor, guiding me in studying; in the university days I keenly realized that the General is truly a military genius while studying his Juche-oriented military ideas and tactics; availing myself

of this opportunity I extend my gratitude to the General, who created superb military ideas and war tactics, the like of which cannot be found in any book on military science in the world, and developed our People's Army into an invincible army which is fully capable of attack and defence of any type; I am fully determined to learn more and become a faithful soldier who strives to relieve the fatigue of the General, even to the slightest degree.

After listening to what he had to say, Kim Jong Il said that to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by President Kim Il Sung through the generations, the coming generations should unswervingly adhere to the banner of Songun, and expressed his belief that Kim Jong Un would brilliantly succeed the Juche-oriented revolutionary cause of Songun.

All those attending the party felt regret for not being able to photograph the historic moment of that day. The party had not been made public, and there was no cameraman with only a few officials present.

Fathoming their inmost thoughts, Kim Jong Il said: I don't like empty formalities; if you and I know of this event, that's all; if Comrade Kim Jong Un brilliantly inherits our cause, history will recollect today.

2. ENSURING THAT KIM JONG UN STANDS AT THE HELM OF THE SONGUN REVOLUTION

Kim Jong Il had Kim Jong Un guide the overall work of the army and the country, so that in the course of this the service personnel and other people could witness and experience the greatness of Kim Jong Un.

The Party and army newspapers, dated January 6, 2010, published the news of Kim Jong Il's inspection of a sub-unit of Seoul Ryu Kyong Su Guards 105th Tank Division, with a photo of tank No. 951 firing while advancing at the vanguard of tanks. The man who was driving the tank was Kim Jong Un.

On January 5, 2010, Kim Jong Un, in company with Kim Jong Il, visited the tank division, and guided a manoeuvring and firing drill of the sub-unit.

That day the commander of the unit told Kim Jong Il that his men wanted to see Kim Jong Un driving a tank.

As if agreeing to his request, Kim Jong Il turned to Kim Jong Un, before saying, **“Comrade Kim Jong Un should drive a tank.”**

Taking a step forward, Kim Jong Un answered, **“I see, Supreme Commander.”** And he approached tank No. 951, got on it with a tankman’s cap on.

Looking at him, Kim Jong Il said that today Kim Jong Un came here carrying a tankman’s cap with him, and that it seemed he was determined to drive a tank and fire a tank gun.

Presently, the tank began to roll and its gun fired a shell, shaking the earth.

The observation post signalled that the shell hit the bull’s eye. Kim Jong Il was greatly satisfied.

The commanding officer told Kim Jong Il his own interpretation of the historic significance of the gunfire of tank No. 951, saying that Kim Jong Un on an inspection of his unit that day had fired a gunshot of history out of his determination to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche by force of arms, and that the firing was of historical significance as great as the gunshot made by Kim Jong Suk by Lagoon Samil.

Kim Jong Il nodded, saying: Your words are reasonable; today is a significant day worthy of note in the annals of the Songun revolution.

On return from the trip, he said to senior officials of the Party Central Committee:

“Today our General, while guiding a military drill by Seoul Ryu Kyong Su Guards 105th Tank Division, personally drove a tank and fired a gun; it can be said that he fired the first shot in the new year. This gunshot is the signal of the start of the onward march for this year and declaration at home and abroad of his unshakeable faith and determination to inherit and accomplish the cause of national reunification and the revolutionary cause of Juche by force of arms of Paektusan.”

A south Korean website carried an article of the day’s inspection, which reads in part: That day General Kim Jong Un personally got on a new-type

tank and drove it. He broke the virtual enemy line at high and low speeds and hit the target accurately. Military commanding officers and tankmen expressed their admiration at his skilful driving and marksmanship. After the end of mobile firing, officers and men raised cheers in admiration of his driving skills, which surpassed their imagination. They pledged to remain faithful to him, saying that they are filled with confidence because they have another brilliant commander who is well versed in military affairs.

Learning that Kim Jong Un was showing close concern for the work of the KPA, civilian officials vied with one another for asking for his guidance over their respective units.

While receiving his guidance the service personnel and other people unanimously approved his leadership abilities, and were particularly fascinated by his people-oriented traits.

They revered Kim Jong Un, calling him “Our General Kim” or “Respected Comrade Young General” and cherished a firm faith that he is the one and only successor capable of carrying forward the cause of Kim Jong Il.

One day Kim Jong Il said to officials: The enemy is now expecting that disturbance will break out within our country as the old generations are replaced by the new generation, but there is no need to worry about it as we have Kim Jong Un.

He then continued:

“As I often say, our General will take hold of the Party, state and army by means of his practical abilities. He is possessed of versatile and encyclopedic knowledge of the political, military, economic, cultural and all other fields. As he is conversant with everything, he can easily grasp all the fields of the country, and everybody will be guided by him. Those who received his guidance are unanimous in approving his practical abilities.

“Now he is assisting me in my work well. He is the best in supporting me.”

In those days senior officials in several fields of the national economy, as well as factories, enterprises and organs, wrote letters to Kim Jong Il and the Party Central Committee, requesting that Kim Jong Un be acclaimed to

the headquarters of the Korean revolution.

On June 23, 2010, a resolution of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee was adopted on holding the Third Conference of the WPK in September 2010.

In the lead-up to the Third Conference of the WPK and the 65th founding anniversary of the WPK, conferences of the Party Committee of the KPA, provincial (political bureau-level), city (district) and county committees of the WPK for the election of representatives to the conference were held. The conference of the Party Committee of the KPA and the conferences of the provincial (political bureau-level) committees of the WPK elected Kim Jong Il and Kim Jong Un as representatives to the conference, as well as officials and working people who were unfailingly faithful to the Party and revolution and displayed patriotic devotion at the sites where a new revolutionary upsurge was being effected.

On September 27, 2010, with the conference approaching, Kim Jong Il issued Order No. 0051 of the KPA Supreme Commander to confer the title of KPA General on Kim Jong Un who had already been guiding the overall work of the army and the state and had thus made an immortal contribution to accomplishing the Juche-oriented revolutionary cause of Songun.

The following day, amid a great interest and expectation of all the Korean people, the Third Conference of the WPK was held in Pyongyang.

The following agenda items were discussed at the conference:

1. On reelecting Kim Jong Il, the great leader of the Party and people, as General Secretary of the Workers' Party of Korea
2. On revising the Rules of the Workers' Party of Korea
3. On electing the central leadership body of the Workers' Party of Korea

The president of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK made a speech on the first item.

He was followed by others, and the resolution of the Conference of the WPK on reelecting Kim Jong Il as General Secretary of the WPK was read.

After dealing with the second item, the conference discussed the third item—election of the central leadership body of the WPK.

Prior to the election, in reflection of the unanimous will and aspiration of Party members, KPA service personnel and all other people, the conference declared that Kim Il Sung was permanently elected to the highest leadership body of the WPK. It also declared that according to Party Rules and the election regulations of the highest leadership body of the WPK Kim Jong Il, General Secretary of the WPK, was elected member of the Presidium of the Political Bureau of the Central Committee, member of the Political Bureau of the Central Committee, member of the Central Committee and Chairman of the Central Military Commission of the WPK.

The conference elected Kim Jong Un as member of the central leadership body and Vice-Chairman of the Central Military Commission of the WPK.

Thus, the aspiration and will of the people, who had long wished to have Kim Jong Un acclaimed as the heir to Kim Jong Il and elected to the leadership body of the Party and the army, were realized through the organizational will.

In accordance with the behest of Kim Jong Il, Kim Jong Un was appointed as Supreme Commander of the KPA at a meeting of the Political Bureau of the Central Committee of the WPK held on December 30, 2011. And he was elected First Secretary of the WPK at the Fourth Conference of the WPK held on April 11, 2012, and First Chairman of the National Defence Commission at the Fifth Session of the Twelfth Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK on April 13.

CHAPTER 51

UNFOLDING A NEW ERA OF THE MOVEMENT FOR NATIONAL REUNIFICATION

1. PROVIDING A CORRECT VIEW OF NATIONALISM

Kim Jong Il roused all the Korean people to advance the movement for national reunification under the unfurled banner of By Our Nation Itself.

While thinking over and over about the destiny of the Korean nation, he keenly realized that the pressing task in the era of independent reunification was to give a fresh solution to the ideological basis of nationalism for the great unity of the nation.

On February 26 and 28, 2002, he had a talk, titled, *On Having a Correct Understanding of Nationalism*, with senior officials of the Party Central Committee.

First, he elucidated the essential nature of nationalism in a Juche-based way:

There is no person in any country or in any society who exists outside his or her nation, separated from it. Every person belongs to a class or stratum, and at the same time, to a nation, endowing that person with both a national and a class character. Class character and national character and the demands of classes and nation are inseparable from each other. As a matter of fact, the classes and strata of a nation entertain different demands and interests owing to their different social and economic functions. However, all the members of a nation have the same stake in championing the independence and character of the nation and attaining national prosperity without distinction of the interests of their classes and strata. This is because

the destiny of a nation is precisely the destiny of its individual members; in other words, the latter is dependent on the former. None will be happy with the sovereignty and honour of his or her nation being trampled upon and national character disregarded.

Kim Jong Il said;

“It is the common ideological feeling and psychology of the members of a nation to love their nation, cherish its characteristics and interests, and yearn for its prosperity. Nationalism reflects this feeling and psychology. In other words, nationalism is an ideology that advocates love for the nation and defence of its interests.”

Since people carve out their destiny while living within the nation-state as a unit, genuine nationalism constitutes patriotism, and the progressive nature of nationalism lies in the fact that it is a patriotic ideology which advocates the defence of national interests.

Stressing that it is important to clearly distinguish differences between true nationalism that loves the nation and defends its interests and bourgeois nationalism that advocates the interests of the bourgeois class, Kim Jong Il laid bare the reactionary nature of bourgeois nationalism.

Then he continued:

Nationalism emerged as a progressive idea along with the formation and development of each nation. However, it was understood in the past as an ideology that defended bourgeois interests.

It is true that in the days of the nationalist movement against feudalism, the newly-emergent bourgeoisie, upholding the banner of nationalism, stood in the vanguard of the movement. At that time, the interests of both the masses of the people and the newly-emergent bourgeoisie were basically coincident in their struggle against feudalism. Therefore, the banner of nationalism seemed to reflect the common interests of the nation. As capitalism developed and the bourgeoisie became the reactionary ruling class after victorious bourgeois revolutions in various countries, nationalism was used as a means of defending the interests of the bourgeois class. The bourgeoisie disguised their class interests as national interests, and used nationalism as an ideological instrument for solidifying their class domination. This led nationalism to be understood, among the people, as a

bourgeois ideology that ran counter to the national interests.

Bourgeois nationalism reveals itself as national egoism, national exclusivism and big-power chauvinism in the relationship between countries and nations; it is reactionary in that it creates antagonism and disagreement between countries and nations, and checks the development of friendly relations between the various peoples of the world.

Underlining that the preceding revolutionary theory of the working class failed to give a correct explanation of nationalism, Kim Jong Il said:

It paid major attention to strengthening the international unity and solidarity of the working class all over the world—the fundamental problem in the then socialist movement—failing to pay due attention to the national problem. It went so far as to regard nationalism as an anti-socialist ideological trend, because bourgeois nationalism was doing great harm to the socialist movement. This is why progressive people in the past rejected nationalism, considering it as incompatible with communism.

Stressing that it was wrong to view communism as incompatible with nationalism, Kim Jong Il said:

“Love of the country and the people is an ideological emotion common to communism and nationalism. Herein lies the ideological basis on which they can ally with one another.”

Nationalism does not conflict with internationalism. Mutual help, support and alliance between countries and nations—this is internationalism. Every country has its borders, and every nation has its identity, and revolution and construction are carried on with the country and nation as a unit. For this reason, internationalism finds its expressions in the relationships between countries and between nations, a prerequisite for which is nationalism. Internationalism divorced from the concepts of nation and nationalism is merely an empty shell. A man who is unconcerned about the destiny of his country and nation cannot be faithful to internationalism.

Saying that for the first time in history, President Kim Il Sung gave a correct explanation of nationalism and elucidated the relationship between communism and nationalism and between communists and nationalists in his revolutionary practice of carving out the destiny of his country and people, Kim Jong Il continued:

Noting that in order to be a true communist one must first become a true nationalist, President Kim Il Sung created the immortal Juche idea, on the basis of which he established a Juche-oriented outlook on the nation, and scientifically expounded the essence and progressive character of nationalism. Through a correct combination of class character with national character and of the destiny of socialism with that of the nation, he realized an alliance between communists and nationalists, cemented the class and national positions of our socialism and led the nationalists to join the efforts for socialist construction and national reunification. Attracted by his broad magnanimity and noble personality, many nationalists took the patriotic road to national unity and national reunification, making a clean break with their erroneous pasts. He was the most steadfast communist and, at the same time, a peerless patriot, true nationalist and paragon among internationalists. I also assert, as the leader instructed, that one must be an ardent patriot, a true nationalist, in order to become a genuine revolutionary, a communist. We are inheriting with fidelity the great leader's noble idea of loving the country, the nation and the people, and making every effort to rally all the sections of the nation and lead them to the road of patriotism.

As for the tasks for crushing the moves of imperialists who opposed nationalism and were placing obstacles in the way of the independent development of nations, and defending the independent character of the nation, Kim Jong Il said:

At present the imperialists are manoeuvring cunningly to realize their dominationist ambition on the plea of "globalization" and "integration." They claim that the ideal of building a sovereign nation-state or the love for country and nation is a "national prejudice lagging behind the times," and "globalization" and "integration" are the trend of the times in the present situation, when science and technology are developing rapidly and economic exchanges between countries are being conducted briskly on an international scale.

Today, when every country and nation is carving out its own destiny with its own ideology, system and culture, there can never be a political, economic, ideological and cultural "integration" of the world. The manoeuvres of the US imperialists for "globalization" and "integration" are

aimed at turning the world into what they call a “free” and “democratic” world styled after the United States, and thus bringing all countries and nations under their domination and subordination. The present era is one of independence. The manoeuvres of the imperialists for “globalization” and “integration” are doomed to failure, as they are opposed by the vigorous efforts of the world’s peoples aspiring after independence. We should resolutely oppose and reject the manoeuvres of the imperialists for “globalization” and “integration,” and staunchly fight to preserve the excellent characteristics of our nation and safeguard its independence.

A most important task facing us today in championing and realizing national independence is to reunify the country.

Saying that the June 15, 2000 North-South Joint Declaration stipulates all the principles and ways for solving the problems arising in reunifying the country independently by the united efforts of the nation, Kim Jong Il continued:

“The declaration is a programme of national unity and a general principle of national reunification, based on the ideal of By Our Nation Itself and permeated with the spirit of loving the country and people. The substantial guarantee for independence, peace and national reunification lies in supporting and thoroughly carrying out the declaration.”

The ideal of By Our Nation Itself is the embodiment of the idea of national independence, with which the Korean nation should reject interference by foreign forces as masters and pull efforts in solving the national reunification issue in an independent and peaceful way and on the principle of great national unity. In other words, it is a national banner under which all the Korean people who love their nation and champion the interests of the nation should join their strength in solving the problem of national reunification.

This indicates that genuine nationalism, an idea of loving the country and nation, constitutes the ideological basis of the ideal of By Our Nation Itself.

As shown above, Kim Jong Il formulated genuine nationalism as an idea of loving the nation and safeguarding the interests of the nation, an idea of loving the country and nation, thus providing an ideological and theoretical foundation for verifying the justness of the ideal of By Our Nation Itself.

2. MOUNTING ENTHUSIASM FOR INDEPENDENT REUNIFICATION

After the adoption of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration Kim Jong Il led the effort to implement it, thus kindling great enthusiasm for independent reunification across the country.

After the historic Pyongyang Summit in 2000, wide-ranging dialogue and negotiations were held between authorities of the north and south, resulting in four rounds of minister-level talks from late July 2000 to the end of that year.

However, these amicable inter-Korean relations reached a point in less than one year, from which they may be turned into those of confrontation.

Bush, who had expressed his commitment to a hard-line policy towards the DPRK in the days of presidential election, ignored the détente in the inter-Korean relations from the first day of taking office in January 2001, and intensified schemes to stifle the DPRK. During his meeting with the south Korean president in March 2001, he openly expressed his discontent over the brisk moves for détente, and strongly demanded that the speed of improvement of bilateral relations be adjusted. The situation became worsened after the September 11 incident.

While guiding the work for crushing the US obstructive moves by force of Songun, Kim Jong Il ensured that a dynamic struggle was launched to pave a broad avenue for national reunification through the concerted efforts of the Korean nation from the first year of the 21st century.

On January 3, 2001, stressing that the country should be reunified as quickly as possible, he said to senior officials of the Party Central Committee:

“What is important in realizing national reunification is to achieve national unity.”

And he continued: As I said when I was meeting a delegation of media organs from south Korea we must join hands with anyone who support the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration without questioning their past records;

President Kim Il Sung boldly embraced even those who had been engrossed in anti-communism in the past if they were willing to embark on the road of national reunification; we must achieve national unity by winning over all the people who are desirous of national reunification.

Kim Jong Il aroused all the Korean people to the movement for national reunification to suit the historic situation in which it entered a new century.

The 2001 Conference to Open the Gate of Reunification by the Efforts of the Korean Nation Itself held in Pyongyang on January 10, 2001 appealed to the 70 million Korean people to designate 2001 as a year for opening the gate of national reunification by the efforts of the Korean nation itself, set the period from June 15, the day of adoption of the North-South Joint Declaration, to August 15, the day of Korea's liberation, as a June 15-August 15 Period for the Movement for Promoting National Reunification, and bring about a fresh upsurge of this movement in this period, thus demonstrating at home and abroad the unanimous will for reunification and unity of the Korean people and celebrating August 15, the first Liberation Day in the 21st century, as a nationwide pro-reunification festival.

He made sure that inter-Korean dialogues and negotiations including minister-level talks and Red Cross talks, and north-south rallies and other events sponsored by various circles were held without let-up, demonstrating the steadfast determination of the nation to implement the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration and reunify the country.

The third round of north-south joint Red Cross talks was held, as the first inter-Korean talks in the first year of the new century, in Mt Kumgang in late January 2001; third exchange of visiting groups of separated families and their relatives, a meeting of the sub-committee for electricity, a meeting of the sub-committee for preventing flooding of the Rimjin River and the fifth round of north-south military working-level talks took place in February; the fifth north-south minister-level talks, which had been slated for March, was held in Seoul in September.

The north-south workers' rally for reunification held in Mt Kumgang on May 1, 2001 and the north-south peasants' rally for reunification in July opened an era of rallies of various social strata.

Attaching great importance to the first anniversary of the June 15

North-South Joint Declaration, Kim Jong Il ensured that the anniversary served as a momentum in strengthening national unity and heightening the zeal for reunification. With various events being held in the north, south and abroad to greet the anniversary, a grand seminar on national reunification took place in Mt Kumgang on June 15 to mark the first anniversary of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration, attended by over 200 delegates from different political parties and organizations in the north and south, respectively, and 20 overseas Koreans and 250 people from all walks of life as observers.

This seminar held for the first time after national division was a noteworthy event in the history of reunification movement.

Mass media of south Korea commented that this seminar was “another north-south joint conference held after over 50 years,” and “the largest-scale meeting after the north-south joint conference.”

Kim Jong Il saw to it that following the seminar on June 15, a grand national reunification festival attended by delegates from different parties, social strata and circles in the north, south and abroad was held in Pyongyang on August 15, the day of national liberation. On several occasions he specified the ways and means for holding the festival as a nationwide event, and said that main emphasis should be put on making it demonstrate at home and abroad the will to achieve national reunification by the concerted efforts of the Korean nation and heightening the enthusiasm of the fellow countrymen for reunification. In the lead-up to the festival, the Monument to the Three Charters for National Reunification was unveiled on August 14, 2001.

The opening ceremony of the Grand National Reunification Festival 2001 was held in front of the monument on August 15. It was attended by tens of thousands of people including over 300 delegates from the north, 339 delegates from over 220 political parties and organizations in the south, 65 delegates from different regions abroad and 300 overseas compatriots staying in Pyongyang. During the festival were held meetings and talks between delegates from various social strata in the north and south, Solidarity Meeting of the Youth for Reunification in the New Century, inter-Korean women’s forum for implementing the June 15 North-South

Joint Declaration, joint photo exhibition on the Japanese imperialists' atrocities and distortion of history and consultative meeting of the Presidium of the North, South and Overseas of the Pan-National Alliance for Korea's Reunification.

The zeal for reunification was further elevated through more vigorous dialogues, negotiations, cooperation and exchanges between the north and south.

March towards reunification was not all plain sailing. The south Korean authorities, who had been unable to neglect the countrymen's determination and zeal for reunification and run against the pressure of the foreign forces, toed the US line, advocating the theory of "archenemy," taking "emergency alert" measures, beefing up armament, and staging war rehearsals.

In this abnormal situation, Kim Jong Il ensured that dialogues and negotiations were promoted continuously as planned.

The sixth round of inter-Korean minister-level talks, slated for October, was held from November 9 to 14 in Mt Kumgang. The south Korean senior delegate came to the negotiating table without any preparations and, at the close of the talks he denied every item of the agreement, which the working-level experts of both sides had prepared for several days, saying that he "may be interrogated" on his return to the south and that it would be alright even if he went back without signing a joint press release.

Even though spring came in 2002, the tension between the north and south did not melt.

Kim Jong Il met a special envoy from south Korea, who visited Pyongyang, and talked with him for a long time on April 4, 2002.

He made it clear that the south Korean authorities, yielding to the United States which was forcing them to deal with the inter-Korean relations on its own approval, insisted on satisfying "each other's needs," thus breaking promise and good faith. Stressing the need to respect the fundamental spirit of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration and remove the crisis prevailing on the Korean peninsula owing to the heinous schemes by the United States and other anti-reunification forces by the concerted efforts of the Korean nation, he put forward principled requirements arising in thoroughly implementing the declaration, including putting the inter-Korean relations back on a normal track for the present.

The next day the special envoy and his party agreed to the April 5 joint press release and returned to Seoul via Panmunjom.

The news evoked a great sensation at home and abroad.

A south Korean media commented, “The sunlight is again streaming into the frozen inter-Korean relations. The joint press release agreed between the north and south testifies to this. It was known that at the talks both sides had a heated debate on whether to pursue alliance of the nation or with foreign forces. It is too natural that the future of the nation cannot be entrusted to foreign forces. Therefore, national collaboration should be the bedrock in solving the inter-Korean issues. The south Korean authorities must give precedence to national collaboration, not to collaboration with foreign forces.”

The inter-Korean relations, which might have returned to the original state of confrontation, greeted an atmosphere of reconciliation and unity with the talks as a momentum.

The seventh-round inter-Korean minister-level talks was held in Seoul from August 12 to 14, 2002, nine months after its sixth round, followed by a meeting of the committee for the promotion of economic cooperation and the military working-level talks. From late April to early May 2002, the fourth-round reunion of separated families and their relatives was held and a group of citizens of Jeju Island came to Pyongyang. A grand national festival for reunification in celebration of the second anniversary of the publication of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration, August 15 Rally for National Reunification and a national joint function to commemorate the National Foundation Day were held in succession.

We Are One, a song reflecting the Korean people’s ardent aspiration for reunification, was produced in the north and propagated through mass media in June 2002. With the song resounding across the country, a large-scale delegation of the north, composed of delegates of public organizations and artistes, went to the August 15 Rally for National Reunification held in Seoul, encouraging the south Korean people to heighten their zeal for national reunification.

The climate of national unity was spread to the sports and cultural sectors. In September 2002 an inter-Korean football match took place in

Seoul, and a characteristic cheering party from the north went to the 14th Asian Games together with athletes, raising the wind for reunification in Pusan.

KBS Symphony Orchestra and MBC art troupe of the south visited Pyongyang in September 2002, and staged artistic performances.

South Korean businessmen visited Pyongyang to discuss economic cooperation, and in November 2002 decrees of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly on establishing the Kaesong Industrial Park and enacting the law on the Kaesong Industrial Park were made public.

Kim Jong Il led the efforts to relink the bisected territory, railways, road and air.

The relinking of railways and roads had been an item of discussion at the first round of meeting of the Committee for the Promotion of Economic Cooperation between North and South held in December 2000. Even though nearly two years had passed after the announcement of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration, this issue remained unsettled despite several rounds of talks and agreements, owing to the obstructive moves of the United States and other anti-reunification forces.

In April 2002, when he was meeting the south Korean special envoy and talking about resumption of dialogue and collaboration, Kim Jong Il said that the Sinuiju-Seoul railway line and other railways along the east coast should be relinked, that only then could peace and security be ensured on the Korean peninsula, and that, if the Sinuiju-Seoul line was relinked only, the territory of Korea would look distorted.

Later, he frequently inquired about the progress of the first round of talks of the sub-committee for relinking railways and roads held in Mt Kumgang, and took measures aimed at solving knotty problems. The talks, held from September 13 to 17, 2002, discussed ways for relinking the railways and roads along the east and west coasts at the earliest possible date, and adopted an agreement. Ceremonies for breaking ground for relinking railways were held on September 18 at the Kumgangsan Youth Railway Station in Kosong County, Kangwon Province, and the Kaesong Railway Station.

On February 5, 2003, a temporary road on the east coast was opened for

the first time after the country's division and a trial expedition was conducted for tourism on Mt Kumgang, and tour of Mt Kumgang was made on a trial basis on February 14. On February 21 a temporary road between Kaesong and Munsan was opened, and a field survey was conducted for the creation of the Kaesong Industrial Park.

The noteworthy events of paving an avenue for reconciliation, unity and collaboration were witnessed also on the sea and in the air.

Already in June 2000 Kim Jong Il ensured that the south Korean delegation came directly to Pyongyang from Seoul by air for the summit meeting. On August 15, 2000 the airplane carrying the first batch of separated families and relatives from the north landed for the first time on Kimpho Airport, and the separated families and relatives from the south flew over the Military Demarcation Line and landed in Pyongyang. This marked the starting-point of the flying of the north and south civilian airplanes to each other's areas, and hundreds or thousands of people enjoyed the direct flight every year since then.

Telecommunications service through wire started operation between the marine transport authorities of the north and south, the navigation between the East and West seas by the north's vessels through Jeju Strait commenced, and the vessels of the south began to ply directly between Inchon and Haeju and sailed to the ocean through the routes reserved for vessels of the north.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to the tenth round of inter-Korean minister-level talks, the first of its kind after the emergence of a new government in south Korea in 2003, and gave instructions on several occasions for the success of the talks.

At the talks held in Pyongyang in late April 2003, both sides discussed many issues, such as holding a June 15 grand festival for national reunification to mark the third anniversary of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration and giving support to making it a regular event, participation by sportspeople and a cheering party of the north in the Universiad to be held in Taegu in August, holding an event for relinking the railways and roads along the east and west coasts and ground-breaking ceremony for the Kaesong Industrial Park.

The August 15 National Rally was held in a characteristic way, a large delegation of sportspeople and a cheering party of the north participated in the 22nd Universiad in Taegu, an indoor stadium newly built in Pyongyang was named Ryugyong Jong Ju Yong Indoor Stadium and its inauguration ceremony held in a meaningful way, all fanning the enthusiasm for national reunification.

Frightened by the powerful demonstration of the Korean people's will for reunification, the United States instigated the IAEA to bring an international pressure to bear upon the DPRK, fussing about a "violation," and taking advantage of this, the pro-US conservative forces of south Korea invoked the Law on the Special Public Prosecutor, so as to investigate those who had made contributions to national reconciliation and collaboration. This led to a shocking event: Jong Mong Hon, chairman of Hyundai Asan of south Korea, who had contributed to national collaboration, committed suicide under the pressure of "special investigation" by the opposition Grand National Party. And the south Korean authorities, yielding to US pressure, decided on dispatching their additional troops to Iraq.

Out of determination to give a strong push to the struggle for national reunification under the ideal of By Our Nation Itself despite the obstructive moves by the enemies at home and abroad, Kim Jong Il had a 180-member delegation comprised of sportspeople, including a Taekwon-Do demonstration team and others for arranging a fine art and handicrafts exhibition, dispatched on October 21, 2003 to the sports and cultural festival for national reunification and peace to be held on Jeju Island.

When the festival was held at last on October 24, the south Korean people said that despite the prevailing situation in the south, the north dispatched a large delegation for the success of the festival, and that it was a fruit born of the wise determination of Chairman Kim Jong Il.

Attaching importance to reunification rallies by social strata, Kim Jong Il saw to it that inter-Korean rallies of workers and farmers were held on May Day in Pyongyang and in June 2004 in Mt Kumgang, respectively.

To remove military stand-off, a military guarantee was provided for implementing the joint declaration. First and second rounds of north-south

general-level military talks were held in May and June that year, respectively, resulting in the adoption of an agreement on preventing accidental clashes on the West Sea and suspending propaganda activities and dismantling propaganda means in the areas along the Military Demarcation Line. And by August 2005 removal of massive means of propaganda was finished in the main as both sides had planned.

From the initial days of the construction of the Kaesong Industrial Park, the United States placed obstacles, claiming for approval of the Command of the UN forces. And when an agreement was reached on the development of an area for experimental factory in the park at the 13th round of inter-Korean minister-level talks held in February 2004, the United States held an emergency consultation with the south Korean authorities and resorted to obstructive moves under the pretext of abiding by the Wassenaar Arrangement. It stationed in the joint security area in Panmunjom over 20 members from its delegation to the Military Armistice Commission in Ryongsan, Seoul, so that they could perform the mission of approving and permitting traffic of personnel and materials through the demilitarized zone. It claimed that this was aimed at giving “support” to inter-Korean collaboration including the work of the Kaesong Industrial Park which was progressing at a fast speed and tourism of Kaesong by road to be promoted in the future.

In relation to this, the DPRK made public official statements in the name of relevant organs including the Korea Asia-Pacific Peace Committee and the National Economic Collaboration Committee. Denouncing the US interference in the construction of the Kaesong Industrial Park, the statements pointed out that the United States is the main culprit in checking the reunification and prosperity of the Korean nation and the root cause of the misfortune and pain of the nation, and appealed to the south Korean authorities and people to squarely see the true nature of the United States and promote all the economic cooperation projects between the north and the south from a sincere attitude towards national collaboration.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the warm wind of national collaboration and anti-US independence was raised more fiercely in 2005, marking the fifth anniversary of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration and the 60th anniversary of national liberation.

To mark the fifth anniversary of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration, he initiated holding in Pyongyang a grand national reunification festival to be participated by representatives of the north and south Korean authorities.

On June 17, 2005, he met the minister of unification, who had participated in the festival as a special envoy of the south Korean president, and said that the movement for national reunification should be launched more dynamically under the banner of By Our Nation Itself and a fresh change be brought about in inter-Korean relations.

This meeting effected a great change in inter-Korean relations, and created a second “June 15 syndrome” and “Kim Jong Il syndrome.”

The 15th round of inter-Korean minister-level talks held in Seoul in June 2005 created a new record in the history of inter-Korean talks—reaching agreement on all items of discussion and making public a 12-point joint press release which dealt with the overall issues for the development of inter-Korean relations through a single round of plenary meeting. In August the August 15 grand national reunification festival was held in Seoul, and the south Korean people streamed to Pyongyang to see the mass gymnastics and artistic performance *Arirang*.

The DPRK government rendered positive support to the south Korean people in their anti-US and anti-war struggle against the north-targeted war exercises and nuclear racket and for a general march for driving out the US forces, holding the slogan that they would make 2005 the year of independent reunification and the year of withdrawal of the US forces.

On April 18, marking the 45th anniversary of the April 19 Popular Uprising in south Korea, the Central Committee of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea and the Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of Korea published an appeal to the south Korean people. The appeal stressed the historic significance of the April 19 Popular Uprising, and continued: Even though scores of years have passed since the uprising, south Korea has yet to be freed from military occupation and colonial domination by the United States; the 60-year-long US military occupation and domination brought to the Korean people nothing but misfortune and division, confrontation and war; if the south Korean people are to realize their cherished desire for independence,

democracy and reunification, they must drive out the US forces and put an end to their colonial domination before it is too late; and all parties, groups and social strata should rise up as one to this end.

The Central Committee of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea published a memorandum, *The South Korean People Must Turn Out in the Patriotic, Sacred Struggle against the United States by Inheriting the Spirit of the Righteous Uprisings and Resistance Struggles*, on April 6, in which it denounced the US crime of suppressing the April 3 Popular Uprising on Jeju Island, the April 19 Popular Uprising, the Kwangju Popular Uprising and the June People's Resistance, and marking the 25th anniversary of the Kwangju Popular Uprising, it laid bare in a concentrated way the US real nature of wirepuller and mastermind, that had turned Kwangju into a bloodbath, a city of death, and its historical military suppression of the south Korean people's righteous, patriotic struggle and enforcement of colonial enslavement policy. The Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of Korea published a statement of indignation *Bloody Kwangju Calls for Anti-US Struggle*, on May 17, and the north side headquarters of the national special committee for investigating slaughters by US troops made public an indictment, *Rogun-ri Still Protests Denouncing the Crime of the US Imperialists, Unprecedented Homicidal Maniacs*, marking July 25, the 55th anniversary of the slaughter of civilians the US soldiers committed in Rogun-ri, south Korea, during the Korean war.

On June 10 a shocking incident happened in south Korea; a woman walking in a street was run over and killed by a US army truck.

The incident, which occurred following killing of two schoolgirls by a US armoured vehicle three years ago, evoked indignation among all the Korean people.

In those days reunification movement organizations and patriotic people in south Korea were unanimous in confirming in various statements, talks and comments issued marking the fifth anniversary of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration that the historic significance of the declaration was that it further heightened the awareness of national independence, awareness that the subordinate relationship between south Korea and the United States should be fundamentally reformulated. They

set the period from June 13 to September 8 that year as a period for intensive struggle against war and for peace and driving out US troops, and were making preparations for a general offensive to conduct the struggle for driving out US troops on a comprehensive, national and mass basis.

Furthermore, the incident happened on the eve of June 13, the third anniversary of the killing of the two schoolgirls, a few days before the fifth anniversary of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration, during the south Korean president's visit to the United States.

The Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of Korea released a talk of its spokesman. The talk stated that this incident was a clear proof that as long as US aggressor forces are stationed in south Korea its people could not live at ease even for a single day, that this was a second incident of killing of the two schoolgirls Sin Hyo Sun and Sim Mi Son, and that this kind of killing will not be ceased. It appealed to the south Korean people from all walks of life not to be taken in by the US deceptive schemes but turn the whole of south Korea into the crucible of anti-US struggle as they did when the two schoolgirls were killed.

Rodong Sinmun carried a commentary, *The Root Cause of Murder Must Be Removed*, and other newspapers and media organs reported the struggle of the south Korean people in an intensive way.

The south Korean people fanned the flames of the struggle for anti-US independence under the banner of By Our Nation Itself.

3. OCTOBER 4 DECLARATION FOR THE IMPROVEMENT OF NORTH-SOUTH RELATIONS, AND PEACE AND PROSPERITY

With the adoption of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration, rallies for reunification participated by the authorities as well as civic organizations in the north and south were held on several occasions and multi-layers of collaboration conducted in a brisk way in every field, furthering the zeal for national reunification across the country.

The railways and roads which had remained severed for over half a century were relinked, numerous separated families and their relatives had an emotion-filled reunion, and a great number of the south Korean people visited Pyongyang.

The south Korean people came to the understanding that the United States is the main obstacle to their national reunification, and their struggle to drive US troops out of south Korea and isolate and weaken the pro-US conservative forces gained momentum.

In particular, reverence for Kim Jong Il grew further among the south Korean people, and the trend towards achieving the great national unity became irresistible.

The south Korean president came to learn that the “Kim Jong Il syndrome” was sweeping across south Korea, and expressed his intention to meet Kim Jong Il.

With his deep insight into the changed inter-Korean relations and prevailing situation at home and abroad, Kim Jong Il decided to usher in a new phase for the development of inter-Korean relations through inter-Korean summit.

Several rounds of inter-Korean working-level talks were held, and an agreement was adopted in Pyongyang on August 5, 2007 on Pyongyang visit by the south Korean president.

As soon as the agreement was made public, it evoked great sensation among not only all the Korean people but also the whole world, and they all awaited the day of the Pyongyang summit.

The summit slated for August 28-30 was postponed to October 2-4 as flooding, the worst of its kind in 100 years, affected many areas in the northern half of Korea.

With the day of the summit approaching, Kim Jong Il showed close concern on the meeting; stressing that the summit should be an event to be held by the Korean nation itself, he made sure that the route of entry, welcome along roads and reception of the south Korean guests were arranged in a fresh way.

So, Roh Moo Hyun became the first president of south Korea in the history of the division of the Korean nation to cross the Military Demarcation Line by his official car and come to Pyongyang overland.

When foreign mass media were predicting that the Monument to the Three Charters for National Reunification would be the place of reception, Kim Jong Il went to the April 25 House of Culture to receive Roh Moo Hyun on October 2, 2007.

The south Korean people said: “It looked like re-playing of the old custom of our nation of warmly receiving a family member coming a long way at the entrance to the village and guiding him to the gateway to the house and then to the porch.” “Chairman Kim Jong Il received President Roh Moo Hyun and his party not as foreign guests but as guests from the same nation and same family. This treatment originated first from his trust in them as one nation and from his inclination for giving priority to the love of the nation.”

On October 3 Kim Jong Il met Roh Moo Hyun and had talks with him for several hours. At the talks he said: We should show the whole world that we are settling the inter-Korean problems by the efforts of our nation and independently, and this summit should be a good occasion in confirming national independence and achieving prosperity common to the nation.

During his stay in Pyongyang, Roh Moo Hyun said: “Chairman Kim Jong Il should live long in good health for the smooth progress of the inter-Korean relations.” “I express my deep gratitude to Chairman Kim Jong Il for lavishing solicitude so that our party can stay without feeling any inconvenience.”

On October 4 Kim Jong Il signed with Roh Moo Hyun the Declaration for the Improvement of North-South Relations, and Peace and Prosperity.

The first part of the declaration mentioned that the meeting and talks reconfirmed the spirit of the June 15 Joint Declaration and discussed all issues related to boosting north-south relations and achieving peace on the Korean peninsula, prosperity common to the nation and reunification.

And it continued:

“Expressing the belief that the nation can open up the era of national prosperity, the new era of independent reunification, when it pools intention and strength, both sides declare as follows to boost inter-Korean relations on the basis of the June 15 Joint Declaration:

1. The north and the south shall uphold and positively implement the

June 15 Joint Declaration.

2. The north and the south agreed to definitely convert north-south relations into those of mutual respect and confidence, transcending the differences in ideology and system.

3. The north and the south agreed to closely cooperate with each other in the efforts to put an end to hostile military relations and ensure détente and peace on the Korean peninsula.

4. The north and the south shared the understanding about the need to put an end to the existing armistice mechanism and build a lasting peace mechanism and agreed to cooperate with each other in the efforts to push forward with the issue of arranging the meeting of heads of state of three or four parties directly concerned on the Korean peninsula to declare an end to war.

5. The north and the south agreed to reenergize economic cooperation and bring about its sustained development on the principles of ensuring common interests and co-prosperity and meeting each other's needs with a view to balanced development of the national economy and common prosperity.

6. The north and the south agreed to develop exchanges and cooperation in social and cultural fields such as history, language, education, science and technology, culture and the arts and sports to add brilliance to the time-honoured history and fine culture of the nation.

7. The north and the south agreed to push forward with humanitarian cooperation.

8. The north and the south agreed to strengthen cooperation in the efforts to protect the interests of the nation and the rights and interests of overseas Koreans on the international arena.”

As soon as the declaration was made public, it roused a stormy reflection among the various strata of the south Korean people.

After reading the declaration on a train bound for Kwangju on October 4, former President Kim Dae Jung said that the talks were a success.

Specialists, scholars and university professors in south Korea spoke highly of the declaration, commenting that such a landmark for the nation could be set up by the strategic resolution of Kim Jong Il.

Economic organizations including the National Federation of Businessmen, in their official statements, supported the declaration, saying that it constituted a watershed in overcoming the confrontation and discord between the north and south that lasted for over half a century and ushering in a new era of peace and collaboration. They also stressed that strengthened inter-Korean economic cooperation would expand substantial investments and bring equal benefits to both sides.

Many countries followed the inter-Korean summit with keen interest.

Major media organs of the world reported the summit meeting as top news. CNN reported the scene of Kim Jong Il receiving Roh Moo Hyun live by TV, and AFP and DPA reported that Kim Jong Il came to the formal welcoming place to receive Roh Moo Hyun. BBC, Xinhua, AP, Jiji and ITAR-Tass reported that the summit meeting, from beginning to end, was led by Kim Jong Il, and that with the adoption of the declaration, a new landmark was provided in the history of the Korean peninsula, a step forward from the June 15 Joint Declaration adopted in 2000. A spokesman for the Chinese Foreign Ministry welcomed the positive success in the summit meeting, confirming that this would be beneficial to the peace process on the Korean peninsula and to peace and stability in the region.

After the pro-US conservative forces took power in south Korea, the inter-Korean relations returned to the state before the adoption of the June 15 Joint Declaration. However, Kim Jong Il showed close concern for the reconciliation and unity between the north and south.

In May 2009 he sent a message of condolences on the death of Roh Moo Hyun. When he received the news of death of Kim Dae Jung in August that year, he sent a message of condolences and dispatched a special envoy group to Seoul, saying that the north side should express condolences to the fellow countrymen earlier than foreign guests.

Following the visit to Seoul by the special envoy group, inter-Korean relations entered the phase of dialogue: Red Cross talks and a reunion of separated families and their relatives were held.

When Hyundai Asan of south Korea requested holding a mourning ceremony in Mt Kumgang to mark the sixth anniversary of the death of Jong Mong Hon, Kim Jong Il saw to it that permission was granted.

When CEO of Hyundai Group requested visiting Pyongyang for north-south cooperation, he allowed her to do so in mid-August 2009, and on August 16 met her to resolve the problems of reopening the suspended tourism on Mt Kungang and holding a reunion of separated families and their relatives on the occasion of *Chusok* Festival (Harvest Moon Day-Tr.).

Though the north-south relations were driven into a crisis again in March 2010 owing to the sinking of south Korean naval vessel *Cheonan* fabricated by the ultra-right conservative forces in south Korea, he saw to it that a ceremony was held to celebrate the tenth anniversary of the publication of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration. As Rev. Han Sang Ryol, permanent advisor of the Solidarity for Progress in south Korea, who came to Pyongyang to participate in this meeting, was going to return home via Panmunjom, he inquired after his health through the President of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly and sent his expectation that the minister would continue to perform good work for national reunification and the reconciliation and unity of the nation in good health.

Thanks to Kim Jong Il's care, a delegation of Buddhists and a delegation of seven religious orders of south Korea visited Pyongyang in September 2011. When Pak Yong Gil, widow of Rev. Mun Ik Hwan, died, he sent a message of condolences to the family of the deceased on September 26, 2011.

4. LEADING OVERSEAS COMPATRIOTS TO CHERISH NATIONAL DIGNITY AND PRIDE

Kim Jong Il led all overseas Koreans to cherish national pride and self-confidence.

He ensured that Koreans resident in Japan defended their national rights and dignity.

The third and fourth generations emerged as the main force in the formation of the ranks of Koreans in Japan, and the movement of the Korean nation for their reunification which greeted the June 15 era of

independent reunification brought about a series of changes in the scope of activities of the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan (Chongryon) and the persons it had to deal with. On the other hand, the chauvinistic prejudice and ostracism of Japan with regard to Koreans in Japan reached the extreme after the successful launch of earth satellite by the DPRK in 1998, the adoption of the DPRK-Japan Pyongyang Declaration in 2002 and the DPRK's announcement of possession of nuclear deterrent in 2006, and the economy of Japan was yet to free itself from long-standing stagnation.

With a deep insight into the actual demand for developing the movement of Koreans in Japan, Kim Jong Il published several works including *On Further Solidifying the Mass Foundations of Chongryon by Improving Its Methods of Work to Meet the Changed Environment and Actual Situation* in April 1999, *On Some Important Problems Facing Chongryon at Present* in March 2000, *Let Us Vigorously Advance the Patriotic Work of Chongryon by Dint of Single-Hearted Unity* in February 2002 and *Chongryon Should Conduct All Its Work in a Creative and Positive Way* in April 2002, where he set forth tasks for bringing about a change in the work method of Chongryon in line with the demands of the new century, changed situation and aspirations of the rising generations.

With the stress put on developing itself into a mass organization that truly serves Korean compatriots in Japan, Chongryon brought its work method close to their life, and improved the work method so as to make the broad sections of the masses involved in all work with the younger generations at the centre.

It revitalized the operation of well-regulated system set up in its organizations at all levels and regions, thus briskly rendering various services for compatriots in their livelihoods and welfare, like helping the elderly and persons with disabilities and supporting upbringing of children.

It launched a vigorous campaign for winning back Koreans for the purpose of further expanding its mass foundation, with the result that it re-established contacts with over 1 460 compatriots in their thirties and forties and located some 5 340 compatriots by expanding the scope of visiting compatriots' houses in the period of the 100-day campaign for

winning back compatriots, which was launched in late May 2008, the year of the 60th anniversary of the DPRK.

Chongryon dynamically carried on the work defending itself.

The racket against Chongryon and Koreans in Japan raised by the Japanese reactionaries at the close of the 20th century and in the beginning of the 21st century grew so serious that it reminded people of the days of the Kanto Great Earthquake, when the Japanese imperialists committed massacre of Koreans, and the days before the Korean war, when the Japanese reactionaries forcibly disbanded the Federation of Koreans in Japan. It was in those days that *Mangyongbong 92* was banned to put in at Japanese ports, tax was imposed on the Central Hall of Chongryon, which was formerly a tax-free building, and the hall was put up at auction.

In October 2001 and on several other occasions Kim Jong Il said that the more complicated the situation and the more vicious the Japanese reactionaries' oppression against Chongryon might be, the more firmly it should defend itself with confidence and optimism, and that it should work in a flexible and skilful way.

The Central Standing Committee of Chongryon released statements, in which it exposed and denounced the unjustifiable political suppression and terrorist acts by the Japanese reactionaries, and demanded that they immediately stop fascist suppression of Chongryon and, in line with the spirit of the DPRK-Japan Pyongyang Declaration, guarantee the position and rights of Koreans in Japan, the safety of their lives and their right to survival. Through a central conference of Koreans in Japan, central rally of young Koreans in Japan, Our Nation's Forum 2002 Osaka and other functions, Chongryon demonstrated its united strength and the enthusiasm of Koreans in Japan.

Chongryon consistently pushed ahead with the work of maintaining the ideological system of Juche in its organizations and strengthening its single-hearted unity.

At its 19th Congress held in May after the death of Chairman Han Tok Su in February 2001, it elected So Man Sul, first vice-chairman who had long worked in Chongryon, as chairman of its Central Standing Committee, firmly rallying its ranks and consolidating their single-hearted unity.

Kim Jong Il met several delegations of Chongryon for two days in February 2002, giving instructions on consolidating the single-hearted unity of Chongryon and further enhancing the sense of responsibility and role of its officials.

That day he sang *Song of Comradeship* with chairmen of prefectural headquarters of Chongryon.

After singing the song, he said: Chongryon is the legacy left by President Kim Il Sung; the third and fourth generations of Chongryon should invariably inherit the patriotic will and traditions of its first and second generations, and must not abandon the precious legacies of Chongryon bequeathed by their forerunners, but add brilliance to them.

In February 2002, he saw a video-recording of a grand chorus, *Ode to General Kim Jong Il*, performed by 1 000 students of Korea University in celebration of his birthday.

In the same month he met the Chongryon officials including the chancellor of Korea University who were visiting their homeland, and said: I was deeply moved as I saw the artistic performance staged by students of Korea University; it was quite laudable and phenomenal that 1 000 students staged a chorus in the heart of Tokyo; as a proper ideological system of Juche is established in the university, it has produced new hard core and many patriots; I highly appreciate their high sense of loyalty towards their motherland and their patriotic enthusiasm, and extend warm thanks to all the students and teaching staff of the university.

He continued: Korea University is the one and only base of training new hard core for Chongryon who would carry forward its patriotic cause; whether the work of the university is carried on properly or not largely decides the future of national education of Chongryon and the movement of Koreans in Japan in the new century; the university should train its students to be hardcore elements who are possessed of a proper Juche-based world outlook and are faithful to their country and nation.

In that month Kim Jong Il enjoyed the music and dance performance *Flower of Patriotism* performed by the Korean artistes in Japan in the Hamhung Grand Theatre in celebration of his birthday.

Speaking highly of the performance, he said that the overall content of

the performance was good and its form was also fresh, that every work had a strong ideological character and its own characteristics, and that today's performance, distinct in national colouring, demonstrated the national spirit of the Korean compatriots who refused to be assimilated to the Japanese.

He encouraged the traders and entrepreneurs affiliated to Chongryon to fulfil their mission as the main force of the movement of Koreans in Japan, and glorified their life filled with patriotic fidelity.

When a delegation of men of commerce in Japan visited the homeland in November 2005, he asked an official to convey his regards to them, and said, **“Whenever I see in various parts of the country the ‘aeguk’ factories and equipment and monumental edifices, which are associated with the patriotic devotion of Korean men of commerce in Japan, I think that they are ardent patriots who fervently love their country and nation.”**

Saying that as President Kim Il Sung had said, men of commerce affiliated to Chongryon constitute the basic section of the Korean community in Japan and the main force of Chongryon's patriotic cause, Kim Jong Il instructed that they should cherish firm faith in the victory of Chongryon's patriotic cause and rally a greater number of other men of commerce from all walks of life, and that it was important to lead them to perform their noble mission and duty as the main force of the patriotic cause of Chongryon single-mindedly. He then specified the ways for helping the Korean men of commerce in Japan, who were experiencing difficulties in their business activities.

He led Chongryon to play a proactive role in the movement for national reunification in keeping with the trend of the era of June 15.

On several occasions, Chongryon arranged home visiting by its members hailing from south Korea, thus giving a great impact on the south Korean people. The home-visiting compatriots appealed to their relatives and friends to turn out in the effort to implement the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration.

The Kungangsan Opera Troupe affiliated to Chongryon staged artistic performances in Seoul, Pusan and Jonju in December 2000 and December 2002, and an art group of Korean students and children in Japan staged

performances in Seoul and Jonju in September 2002. These performances, vivid in the Juche character and national identity, stoked the heated atmosphere for national reunification in the whole of south Korea.

Chongryon arranged such colourful events as fine art exhibition on the theme of national reunification, concert co-sponsored by compatriots from the north, south and abroad aspiring after peace and reunification, and Hana festival of younger generation of Koreans in Japan, thus raising the atmosphere for reunification to a crescendo.

Regarding the work of giving national education to children of Korean compatriots in Japan as a matter of great importance in defending their national identity and steadfastly inheriting the baton of Chongryon, Kim Jong Il had a large sum of educational aid funds and stipends sent to them every year.

As of April 2011, the educational aid funds and stipends sent from the homeland on 157 occasions amounted to 46 759 450 390 yen.

In June 2001, when Korea University was greeting the 45th anniversary of its founding, Kim Jong Il had 29 specimens of shellfish in the Taedong River and their photo album sent to the university, and in 2005 the book *Plants on Moran Hill* and its e-book *Plants on Moran Hill in Time-Honoured Pyongyang*.

In September 2003, when the first pine mushrooms for the year were picked, he ensured that they were sent first to Chongryon, and relief funds to the Korean victims of the earthquake and tsunami that occurred in Japan in October 2004 and March 2011, respectively.

When Hong Chang Su, a Korean in Japan, won the super flyweight title in the WBC Championships demonstrating the honour of the Korean nation, Kim Jong Il ensured that the young man's wish to visit his homeland was realized and the title of Labour Hero conferred on him.

As leader of an organization under the Korean Youth League in Japan in Osaka, Hong had rejected the demand of the Japanese authorities to change his nationality to Japanese one and fight the match amid the playing of *Kimigayo* and flying *Hinomaru*, and entered the stadium in his Korean name, wearing a uniform printed with a map of Korea and letters, reading *National Reunification*, and flying the flag of the DPRK and amid the

playing of the Korean song, *Song of Coast Artillerymen*. In this way, he infused national pride and self-respect in the hearts of the Korean compatriots in Japan and demonstrated the mettle of the Korean nation to the world.

Wherever he went in his homeland, he was accorded a warm welcome and hospitality. Before leaving the homeland, he wrote a letter of thanks to Kim Jong Il, which reads in part, “Professional boxing, dear General, is my love, but the homeland is the whole of my life. This is my lifetime motto. I leave my whole heart and soul in the homeland where you are.”

Kim Jong Il also led the Korean compatriots resident in several countries to live with dignity and pride in being members of the Korean nation.

At the turn of the 21st century, their organizations in Russia, China, America and Europe expanded in scope and strength.

At its Second Congress, the General Association of Korean Citizens in China amended and supplemented its programme and rules and renamed itself the General Association of Korean Residents in China, embracing broad sections of Koreans in China. The International United Confederation of Koreans, an organization of Koreans resident in the republics of the former Soviet Union, improved the system and method of its work in the direction of enhancing the independence of its affiliated organizations in every republic and strengthening their roles.

Kim Jong Il ensured that travel to and exchange with the homeland by the overseas compatriots organizations were realized, so that they could gain strength and courage while witnessing the reality in their homeland. He also took measures for propagating abroad a collection of famous songs *Long Road of the Songun Revolution* and a video *Army Songs of Defending the Nation* through the Internet in 2006. Art troupes sent to China and Germany deeply implanted the feeling of love of the nation, native land and country into the hearts of the overseas compatriots.

He lavished compatriotic trust and affection on overseas Korean figures.

Upon the receipt of the news of the death of Han Tok Su, chairman of the Central Standing Committee of Chongryon, in February 2001, he said: I feel heartrending to hear that Chairman Han Tok Su died; it is an

irrevocable, great loss in implementing the cause of Chongryon.

He continued, **“Comrade Han Tok Su used to say that he respected me higher than the heaven. I will remember and respect him forever as my precious revolutionary forerunner.”**

He ensured that a mourners’ delegation headed by a vice-president of the Presidium of the Supreme People’s Assembly was sent to Japan, that memorial services were held in the homeland and Japan at the same time, and that his remains were laid in the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery in Sinmi-ri in the motherland.

When he met woman journalist Mun Myong Ja from the United States and woman singer Kim Ryon Ja from Japan, he spoke highly of them for their activities abroad, encouraging them to make redoubled efforts for the nation and reunification.

When Choi Hong Hi, president of the International Taekwon-Do Federation, was suffering from a terminal illness, he had him have an operation in the motherland. After his death, he ensured that his remains were laid in the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery in Sinmi-ri, and spoke highly of his devotion for the development of the national martial art and for national reunification.

CHAPTER 52

CONDUCTING ENERGETIC EXTERNAL ACTIVITIES

1. DEVELOPING THE DPRK-CHINA FRIENDSHIP

Kim Jong Il conducted energetic external activities to strengthen and develop the traditional DPRK-China friendship.

At its 16th Congress held in 2002, the Communist Party of China elected a new central leadership headed by General Secretary Hu Jintao. In July, August and October in 2003 and in January and March in 2004, Kim Jong Il met the DPRK-visiting special envoy of the Chinese government, who was a director of the Foreign Ministry, a high-level delegation of the Chinese People's Liberation Army headed by the director of the General Political Department, the chairman of the Standing Committee of the National People's Congress of China, the director of the International Liaison Department of the Central Committee of the CPC, and the foreign minister of China, respectively, expressing his support for the efforts of the new leadership of the CPC to invariably strengthen friendly relations between two countries and reaffirming his determination to steadily consolidate and develop friendship between the two countries.

From April 18 to 22, 2004, Kim Jong Il paid an unofficial visit to the People's Republic of China at the invitation of Hu Jintao, general secretary of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of China and president of the People's Republic of China.

All the members of the Standing Committee of the Political Bureau of the Central Committee of the CPC received Kim Jong Il and accorded most cordial hospitality to him.

Kim Jong Il met Hu Jintao. At the talks he said that 2004 which marked the 55th anniversary of the establishment of diplomatic relations between the two countries was a year of great significance in the history of the development of bilateral relations of friendship early in the new century. He spoke highly of the remarkable successes the new Chinese leadership had made over the past one year to achieve the great prosperity of the Chinese nation and its efforts to consolidate and develop the bilateral relations. The two leaders exchanged views on further developing relations between the two parties and two countries and on the overriding international issues of common concern.

Hu Jintao said that most of the Chinese people who grew up in the 1950s and the 1960s knew the song, *Song of General Kim Il Sung*, that they could see from this fact alone that bilateral friendship was so deeply rooted in the hearts of the peoples of the two countries, and that they were focusing on exchange between young people of the two countries so as to hand down the traditional friendship to the coming generations without fail and develop it generation after generation.

Kim Jong Il met the chairman of the Central Military Commission of the PRC, the chairman of the Standing Committee of the National People's Congress, the premier of the State Council, the chairman of the National Committee of the Chinese People's Political Consultative Conference, and the vice-president of the PRC, respectively. At the talks they exchanged their views on further developing the relations between the two parties and two countries and the international issues of common concern, and the Chinese side expressed a firm support to and solidarity with the Workers' Party of Korea's Songun-based revolutionary line and cause of national reunification.

In September and October 2004, Kim Jong Il met a Chinese party and government delegation, a Shanghai schoolchildren's art troupe and other Chinese delegations, furthering the atmosphere of DPRK-China friendship.

He met Hu Jintao, who visited the DPRK in October 2005, and had talks on several occasions. The two leaders had in-depth exchange of views on further expanding and developing the relations of friendship and cooperation between the two countries and a series of matters of mutual

concern. They also visited the Taean Friendship Glass Factory, built as a symbol of DPRK-China friendship.

In order to further develop DPRK-China friendship, Kim Jong Il paid an unofficial visit to China from January 10 to 18, 2006.

Before going to Beijing, he visited Wuhan and Yichang in Hubei Province and Guangzhou, Zhuhai and Shenzhen in Guangdong Province, special economic zones in the central and southern parts of China, looking around several units from January 11 to 15.

On January 17 he met and had talks with Hu Jintao in Beijing. They exchanged their views on the outstanding international and regional issues of mutual concern. Kim Jong Il stressed that bilateral relationship was developing further in the new circumstances, and that the Workers' Party of Korea and the DPRK government, as in the past and so in the future, would make fresh efforts together with the Chinese side to carry forward the tradition of close cooperation between the two parties and countries and continue to develop bilateral relations of friendship.

Kim Jong Il ensured that powerful support was given to China, when it was undergoing trials owing to the strong earthquake that hit Wenchuan County in Sichuan Province in May 2008 and a disturbance that erupted in Tibet in March. When relay of the Olympic flame for the 29th Olympic Games in Beijing in 2008 was held intermittently owing to the obstructive moves of some impure elements, he saw to it that these moves were condemned as a challenge to the ideals of Olympics and a relay was held in the DPRK.

Just around this time, the Chinese vice-president visited the DPRK in June 2008.

On June 18, Kim Jong Il met him and his party, and had talks on the issues for developing the relations between the two countries.

2009, the year that marked the 60th anniversary of the establishment of diplomatic relations between the DPRK and China, was designated as a year of DPRK-China friendship to raise the bilateral relations onto a higher plane.

Greeting the new year 2009, Kim Jong Il and Hu Jintao exchanged congratulatory telegrams, in which they officially announced the operation of the year of DPRK-China friendship.

The year of DPRK-China friendship started with its opening ceremony held in March 2009 in China with the attendance by the premier on the DPRK side; and many delegations and art troupes of the two countries made mutual visits, further enlivening the atmosphere of friendship under the close concern of the parties and governments of the two countries. Under the guidance of Kim Jong Il, *A Dream of Red Mansions* was re-produced, and this opera played an important role in further developing friendship between the peoples of the two countries.

In October 2009 Chinese Premier Wen Jiabao visited Pyongyang to attend the closing ceremony of the year of DPRK-China friendship.

Kim Jong Il went to the Pyongyang airport to receive the Chinese premier. He had talks with him on such issues as strengthening DPRK-China friendship, denuclearizing the Korean peninsula, and other issues of mutual concern.

In the talks Kim Jong Il stressed that denuclearization of the Korean peninsula was the behest of President Kim Il Sung, and expressed the readiness of the DPRK side to participate in multilateral talks including six-party talks after studying the result of the DPRK-US talks.

Western mass media reported that the fact that China sent its premier to the DPRK at a time, when a sanctions resolution was just adopted on the occasion of the DPRK's launch of artificial satellite Kwangmyongsong 2 and the second nuclear test, and his party included many important personages in the political, diplomatic and economic fields in China reflected the new determination of the Chinese leadership to bolster up the bilateral relations beyond the nuclear issue, and that Kim Jong Il's "unconventional" and "exceptional" reception of the Chinese premier at the Pyongyang airport was a manifestation of the DPRK side's intention to consolidate DPRK-China friendship in contradiction to the future DPRK-US relations. American and Russian mass media predicted that as the speed and scope of DPRK-China cooperation grew faster and wider, the bilateral relations would enter a "new stage."

At the invitation of Hu Jintao and the leadership of the Chinese party, Kim Jong Il visited China on two occasions in 2010.

He paid an unofficial visit to China from May 3 to 7, and looked round

several places in Dalian in the southern part of Liaoning Province, Tianjin and Beijing.

On May 5, he met and had talks with Hu Jintao in Beijing.

He again paid an unofficial visit to China from August 26 to 30.

He visited Jilin and Changchun in Jilin Province and Harbin in Heilongjiang Province, and had talks with Hu Jintao in Changchun on August 27.

Hu Jintao noted that Kim Jong Il's visit to China four months after his visit in May was a clear manifestation of how much importance he attached to the traditional DPRK-China friendship established by the leaders of the preceding generations of the two countries, and highly appreciated the distinguished services rendered by Kim Jong Il for the steady development of DPRK-China friendship.

Stressing that the DPRK-China friendship with a long tradition would remain unchanged despite the passage of time and the change of generations as it had withstood the tempest and trials of history, Kim Jong Il said:

“In the future, too, we will make every effort to vigorously strengthen and develop the traditional DPRK-China friendship on a higher level by inheriting the ennobling will of the revolutionary forerunners of the two countries.”

In Jilin Kim Jong Il looked round Jilin Yuwen Middle School which Kim Il Sung had attended, the Yaowang Shrine in Beishan Park, one of the secret places Kim Il Sung used very often in the initial days of his revolutionary activities, a Catholic church and Jilin Chemical Fibre Group.

He visited Changchun, the capital of Jilin Province, where he looked round the Changchun Agricultural Exposition House and the Changchun Rolling Stock Company. Then he visited Harbin, the capital of Heilongjiang Province, where he looked round the Harbin Huijiang Foodstuff Company and the Harbin Electrical Group.

Kim Jong Il again paid unofficial visits to China in May and August 2011.

From May 20 to 27, 2011 he visited the northeastern and eastern regions and Beijing, congratulating the successes the Chinese people had achieved

in building a prosperous society. From August 25 to 27, 2011, he toured Manzhouli and Hulun Beier in the Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region, Qiqihar and Daqing in Heilongjiang Province and Tonghua in Jilin Province, and looked round several places there.

He met several DPRK-visiting Chinese delegations in 2011, conducting energetic activities to create an external atmosphere favourable for the development of the Korean revolution in the new era of the revolutionary cause of Juche.

The Chinese party sent to the DPRK a State Councillor and concurrently Minister of Public Security in February 2011, a member of the Political Bureau and secretary and concurrently head of the Organization Department of the CPC Central Committee in June, a member of the Political Bureau of the CPC Central Committee and concurrently Vice-Premier of the State Council in July, a member of the Standing Committee of the Political Bureau of the CPC Central Committee and concurrently Vice-Premier of the State Council in October, director of the General Political Department of the Chinese People's Liberation Army in November and other high-ranking officials.

These Chinese guests met Kim Jong Il and Kim Jong Un, and warmly congratulated the brilliant solution of the question of inheriting the Korean revolution with the re-election of Kim Jong Il as the General Secretary of the WPK and election of Kim Jong Un as a Vice-Chairman of its Central Military Commission, and presented gifts to them. At the talks they promised that they would steadfastly inherit the baton of the traditional and special DPRK-China friendship which was permeated with the ennobling will of the revolutionaries of preceding generations of the two countries.

In February 2011 Kim Jong Il enjoyed a concert given by Korean artistes with the staff of the Chinese embassy in Pyongyang and several Chinese delegations that were on a visit to the DPRK on the occasion of *Jongwoldaeborum* (the 15th day of the first month by the lunar calendar-Tr.). In October he arranged a dinner for the leading diplomats of the Chinese embassy, and highly appreciated them for their great contribution to developing the relations of friendship between the two countries.

2. EVER-DEVELOPING DPRK-RUSSIA FRIENDSHIP

Through his energetic external activities Kim Jong Il developed the DPRK-Russia relations of friendship on a higher stage.

After Putin's visit to the DPRK in 2000 and Kim Jong Il's visit to the Russian Federation in 2001, the two countries made concerted efforts to further develop the traditional relations of friendship and cooperation.

In January 2002 Kim Jong Il visited the Russian embassy in Pyongyang, and clarified the matters arising in glorifying the long-standing tradition of friendship and cooperation between the two countries. In 2002 he met the Russian Foreign Minister and his party, mayor of Moscow and his party, presidential chief delegate to the Far East Federal District and other Russian delegations.

From August 20 to 24, 2002, Kim Jong Il visited the Far East of Russia.

With an utmost concern on Kim Jong Il's visit to the Far East, Russian President Putin took an exceptional measure of issuing special directive to the office of his chief delegate to the Far East Federal District, local administrative authorities, Far East Military District and headquarters of the Pacific Fleet.

Greeted by the presidential chief delegate to the Far East Federal District, Russian ambassador to the DPRK and other Russian officials at the Khasan Railway Station, Kim Jong Il first visited Komsomolsk-on-Amur, a major industrial city in the Far East.

This city was built by members of the Young Communist League from across the former Soviet Union as a base for industrial and cultural development in the Far East in the 1930s. To convey for ever the exploits of the young builders, the city was named Komsomolsk-on-Amur.

Kim Jong Il laid a wreath before a monument erected in memory of the citizens who had fallen during the Second World War, and visited the Gagarin Komsomolsk-on-Amur Aircraft Complex.

The complex, which had rendered great services to the victory in the Soviet-German war by producing many aircraft, was turning out various

kinds of aircraft including ultramodern multipurpose fighter planes.

Out of reverence for Kim Jong Il, Putin had many units in the munitions industry and the army shown to the DPRK leader. The aircraft complex was one of them.

After making the rounds of the design research institute and assembling and press workshops, he wrote on the visitors' book, **“I pay homage to the glorious course of the factory's development. August 21, 2002, Kim Jong Il”**

In the afternoon of that day he looked round the Amur Shipyard, and sailed along the River Amur on a cruise liner, before visiting the Cosmos Children's Camp on Shargol Island.

On August 22 he arrived in Khabarovsk, seat of the Far East Federal District.

He toured a pharmaceutical plant and the Amurkabel Co. Ltd, before inspecting the Volochayevka Division in the Far East Military District, a division organized by Lenin. He looked round a room dedicated to the history of the division, and then went over various kinds of combat and technical equipment and combat gear, which the Far East Military District displayed in the division. While going over them, he surprised the accompanying officials by telling them from his encyclopedic knowledge the global trend of producing small arms.

After inspecting the division he wrote letters, reading that glory would be in store for the division that inherited the great traditions.

He then inspected the staff office of the division and attended a banquet given by the commander in the hall of officers.

During his stay in Khabarovsk he visited St. Bishop Innokenty of Irkutsk church, a Russian Orthodox church. The church rang the bells to welcome Kim Jong Il's visit to the church. The church superior said that as the Sun descended on to his church, it was quite natural to ring the bells.

On August 23 Kim Jong Il met Putin in Vladivostok. At the meeting they discussed issues for further developing bilateral relations of friendship and cooperation and other important matters of mutual interest, and expressed their willingness to render positive contributions to achieving global peace and stability and building a new, fair world through concerted

efforts. They also dealt with issues relating to economic cooperation.

During his stay in Vladivostok he visited the trade port, Ignat commercial centre and Vlad Khleb Bakery and warship *Admiral Panteleyev* of the Pacific Fleet.

After winding up his visit to the Far East of Russia, he came back to the DPRK on August 24.

The world major mass media and political analysts wrote that the DPRK was raising its profile more and more as a world power to be reckoned with and exercising its influence in the international arena, commenting that Kim Jong Il's visit to the Far East of Russia was not merely a working-level visit, but a significant event, during which political and military affairs were given equal importance.

In the later period of crucial importance, when the DPRK was taking a series of self-defensive measures, like possessing nuclear deterrent and launching an artificial satellite, Kim Jong Il paid close attention to the work with Russia to create a favourable external atmosphere.

In January 2003, when the DPRK was drawing world attention with the announcement of its withdrawal from the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty, Kim Jong Il met a special envoy of the Russian president who was on a visit to Pyongyang. In the talk Kim Jong Il explained the essence of the nuclear issue on the Korean peninsula, the DPRK's principled and consistent stand relating to it and the way to solving it, so that Russia could have a correct understanding of the nuclear issue on the Korean peninsula.

In February 2003 Kim Jong Il visited the Russian embassy in Pyongyang. After handing the congratulatory message and three horses from his president over to Kim Jong Il, the Russian ambassador told the Korean leader that the white Orlov trotters bore Putin's wish for Kim Jong Il's victory and success in his work, adding that it is customary in Russia for a triumphant general to ride a white horse.

In July and September 2004, Kim Jong Il met the DPRK-visiting Russian Foreign Minister and the chairman of the Federation Council of Russia, respectively. In March 2005 he visited the Russian embassy again to encourage the staff of the embassy who were contributing to the development of DPRK-Russia friendship. In August and October that year

he met the presidential chief delegate to the Far East Federal District, and in August a delegation of war veteran parliamentarians headed by the first vice-chairman of national defence and security committee of the Federation Council.

He saw to it that art diplomacy with Russia was conducted on an unprecedented scale in the 21st century.

He personally enjoyed the performances given by the Russian artistes, congratulated them on their successful performances, and took every possible measure for them to give performances in several places in the DPRK.

The Russian Federation Presidential Ensemble, central military band of the Ministry of Defence, Alexandrov Russian Army Academic Song and Dance Ensemble, Academy Ensemble of the Interior Force of the Ministry of the Interior, 21st Century Orchestra and other art troupes visited the DPRK and staged artistic performances. A joint concert given by artistes of the two countries on May 1, 2010, a joint concert performed by the Samjiyon Band of the Mansudae Art Troupe of the DPRK and renowned artistes of Russia on August 15, 2010 to mark the 65th anniversary of Korea's liberation, and a joint performance given by the Samjiyon Band of the Mansudae Art Troupe and the 21st Century Orchestra on March 8, 2011 to mark the International Women's Day demonstrated the DPRK-Russia friendship at home and abroad.

For the development of DPRK-Russia friendship, Kim Jong Il visited Russia again in August 2011 at the invitation of Dmitri Medvedev who had been elected Russian president in 2008.

From August 20 to 25, he visited Siberia and Far East of Russia. During his stay he visited the Bureya Hydropower Station in the Amur region, Lake Baikal in the Republic of Buryatia, Soviet Square and large supermarket Megatitan in Ulan-Ude.

On August 24 Kim Jong Il met Dmitri Medvedev in Ulan-Ude.

The Russian president noted that the third visit to Russia by Kim Jong Il in the new century clearly proved the importance the DPRK leader was attaching to friendship between the two countries, and extended to him deep respect for making a great contribution to the development of DPRK-Russia

friendship. At the talks the leaders stressed the need to expand the relations of friendship, equality and mutually beneficial cooperation on the basis of the spirit of the Pyongyang DPRK-Russia Joint Declaration in 2000, Moscow Russia-DPRK Declaration in 2001 and the Treaty of Friendship, Good-neighbourliness and Cooperation between the DPRK and Russia. Firmly convinced that the cause of building a prosperous and powerful nation in the DPRK and the cause of building a powerful state in Russia would surely be accomplished, they expressed mutual support for and solidarity with them, and exchanged views on the regional and international issues including the denuclearization of the whole of the Korean peninsula.

A series of agenda items on boosting economic cooperation in various fields including gas and other forms of energy and railway link were tabled at the talks, and a common recognition of them was achieved. The two countries agreed on organizing and operating working groups to put the issues into practice and continuing to cooperate with each other in this direction.

In the speech he made at a banquet Kim Jong Il said:

“To steadily develop the history and tradition of DPRK-Russia friendship and in depth entirely accords with the interests of the peoples of the two countries and is very important in defending peace and stability in Northeast Asia.”

The external activities Kim Jong Il conducted changed the surrounding situation and external atmosphere in favour of the Korean revolution.

When the nuclear issue of the DPRK was tabled at an off-camera session of the UN Security Council on April 9, 2003, the Chinese representative insisted that the issue should be settled peacefully and through DPRK-US talks, and the Russian representative supported China’s opinion. In the Russia-China Joint Declaration signed by Russian President Putin and Chinese President Hu Jintao on May 27, 2003 in Moscow, the two leaders made a special mention of the Korean issue. They acknowledged that what was fundamental in settling the issue on the Korean peninsula was the political determination of the parties concerned and the crisis should be solved through political and diplomatic methods, stressing that they agreed to strengthen cooperation with each other to defend peace and security and

promote development on the Korean peninsula.

As the host country of six-party talks, China exerted efforts for the peaceful settlement of the nuclear issue on the Korean peninsula, and China and Russia stood on the side of the DPRK in the second six-party talks held in February 2004 and the third six-party talks in June that year.

When the incident of the sinking of the south Korean naval vessel *Cheonan*, a conspiracy concocted by the US and south Korean authorities, happened in 2010, Russia stated that it had no plan to discuss the incident at the UN Security Council without perfect and correct evidence of the DPRK's involvement in it, and China also expressed its hope that responsible countries would find a fair solution to the issue by displaying their calm attitude and self-control. At an unofficial consultation of the UN Security Council China and Russia expressed their opposition to any actions against the DPRK.

In the first decade of the 21st century after the DPRK's possession of nuclear deterrent, the international political situation surrounding the DPRK was complex, and the manoeuvres of the Bush administration and its hardline conservatives reached to the extreme. Issues related with the DPRK were dealt with almost every year in the international arena including the UN Security Council, during which fierce offensive and defensive diplomatic warfare, warfare of nerves and willpower, continued.

That the US attempt to isolate and stifle the DPRK internationally was foiled in these days was the fruition of the painstaking efforts Kim Jong Il made for DPRK-China and DPRK-Russia friendship.

3. FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF RELATIONS OF FRIENDSHIP AND COOPERATION WITH SEVERAL COUNTRIES

Kim Jong Il led the efforts to further develop relations of friendship and cooperation with several countries that respect the sovereignty of the DPRK, and strengthen unity and cooperation with the anti-imperialist, independent forces.

Entering the 21st century governments and political parties in several countries witnessed the DPRK, by dint of Songun politics of Kim Jong Il, defending the dignity and sovereignty of the country and nation against the US-led imperialists, and took the road of exchanging delegations with keen interest in improving their relations with the DPRK.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that delegations of various levels of other countries were invited to the DPRK to expand and develop the relations of friendship and cooperation with them.

When Megawati Sukarnoputri, daughter of former Indonesian President Sukarno who had close relationship with President Kim Il Sung, expressed her desire to visit the DPRK after her taking power in 2001, Kim Jong Il had her request accepted. He met her on her visit to the DPRK in March 2002. Recollecting the relationship between the leaders of the preceding generations of the two countries, they discussed the issues on developing friendly relations between the two countries.

Kim Jong Il met the president of Vietnam and the general secretary of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of Vietnam.

In the talks with the Vietnamese president in May 2002 he discussed issues on developing the relations between the two countries, and the Vietnamese guest presented a gift to the DPRK leader. During the Vietnamese president's visit to the DPRK many documents on further developing relations between the two countries were signed.

The DPRK visit by the general secretary of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of Vietnam gave an impetus to developing the relations of friendship between the two countries onto a higher stage. In October 2007 Kim Jong Il met him several times during his stay in the DPRK and developed the traditional relations of friendship and cooperation between the two parties, countries and peoples onto a higher stage.

Kim Jong Il paid close concern to invariably maintaining relations with Cambodia in the new century, too. In July 2004 and May 2006, he met King Norodom Sihanouk who visited the DPRK, and accorded to him hospitality as cordial as in the days when President Kim Il Sung was alive.

He ensured that the 2004 visit to the DPRK by a delegation led by a special envoy of the ruling Thai Rak Thai Party from Thailand set up a

milestone in developing relations between the two countries and two parties. He also saw to it that the repeated visits to the DPRK by the Lao People's Revolutionary Party served as occasions for further developing the comradely relations between the two parties and countries which have long history and tradition.

The foreign minister of New Zealand, the deputy foreign minister of Iran, a delegation of the Australian foreign ministry, presidential foreign policy advisor of Mongolia, deputy foreign minister of Myanmar, a delegation of Australian international development organization and other high-level delegations visited the DPRK in 2007; in 2008 a group from the training school of the party central committee of Syria, a party, government and military delegation of Uganda, a delegation of the General People's Congress of Yemen and other party and government delegations visited the DPRK, expressing their will to improve their relations with the country.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that work with delegations from Europe was conducted efficiently.

From February 21 to 24, 2004, a year when the stand-off between the DPRK and the United States over the former's nuclear issue was aggravated, a delegation of the European Parliament, comprised of deputies from various political parties, visited the DPRK; a member of the Bundestag from the Social Democratic Party of Germany and his party and an Italian delegation of MPs from different political parties visited the DPRK from May 11 to 15 and from September 28 to October 2, 2004, respectively. That year the Troika delegation of the EU, deputy foreign ministers of Britain, Poland and the Czech Republic, a special envoy of the Austrian foreign minister and journalists from renowned media organs in Europe came to Pyongyang.

In May 2007 Kim Jong Il said that delegations of foreign ministries of several European countries were visiting the DPRK these days, stressing that application for visit to the country should be accepted and work with them properly conducted.

In March 2007 several delegations of the EU including its Troika delegation and a special envoy of the Swedish government visited the DPRK, and many EU member nations suggested that they would render

economic and cultural assistance to the country.

An EU-Korea forum was held in March 2007 in Italy with the attendance of delegates from the economic circles in the DPRK and Europe. In October more than 40 EU delegates including those of the EU Commission and European Parliament attended the 3rd Korea-EU economic forum held in Pyongyang. In December the Troika delegation of the EU paid a second visit to the DPRK that year. In this way in 2007 alone, 44 political delegations from EU member states visited the DPRK and discussed problems arising in improving bilateral relations.

Kim Jong Il met individual figures in the economic and social circles from different countries, deepening relations with them and encouraging them to set about conducting economic exchanges with the DPRK.

In September 2002 he met and talked with the C.I.S. Estero group of Italy led by its chairman. The chairman had already visited the DPRK in September 1992 and met Kim Jong Il.

In January 2011 he met the CEO of the Orascom Telecom Media and Technology Holdings SAE of Egypt, encouraging him to promote cooperation and exchange with the DPRK.

Giancarlo Valori, chairman of the Italian General Investment Group and chairman of the Development Bank of the Mediterranean, had visited the DPRK on scores of occasions in the past. He applied to visit the country to mark the 60th anniversary of the founding of the DPRK. Kim Jong Il had his application accepted and took measures for making proper arrangements for receiving him.

The Italian businessman visited the DPRK in September 2008. Presenting a gift he had prepared for Kim Jong Il, he said he would make an active contribution to developing the relations between the DPRK and the European countries and to building a thriving country by the Korean people.

Kim Jong Il had delegations of the Workers' Party of Korea and the DPRK government dispatched to several countries to further develop the relations of friendship and cooperation with them and strengthen unity and cooperation with the anti-imperialist independent forces as required by the developing situation in the new century.

A delegation of the WPK headed by chairman of the Inspection Commission of its Central Committee attended the third international conference of the political parties in Asia held in September 2004 in China. While strengthening relations of friendship with the Communist Party of China, the host nation, the WPK delegation gave the parties attending the conference a correct understanding of the revolutionary cause of Songun through speeches and situation briefings and made positive efforts to develop relations with ruling and other leading political parties in Asia.

The chairman of the Central Council of the House of Iranian Political Parties, the general secretary of the United Malays National Organization of Malaysia, and the chairman of the Indonesian Democratic Party of Struggle met the WPK delegation, and they expressed their respect for Kim Jong Il and confirmed that Songun politics pursued by him is a reasonable mode of politics in the present political situation.

In 2004 WPK delegations attended the eighth seminar of the world political parties on building a new society held in March in Mexico, the 13th international seminar of the world revolutionary parties sponsored by the Workers' Party of Belgium in May in Brussels, an international conference of the communist and workers' parties sponsored by the Communist Party of Greece in October in Athens and other international conferences to launch a positive activity to strengthen the solidarity with the progressive political parties across the world.

In 2008 a WPK delegation participated in the 20th Congress of the Communist Party of India and the 19th Congress of the Communist Party of India (Marxist) and visited Iran. Another delegation of the WPK visited Tunisia, Mexico, Peru, Brazil and Nicaragua, strengthening international solidarity with those countries for the Korean revolution.

Attaching great importance to the 10th International Conference of the Communist and Workers' Parties held in Sao Paulo, Brazil, in November 2008, Kim Jong Il ensured that the DPRK ambassador to Brazil attended the conference in the capacity of the representative of the WPK. The conference adopted *Resolution on Supporting the Korean People in Their Struggle to Defend and Advance the Cause of Socialism* as a separate resolution.

With regard to the visit to foreign countries by a government delegation headed by the president of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly, Kim Jong Il gave instructions on several occasions.

The president of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly paid official visits to Mongolia, Algeria and Ethiopia in July 2007 and Russia, Egypt and Singapore in transit to these countries. In March 2008 he paid official visits to Namibia, Angola, the Democratic Republic of Congo and Uganda. In the meetings and talks held during his visits to those countries, the hosts expressed full support to and sympathy with the principled stand of the DPRK on globalization, human rights issue, non-aligned movement and south-south cooperation. A consensus of views was reached on the issues of developing multi-sided cooperation among developing countries, whose historical situations are similar and which have many things in common, and strengthening solidarity with one another in the international arena. The host countries expressed their will to strengthen cooperation with the DPRK in the economic and military as well as political and diplomatic fields.

A delegation headed by a deputy foreign minister visited Indonesia, Myanmar and other countries in Southeast Asia in April and May, the foreign minister participated in the ministerial conference of the ASEAN Regional Forum held in the Philippines in July, and the premier visited Vietnam, Malaysia, Cambodia and Laos from October to November 2007.

On September 14, 2007, Kim Jong Il told a senior official of the Foreign Ministry: In recent years several countries are proposing establishing diplomatic relationship with our country; our country should establish such relationship with those countries.

Thus, the DPRK established diplomatic relationship with San Marino in 2004, with the United Arab Emirates, Swaziland, Dominica, Guatemala and Montenegro in September 2007, and with Kenya in September 2008. It re-established its diplomatic relations with Myanmar in April 2007.

Thanks to the dynamic diplomatic activities conducted under Kim Jong Il's seasoned leadership, the greatness of Songun politics was demonstrated, and support to the cause of the DPRK was voiced more loudly in the international arena. Many African countries including Namibia, Angola, the Democratic Republic of Congo and Uganda voted

against or abstained when a draft resolution on the human rights situation in the DPRK was discussed at the 63rd Session of the UN General Assembly, despite the moves of the United States and Japan and the imperialists' heinous human rights racket against the DPRK.

4. LEADING THE DPRK-US SHOWDOWN TO VICTORY

Kim Jong Il led the efforts to smash the Bush administration's hard-line policy against the DPRK, thus enhancing the prestige of the country in the international arena.

On January 2, 2003, he said: The United States is attempting to impose international pressure upon our country by instigating our neighbours; if the United States persists in its wicked attempts to trample upon our country's sovereignty and dignity to the slightest degree, we shall take a tougher measure; it is an unshakeable stand of the WPK and the government of the DPRK to counter the US hard-line policy with harder-line policy; we should conduct organizational and political work dynamically to crush enemy moves to isolate and stifle our country, moves which may grow more heinous.

And on January 12, 2003, two days after the announcement of the statement of the DPRK government on withdrawing completely from the NPT, Kim Jong Il stressed: If we continue to take a tough approach against the US moves to isolate and stifle our country, it will have no option other than to kneel down before us; we will surely win in the anti-US showdown to defend the sovereignty and right to survival of our nation.

In August 2003 the six-party talks, involving the DPRK, the United States, China, Russia, Japan and south Korea, started in Beijing.

In the talks the United States, taking an arrogant attitude, resorted to threatening diplomacy, saying that items of the DPRK's concern could be discussed only when it took actions for complete, verifiable and irreversible dismantlement of its nuclear programme and that for the normalization of bilateral relations, other issues including missile, conventional weapons and human rights issues should also be discussed.

In 2004, too, the United States continued to cling to the policy aimed at stifling the DPRK behind the curtain of the six-party talks. These moves became more blatant since early 2005, when the second term of the Bush administration started.

Based on the analysis of the political tendency of the second-term Bush administration Kim Jong Il ensured that the highest level of hard-line measure was adopted to defend the supreme interests of the country.

As a measure to this end, the DPRK Foreign Ministry issued a statement in which it announced that the DPRK possessed nuclear weapons.

After the statement was released, the US and world mass media denounced the Bush administration, saying that its rough military and diplomatic treatment with regard to north Korea throughout its term compelled the latter to build nuclear weapons and scuttled the six-party talks.

The United States could not but come to the negotiating table again.

The fourth round of six-party talks was held from July to September 2005, and the September 19 Joint Statement was made public.

However, just after signing the statement, the Bush administration announced financial sanctions against the DPRK and completely checked its external financial transactions. Entering 2006, it constantly pursued hostile policies, imposing naval blockade and financial sanctions, demanding that the DPRK choose one—future or nuclear weapons.

To cope with the situation, the DPRK conducted successful underground nuclear test on October 9, 2006. The public at large in the United States denounced that the hard-line policy of the Bush administration towards north Korea drove it to conduct the nuclear test, that it may conduct another nuclear test in the future, and that the Bush administration's policy towards north Korea totally failed. In the mid-term election to the US Congress held in November 2006, the Democratic Party occupied the majority of the House and Senate, and it announced that it would make an overall review of the foreign policy of the Bush administration.

The Bush administration proposed holding the US-DPRK talks in Berlin in early January next year.

Berlin talks held in January 2007 were the first bilateral talks after Bush took office. The talks discussed such issues as resolving the problems of the DPRK's funds frozen in the Asia Delta Bank in Macao after the adoption of the September 19 Joint Statement in 2005, terminating application to the DPRK of the Trading with the Enemy Act of the United States, deleting the DPRK from the US list of state sponsors of terrorism, and compensating substitute fuel. In February 2007 as the first-stage measure for action to action, the Joint Statement of the Fifth Round of Six-Party Talks of the Third Stage, or February 13 Agreement, was reached.

As a change of its initial attitude that there would be no direct talks with north Korea, an assistant secretary of State, head of the US side at the six-party talks, visited the country in June and December 2007, and conveyed to the DPRK Foreign Minister US President Bush's personal message to the DPRK leader Kim Jong Il.

Entering 2008, the last year of its term, the Bush administration spread the rumour of the DPRK's "nuclear cooperation with Syria," and tried to force a high degree of inspection of the country, as intense as domiciliary search, on the pretext of international standards. And on the excuse of these, it put off implementing its promise of 2007 to terminate the application of the Trading with the Enemy Act and deleting the country from the list of state sponsors of terrorism.

Already in May 2004 and in January 2007 the United States had spread the rumour of "transaction of uranium," "illegal trafficking in uranium hexafluoride," and "nuclear cooperation" between the DPRK, Pakistan, Libya and Iran, with a view to branding the DPRK as a nuclear criminal, but in vain.

In several talks with the US delegation including those held in Singapore in April 2008, in Beijing in May, in Pyongyang in October, and at the six-party talks in Beijing in July, the DPRK side stressed that as the US intention to disarm and occupy the country as it did in Iraq became clear, it was the DPRK's stand that it would be better for both sides to part from each other and go along their own roads. A spokesman for the DPRK's Foreign Ministry said that if the United States persistently attempted to turn black into white and delay the settlement of the pending issues, it would have a serious impact on the programme of neutralizing the nuclear

facilities which had been so far promoted. And at the same time, the government took substantial measures to this end.

Alarmed, the United States announced the termination of the application of the Trading with the Enemy Act in June 2008, dispatched an assistant secretary of State to the DPRK in early October to confirm the deleting of the country from the list of state sponsors of terrorism, and on October 11 announced through a statement of the State Department that the decision on deleting the country from the list was put into effect.

The world's mass media commented: Bush included the DPRK in the list of "Axis of Evil," only inviting its nuclear test; after it became a nuclear state, he had to delete the country from the list of state sponsors of terrorism; the confrontation policy towards the DPRK, which Bush declared in the first days of his office, failed; he tried to turn the policy into a policy of dialogue but it was too late, so he had to be led by the DPRK; the DPRK grasped the weak point of Bush, who was short of time, and gained its goal by making effective use of the action-to-action principle, a principle that it takes its own action whenever the United States backpedals on its promise, and the corresponding harder line.

The Bush administration delivered 168 900 tons of grain and 200 000 tons of heavy oil to the DPRK by the end of 2008 and led other countries to discharge their obligations for economic compensation, delivery of 500 000 tons of heavy oil and materials for repairing power plants which amounted to USD 340 000 000, before the expiry of its second term.

Kim Jong Il led the efforts to make headway against the situation created after the appearance of the Obama administration.

During his election campaign Obama insisted that negotiation was the only way to settle north Korea's nuclear issue, and that he was willing to meet the north Korean leader without any preconditions if he became the president. In contrast to his words, after he took office in 2009 he openly resorted to undisguised schemes against the DPRK with a view to consolidating his power.

In particular, when the DPRK stepped up preparations in 2009 for launching a test communications satellite through legal procedures, like giving prior notice and acceding to relevant international treaties and

conventions, according to a long-term national plan for space exploration, the United States threatened that it would “intercept” the satellite, claiming that it was a “provocative act” in breach of the relevant resolution of the UN Security Council. Japan also defined intercepting the DPRK’s satellite as its national policy and deployed two guided missile destroyers on the sea.

The General Staff of the Korean People’s Army declared through its spokesman and crucial statement that interception of the satellite would mean a war, and if the satellite was intercepted, the KPA would attack not only the means of interception already deployed but also the major targets, and took substantial measures to this end.

On April 5, 2009, the satellite Kwangmyongsong 2 was successfully launched into orbit.

The United States and its vassal forces had the chairman of the UN Security Council issue a statement denouncing the satellite launch.

As a countermeasure, the DPRK released a statement of a spokesman for the Foreign Ministry, in which it declared that it had no other option than to take additional self-defensive measures, like nuclear test and test-launch of ballistic missile, that it would resume building LWR power plant, and that as the first step towards it, it would launch without any delay into developing technology for producing nuclear fuel on its own effort. In May 2009 it conducted the second nuclear test and fired various kinds of missiles in July.

In August 2009 Obama dispatched former president Bill Clinton as a special envoy of his new administration to convey to the DPRK leader his oral message on his views of the ways for improving bilateral relations. In December 2009 the US special representative for north Korea policy visited Pyongyang; he conveyed Obama’s personal letter and had discussions on a wide range of issues related to the conclusion of a peace treaty, normalization of relations and denuclearization of the Korean peninsula.

The world’s mass media reported that Obama, who had followed the policy of the preceding Bush administration from the first day in office, dispatched his special representative to Pyongyang with his personal letter as his predecessor had done, and it was as good as his acknowledgement of the failure of his policy.

Entering 2010, as he was criticized for being feeble-minded in his foreign policy, Obama returned to hard line, cancelling the planned dialogues and negotiations and clinging to the schemes to pressurize the DPRK.

To cope with the situation, the DPRK took a series of substantial measures: Releasing the plan for building a LWR power plant in March, declaring expansion and modernization of its stockpile of various nuclear weapons in April, successful nuclear fusion reaction in May, and opening to the public the operation of a uranium enrichment factory for LWR in November.

In August 2010 the United States sent former president Carter to discuss the issues on bilateral relations, resumption of six-party talks and denuclearization of the Korean peninsula.

At the request of the US government and Carter, on showing mercy on an American citizen, who had been serving a prison term for entering the territory of the DPRK illegally, and repatriating him, Kim Jong Il issued an order in the name of the Chairman of the DPRK National Defence Commission on releasing him by special pardon.

The United States again picked a quarrel with the DPRK's uranium enrichment activities and missile development, and revealed its intention to bring the country to its knees by force, clamouring about "strategic patience."

On the basis of an analysis of the overall developments after the opening to the public of the uranium enrichment activities, Kim Jong Il tactfully guided the showdown with the United States.

When former US President Carter visited Pyongyang in late April 2011, he sent to Obama through Carter his oral message that the DPRK was ready for holding multiple layers of negotiations and talks with south Korea any time, including a summit meeting, to ease the tension on the Korean peninsula and improve inter-Korean relations. And when a US State Department delegation visited Pyongyang in late May 2011 he had an arrested American citizen released from a humanitarian viewpoint.

The Obama administration abandoned its policy of "strategic patience," and in June 2011 proposed holding DPRK-US high-level talks for the first time since it took office.

The first round of DPRK-US high-level talks was held in New York in July 2011 and second round in Geneva in October. And the US administration took an unprecedented measure of inviting a Taekwon-Do demonstration team and a delegation of the Korean Central News Agency of the DPRK to the United States.

5. CONFRONTING JAPAN'S HOSTILE POLICY WITH A HARDER LINE

As Japan maintained a policy hostile to the DPRK after the end of the Second World War, Japan and the DPRK regarded themselves as being near yet far from each other; these abnormal relations continued until the early 1990s. The inerasable past of the two countries, one a colony and the other suzerain, and such an intricate problem as the right to survival of hundreds of thousands of Koreans resident in Japan were particularly a focal point in the DPRK-Japan relations for decades of years.

Early in the 1990s Japan began to approach the development of atomic energy by the DPRK in relation with its own security and put its suspension as a precondition for improving bilateral relations, only making the problem more complicated. With a view to capitalizing on the US policy towards the DPRK, Japan meddled in the nuclear issue, manoeuvring in the most wicked way. The government-level talks which had started 46 years after the end of the Second World War had to experience difficulties from the beginning, and bilateral relations reached the worst situation after the war.

As even the Western countries, which had kept distance with the DPRK or shown hostility towards it, sought to improve their relations with it entering the new century, an atmosphere to improve relations with the country began to develop in Japan.

In July 2001, in his answers to questions raised by ITAR-Tass, Kim Jong Il said: If Japan takes a sincere attitude towards the question of redressing its past, in line with global trends, and gives up its policy and acts hostile towards our country, the relationship between the DPRK and Japan can be improved.

Japanese Prime Minister Koizumi, who took office in April 2001, expressed on several occasions his intention to visit Pyongyang, and conveyed again his intention through the senior delegate of the Japanese side to the talks between directors of the foreign ministries of the two countries held in late August 2002.

When the news of Koizumi's upcoming visit to Pyongyang was released, Japanese leading mass media unanimously commented that it was the first visit to north Korea in history by a Japanese prime minister. And honorary professor of George Washington University termed Koizumi's visit as "his worship in Pyongyang," and as a great diplomatic success for the north Korean leadership.

On September 14, 2002, in the lead-up to Koizumi's visit, Kim Jong Il answered the questions raised by the president of the Kyodo News Service. Pointing out the significance of the forthcoming summit meeting and talks, he said: **"The basic problem that must be solved to normalize Korea-Japan relations is to clean up the past unpleasant events that have taken place between the two countries."**

On September 17, Kim Jong Il met and had talks with Koizumi.

At the talks Kim Jong Il stressed that Japan must make a sincere apology for all kinds of misfortunes and sufferings it had inflicted upon the Korean nation over the past 100 years, clarifying the principled stand of the WPK and DPRK government on the issue of DPRK-Japan relations.

At the talks Koizumi expressed deep remorse and a heartfelt apology for the tremendous damage and sufferings Japan had inflicted on the Korean people in the past. He promised that after the normalization of diplomatic relations Japan would provide the DPRK with economic cooperation including grant aids, long-term loans at low-interest rates and humanitarian assistance through international organizations, and loans and credits by financial institutions like Japan Bank for International Cooperation with a view to supporting civilian economic activities.

One of the key purposes of Koizumi's visit to Pyongyang was to receive safety guarantee from the DPRK.

At the talks Kim Jong Il said: It seems that Japan is so worried over our measures aimed at strengthening our defence capabilities; our defence policy is thoroughly oriented to self-defence; our armed forces are merciless for those who provoke us, but if they do not, we refrain from the use of force; if Japan is not hostile towards us and takes a friendly approach, it does not need to worry about our strengthening of armed forces.

The Japanese prime minister requested to the DPRK leader to suspend missile launches, saying that the Japanese felt ill at ease because of the missiles. Kim Jong Il replied: Japan is modernizing its own missiles and dispatching troops of the Self-Defence Forces overseas; if Japan adopts a friendly attitude towards the DPRK, we may extend our moratorium on missile launches.

Leaders of the two countries signed the DPRK-Japan Pyongyang Declaration, which fully reflects the issues discussed at the talks.

The declaration clarified that the Japanese side admitted, in a spirit of humility, the facts of history that Japan caused tremendous damage and sufferings to the Korean people through its colonial rule in the past, and expressed deep remorse and heartfelt apology, that both sides decided to make every possible effort to normalize bilateral relations at an early date and resume negotiations for the normalization of relations in October 2002, and that both sides confirmed that they would comply with international law, would not commit acts threatening the security of the other side, and would cooperate with each other in order to maintain and promote peace and stability in Northeast Asia.

The international community expressed support for the summit in Pyongyang, stressing that it was conducive to peace and security in Northeast Asia.

After the announcement of the declaration, Kim Jong Il led the effort to smash the Japanese reactionaries' moves against the DPRK.

After the summit the Japanese right-wing reactionaries and conservative forces, who were not desirous of improved bilateral relations, resorted to schemes against the DPRK, Chongryon and Korean nationals in Japan.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the impudence and immorality of Japan were exposed in the international arena on several occasions, and the DPRK's

stand was clarified that if Japan stuck to the policy of imposing sanctions and pressure on it, it would be regarded as a declaration of war.

From a historical viewpoint, Japan is not qualified to raise its face before the Korean nation.

The same was the case with the missile issue. As was clarified by Kim Jong Il in the DPRK-Japan summit talks, Japan was also developing its missiles. Japan test-fired large-sized carrier rockets and stockpiled plutonium, threatening the DPRK and other neighbouring countries.

Kim Jong Il made sure that brigandish and shameful assertions peculiar to Japan were exposed and denounced through mass media and diplomatic channel.

When Japan dispatched high-ranking officials of its Foreign Ministry and a former vice-president of the Liberal Democratic Party to the DPRK in February, April and May 2004, requesting the prime minister's Pyongyang visit, Kim Jong Il made sure that the hard-line determination of the country was demonstrated.

On May 22, 2004 Kim Jong Il met and had talks with the Japanese prime minister on the latter's visit to Pyongyang.

At the talks Kim Jong Il asked Koizumi to say first, and said: Before you say, I have something to say first; as you are the head of government of Japan, a self-acclaimed big country in Asia, I signed the DPRK-Japan Pyongyang Declaration with you; however, you have not kept the promise with me and pursued a hostile policy towards my country; to normalize the abnormal relations between the DPRK and Japan is the historic mission entrusted to the current politicians; nothing will be impossible to be settled if both sides buckle down to this end from a large viewpoint for the sake of aspirations and interests of the peoples of the two countries; the DPRK government, in the future, too, will make a positive effort to implement the DPRK-Japan Pyongyang Declaration.

When Koizumi insisted that the DPRK's missiles posed a threat to the security of Japan, Kim Jong Il noted: It is a matter concerning our sovereignty to produce, deploy and export missiles; no international treaty stipulates that producing, deploying and exporting missiles should be restricted; you say that our missiles pose a threat to Japan, and the way to

solving the problem is simple; if Japan properly implements the DPRK-Japan Pyongyang Declaration, we will never aim our missiles at Japan.

Expressing his regret over the undesirable events that had happened in bilateral relations so far, Koizumi expressed his will to attach importance to the DPRK-Japan Pyongyang Declaration and normalize bilateral relations by changing the hostile relationship into cooperative one through faithful implementation of the declaration. He reaffirmed that in the future Japan would suspend putting into action the law on sanctions against the DPRK, take a friendly approach towards the Korean nationals in Japan without discriminating against them, and immediately resume humanitarian aid to the DPRK as a step for the rehabilitation of confidence between the two countries.

As for Koizumi's visit to Pyongyang, the Japanese ultraconservative forces denounced him, saying, "Why should the top leader of a country visit a foreign country twice?" and "Isn't this humiliating diplomacy?"

When Shinzo Abe, an ultrarightist, became prime minister in September 2006 and tried to bring pressure to bear upon the DPRK in bilateral relations by intensifying suppression over Chongryon, Kim Jong Il ensured that resolute countermeasures were taken.

A spokesman for the DPRK Foreign Ministry declared that suppressing Chongryon was tantamount to infringing upon the sovereignty of the DPRK. A letter of the DPRK representative to the UN denouncing the suppression of Chongryon committed by the Abe Cabinet was circulated as an official document of the UN. And the DPRK delegations denounced Japan at a meeting of the general committee and plenary session of the UN General Assembly, and at the meetings of the UN Human Rights Council.

Voices denouncing Japan were heard even in the United States.

Forced by pressure at home and abroad, Abe had to resign in September 2007, one year after taking power.

Prior to the launch by the DPRK of its satellite in April 2009, Japan declared it as a "national policy" to intercept it if the DPRK launched it, and deployed guided missile destroyers. The Supreme Headquarters of the KPA and the spokesman for the General Staff of the KPA, through their

statements, warned, with Japan mainly in mind, that interception of the DPRK's satellite would be construed as a declaration of war, and that if an attempt was made to intercept it, not only the means of interception already deployed but other main targets would be subjected to its relentless retaliatory attacks. And the military aircraft of the KPA were scrambled to cope with it.

Panic-stricken, Japan asserted that it would intercept it only when remains of the satellite would drop onto its territory owing to the failure of the launch. Before the satellite launch the national crisis management centre aired a wrong report that the satellite had been launched, and soon the defence minister appeared on TV to disown the report.

The Japanese Chief Cabinet Secretary, when asked by a journalist if he had seen the scene of satellite launch at an interview after the satellite launch, answered, "It was splendid," thus evoking public criticism. With regard to his behaviour foreign mass media reported, "He seemed to have mental disorder," and "He is carried away by the hysteria."

CHAPTER 53

WITH A SINGLE MIND OF PATRIOTISM

1. MOTHERLAND AND THE PEOPLE HE LOVED MOST

WITH AN ENNOBLING VIEW OF THE MOTHERLAND, PEOPLE AND FUTURE GENERATIONS

Kim Jong Il burnt his heart with patriotism to further glorify the socialist motherland bequeathed by President Kim Il Sung, based on an ennobling view of it.

Entering 2003 he ensured that the people celebrated the lunar New Year's Day in a grand way though the prevailing situation was complex owing to the moves of the United States and its vassal forces to stifle the country. On February 3 he met some journalists and writers. When they related how the people enjoyed the lunar New Year's Day, he said:

“Our people have no other place where they can lead a genuine life and enjoy happiness but their motherland, for it is the very embrace of the President and the Party.”

On April 14, 2005, a day before the Day of the Sun, he met again some journalists and writers, and, dwelling on the revolutionary exploits of President Kim Il Sung who liberated the country and glorified it, expressed his determination to add further brilliance to the socialist country of Juche bequeathed by the President.

That day he said: As we are greeting the Day of the Sun, I feel a growing yearning for the President; now our service personnel and other people must be yearning for him; he was a peerless patriot and the benevolent father of the people, who devoted his all for the good of his country and fellow people; as we had the President, our country could demonstrate its dignity

as a socialist power that is independent, self-supporting and self-reliant in defence and our people have come to enjoy a genuine life as the most prestigious and dignified people in the world; the happiness our country and people enjoy today is unthinkable apart from his leadership; whenever I recollect the history of affection and devotion the President made in his whole life for the reunification and independence of the country and the freedom and happiness of the people, I feel a lump in my throat and am moved to tears; it is difficult to find such a peerlessly great man in the world like President Kim Il Sung, who devoted his whole life for the sake of the country and the people, enduring unimaginable mental agony and undergoing hardships as a revolutionary and a human being; his was the life of a peerlessly great man who spent every moment of his life for the sake of the country and the people; the words *peerlessly great man* can be linked only with the august name of the President.

Saying that the people should always remember him and hold him in high esteem down through the generations, and that he would live for ever with them, he continued:

“To remember him means always keeping his ideas and desires deep in our minds and translating them into brilliant reality. What he was desirous of in his lifetime was to build a reunified, thriving country on this land. We should hold the President in high esteem for ever and build a reunified and prospering country on this land as wished by him before the eyes of the world. We should remain unswervingly faithful to the ideas and aspirations of the President, cherishing ennobling moral obligation towards him and ensure that the coming generations, too, carry forward his cause. By holding aloft the banner of the Juche idea and adhering to it to the end, we can ensure that the history of his revolutionary activities continues for all eternity on this land.”

All the thinking and activities of Kim Jong Il, which were run through with patriotic devotion, were based on an ennobling view of the people that believes in the people as in heaven.

On October 28, 2003, while instructing officials to become true servants of the people, he expounded the idea of “The people are my God.”

To serve the people faithfully, we should arm ourselves firmly with the idea of “The people are my God.” The Juche idea authored and brilliantly embodied by the President is immediately the idea of “The people are my God.” The President who regarded this idea as his lifetime motto and devoted his whole to the struggle for the freedom and happiness of the people, lives for ever in the people’s hearts as their fatherly leader for the outstanding exploits he achieved in accomplishing the cause of independence of the masses.

He continued:

“The maxim ‘The people are my God’ was the creed of the President’s life, and it is also my life’s creed and political philosophy. The slogan ‘We serve the people!’ put forward by the Party, along with the benevolent politics, the politics of love for the people, followed by the Party, embodies this idea.”

He went on: The politics that takes care of the destiny of the masses on its responsibility, politics that brings flower into full bloom even on a rock if it were a wish of the people and spares nothing if it were for their sake—that is our Party’s benevolent politics; true to the intentions of President Kim Il Sung I believe in the people as in heaven and devote my all for the good of the people; I always mingle with the service personnel and people, looking after their life with love and benevolence; my happiness and pleasure lie in the happiness and pleasure the people are enjoying.

On May 1, 2002, he inspected a KPA unit and saw the artistic performance of officers’ wives of the unit. Out of their trust and respect for Kim Jong Il, who was making tireless efforts for the prosperity of the country, the officers’ wives staged several numbers on the stage.

After the performance was over, he went outside, but he was so moved by the performance that he remained silent for a good while. Then he said: Seeing the performance today, I once again felt the pure hearts of the officers’ wives who believe in only our Party and follow it even in trials and difficulties; I am firmly determined to do more work for such an excellent people.

He continued:

“As I often say whenever I have an opportunity, we are blessed with

the people. Ours are indeed an excellent people, the like of whom cannot be found elsewhere in the world. As we have such people, our Party is strong and our revolution is winning victory after victory. We should value crystal-clear and pure hearts of our people and take care of their destiny to the end.”

On August 17, he talked to officials: When I entered the May Day Stadium to see the mass gymnastics and artistic performance *Arirang*, all the performers and spectators enthusiastically welcomed me, shouting slogans; looking at them, I realized once again that ours are an excellent people; at the mass rally held to mark the 55th founding anniversary of the WPK, the hundreds of thousands of the masses, looking at the platform, were raising cheers with emotion; we really have an excellent people.

Noting that in the period of the Arduous March the people absolutely supported the Party and remained faithful to it and that even though they went hungry they believed only in the Party, followed it and shared life and death with it, he said:

“Whenever I feel exhausted, I harden up my determination to do more work for the people who absolutely believe in and follow the Party. All officials should serve with devotion the people who are boundlessly faithful to the Party.”

Kim Jong Il raised it as the supreme principle of Party and state activities to defend the interests of the people and promote their well-being and led officials to perform their duties as faithful servants of the people.

A typical example of how he valued the people’s interests is the measure he took for building houses for the people living in the district to be submerged, in parallel with the construction of a dam there.

On the early morning of March 3, 2006, he visited the Samsu Power Station under construction. He gave detailed instructions in relation to the construction. While taking a view of the construction site, he pointed his finger at a place, where there were houses, before asking officials if that place would also be submerged.

An official answered yes.

Kim Jong Il asked how many households would be evacuated in all.

A senior official of the provincial Party committee replied that the total

number of households to be evacuated was over 4 900, and only 1 500 households had already moved to the houses in the nearby villages so that they could share houses with the original owners.

Silence reigned for a while. Kim Jong Il cast his eyes on that place and then said: Evacuating the people living in the district to be submerged is important; today I came here not only to inquire first-hand about how much progress has been made in the dam construction but also to acquaint myself with the construction of houses; the people should be evacuated not in that way.

Then he continued:

“Houses should be built first, so that evacuees can live there; these houses should be built better than their old homes.

...

“The foundation of socialism is the people. Only when we rely on them and enjoy their support, can we defend socialism. In this sense we should never belittle the construction of houses for evacuees.”

He added: You say that the number to be evacuated amounts to over 4 900 households; if we consider that each household is comprised of three persons, the number of evacuees will be great; the two fronts—construction of the power station and construction of the houses—should be pushed ahead in parallel; construction of the houses should be dynamically pushed ahead as a concern of the Party; the Party Central Committee should guide construction of the houses for evacuees; it should hold a joint conference with the provincial Party committee and take a clear measure to this end.

His ardent love for the country and people was reflected in his ennobling view of the coming generations. The slogan **“Let us live not merely for today but for tomorrow!”** is a concentrated expression of his view.

When he saw a poorly-wooded mountain on a field guidance trip, he would be upset and comment that the country had been called a 3 000-*ri* land of golden tapestry since time immemorial, adding that they should turn it into a land of golden tapestry in the era of the Workers’ Party, and hand it down to the coming generations. When he learned that a new treasure of the country was created, he would be very pleased, seeing it in relation with the happiness the coming generations would enjoy.

On August 11, 2004, he met senior officials of the Party, state and

economic organs and analyzed the successes achieved in capital construction. Noting that the successes achieved in the last decade constituted eternal treasure for the prosperity of the country and happiness of the people and priceless asset in developing the country's economy, he said:

“The efforts we have made in the face of hardships, tightening our belts, are being rewarded. The coming generations will say with pride that the structures we have built are the creations of the era of the Workers’ Party.”

Saying that a great number of monumental structures should be built in the era of the Workers’ Party to hand them down to the coming generations, and that they should all be appraised by them as excellent ones, he had world-class creations built in a large number.

While inspecting the construction site of the Huichon Power Station on November 3, 2010, Kim Jong Il saw the slogan “Let us take responsibility for the safety of the project and guarantee its quality for all eternity!”

Speaking highly of the patriotic mind of the soldier builders who were striving to erect a great creation which would be flawless in distant future by embodying the Party's ennobling view of the coming generations, he said: This slogan pulsates with the ennobling view of the coming generations cherished by the soldiers in the Songun era, who are ready to become roots in the struggle for the future of the country; it is regrettable that when the power station is commissioned, the coming generations cannot see how the soldier builders shed their sweat and even blood to build it; but the country and people will remember for ever the exploits of the soldiers who worked with devotion for the prosperity of the country.

CHERISHING THE COUNTRY AND THE PEOPLE IN HIS HEART

Yearning for the country and people was rooted deep in the heart of Kim Jong Il.

On his return from Russia in August 2001, he first met the service personnel and workers in Ranam, sharing with them the longing of each other over the past 20 days.

On August 23, recounting his visit to Russia in front of commanding officers of the KPA and senior officials in several sectors, he said:

“My country and fellow people were always in my mind while I was in Russia. As I was in the foreign country for long, I wanted to see the country and the people. I could not forget my beloved motherland and people. Everything in the motherland was in my mind. I also missed Taehongdan. When I said to the accompanying officials that I eagerly yearned for the country and people, many of them shed tears.”

Hearing that all the people were endeavouring to bring joy to me, waiting for the day of my return, I saw them on TV, he said, and continued: Just as the people back home missed me, so I missed my people and my soldiers.

A scene of the harmonious whole between the leader and people was unfolded in a mine in the northern tip of the country.

In late January 2008 Kim Jong Il visited the March 5 Youth Mine. When they had heard that he was visiting Jagang Province, officials and employees of the mine had been spending days with the thought that they could not see him as their mine was situated in an out-of-the-way area.

When he alighted from his car, officials of the mine were so moved that they failed to extend greetings of thanks.

Kim Jong Il said: I came here to see officials and workers of the mine who have done a great deal of work. I felt sorry for having not met you when I was in Jagang Province some days ago, so I came here again.

In this way, he had re-crossed many stiff ridges in the biting cold of minus 29 degrees centigrade covering thousands of kilometres.

He posed for a photo with the officials, and looked round the production sites for a long while, repeatedly speaking highly of the workers of the mine for their heroic feats. Before taking leave of them, he shook hands with each of the officials. And when his car began to move, he opened a window and waved back to them for a long time.

He continued the road full of love and devotion, cherishing firm trust in the country and people and noble mission for them.

On February 17, 2007, when officials of the Party Central Committee extended greetings of congratulations on the occasion of his birthday, Kim Jong Il said to them: In the lead-up to my birth anniversary, I received

many congratulatory messages and letters from service personnel and people, in which they expressed their best wishes for me and firm determination to align their fate with the Party and faithfully support its leadership; as I received warm congratulations from the service personnel and people on the occasion of my birthday, I felt the greater responsibility I have assumed, and found the pride in and worth of carrying on the revolution with such excellent service personnel and people; there are no service personnel and people in the world who are better than ours; I feel assured as I think that I am waging the revolution with such excellent service personnel and people; the service personnel and people say they are blessed with the leader and the General, and I am blessed with the service personnel and people; whenever I meet the service personnel and people on my field guidance tour, they earnestly request me to pay close concern to my health, taking meals and sleep in time and taking enough rest; I fully understand their best wishes for their leader; however, I am a soldier of the President and a son of the people before being the leader of a country; as such, I have a lot of work to do; our country is yet to assume all the aspects of a thriving socialist country where national strength is great, everything prospers and the people live with nothing to envy in the world, and we are yet to achieve national reunification, the cherished wish of the nation; how can I have a sound sleep and take enough rest when I am shouldering the destiny of the country, nation and people?

Continuing that he could not take rest even a moment before he built the country into a thriving one which is the best in the world and made the people enjoy the happiest and most affluent life to their heart's content in a reunified country, he said;

“I regard it as the greatest happiness and glory to devote my whole life for the sake of the country, revolution and people. There may be many obstacles on the road ahead, but I will unswervingly continue the long journey of Songun as I do now for the country, revolution and people.”

Whenever he posed for photographs, he would think of the pleasure he would bring to the people.

On the early morning of March 3, 2011, he visited the Pyongyang

Vegetable Science Institute. He spoke highly of the researchers at the institute for having achieved excellent successes for providing the people with fresh vegetables in all seasons, and told them to have a photo taken with him on this happy day.

He had all the other employees as well as the scientists brought, and proposed posing with the produce placed in front of them, so that the people could feel happy when they saw the produce.

Even when he was on a visit to a foreign country, he only thought about how to make the country more prosperous and the people happier.

On his return from a visit to Russia in the first year of the new century, he told the officials:

“I looked round several cities in Russia, including Moscow and St Petersburg, and inspected many factories and enterprises and units in several other sectors such as commercial outlets and scientific, educational and cultural institutes. In the course of it I did not slight anything, and thought much about how to make our people better-off and our country more prosperous.”

When he was visiting China in May 2011, he dedicated his thoughts to the well-being of his country and fellow people.

After winding up his visit to the northeast region of China, he went to Yangzhou, Jiangsu Province, in East China.

An old port city situated on the coast of a large canal which links the Yangtze River with the northern and southern regions, Yangzhou has been one of the major tourist attractions in China for its beautiful scenery. It is also a city advanced in the sectors of light industry, chemical industry, machine building and electronic engineering.

Leading officials of China who were accompanying him and his entourage requested Kim Jong Il to take a rest enjoying the beautiful scenery of the city.

But he visited the Zhigu Exhibition Centre in the Yangzhou Smart Valley, Jingao Solar Technology Co Ltd, NC Equipment Company of Yangli Group and others, acquainting himself with their technological development and operation.

In particular, he devoted much time to inquiring about the varieties and

quality of fruits, vegetables and cooking oil, as well as the mode of business management when he was visiting the Huarun Shuguo Supermarket. That day, while going to other counters after looking round the foodstuff counter, he suddenly stopped walking and walked back.

To the curious officials, he said he had not seen cooking oil in the previous counter. And he went back to that counter and saw various kinds of cooking oil displayed on the counter, asking what kind of oil citizens liked better and how many kinds of oil were on sale.

Mayor of Yangzhou, who was guiding Kim Jong Il, said with admiration that Kim Jong Il's love for the people was really warm, adding that the DPRK leader was so much concerned about the people's livelihood that he went back to the foodstuff counter to inquire in detail about cooking oil.

2. LONG JOURNEY OF PATRIOTIC DEVOTION

FOLLOWING THE ROAD OF SONGUN WITHOUT INTERRUPTION

Kim Jong Il used to say that anxiety for one's country does not mean patriotism and patriotism in word alone is meaningless, and that if one is prepared to be patriotic, one should perform patriotic deeds out of a true spirit of patriotism, and devoted his all for the sake of his country and fellow people.

In September 2002, telling officials that the present was the era of Songun and the supreme task of a citizen in this era was to defend the country, he said:

“For our people, the country is more precious than their lives. Without the country, there can be neither the sovereignty and dignity of the nation nor the happiness of today and tomorrow. National defence is the supreme expression of being faithful to civic duty.”

He went on: Nothing is more important and honourable for our people than to defend at the cost of their lives their country which guarantees them

a worthwhile life and adds lustre to it and nothing is more precious than a life devoted to national defence; to value the destiny of the country more than one's own life and devote oneself to defending the Juche-oriented socialist country should be the noblest requirement of the life of a citizen of the DPRK.

The long journey of Songun Kim Jong Il covered was filled with his patriotic devotion to defend his country.

On July 26, 2012, looking back upon the long journey of Kim Jong Il's patriotic devotion, Kim Jong Un said:

“One year, looking back with deep emotion on the days of the trying ordeals, he referred to the parka he was wearing. He said that he wore it at the onset of the Arduous March after President Kim Il Sung had passed away, and that he kept wearing it because he could not forget those trials. He earnestly explained that the parka was a symbol of the Songun-based revolution.”

One January day in 2005 Kim Jong Il said: I used to work until dawn and have a catnap before starting work again in the period when the foundations for carrying forward the Juche cause were being laid down; this has become a habit of mine, so I am still working hard and travelling the long journey of Songun ceaselessly, shouldering the responsibility for all Party and state affairs, big and small.

He continued:

“I feel exhausted more often than not on the journey of Songun which I follow without rest, but I cannot cease the journey even a moment because I must safeguard socialism and defend the destiny of the country and nation.”

He went on: Anxious about my health, the people earnestly request me to have a rest at ease even a single day; but, I cannot take a rest though I want to do so as I think that if I take a rest for a while the advance of the country would be delayed that much; for now my car is my dining-room-cum-bedroom; this might have given birth to the anecdotes about rice ball and catnap; however, I have never regarded them as sufferings; I only think that I must make redoubled efforts to prove myself worthy of the expectation of the people who are concerned about my health and are braving the difficulties and trials, cheerfully following the Party.

After his visit to Russia in the summer of the first year of the new century, he inspected a unit of the KPA and then proceeded to another unit defending an outpost on the frontline.

The commanding officer of the unit reported to the Supreme Commander that his unit had kept itself neat and tidy and defended the defence line of the country reliably, wishing for his safety during the visit. Kim Jong Il thanked him, and said that he also missed his soldiers when he was far away from the country. He then continued: When the train was nearing Khabarovsk after passing Novosibirsk, I almost shed tears with a yearning for my soldiers; so I inspected a KPA unit straight after my arrival in the country and today I am here at this post.

One April day in 2005 Kim Jong Il inspected a KPA unit in the forefront of the eastern sector of the front, and met soldiers of the sub-unit directly under it. He asked them if they were all healthy, if they were not feeling difficult in standing security guard, if they felt any inconvenience in their life and if they received news from their families regularly. Then, he listened to the soldiers who proudly told him about various aspects of their military service, and told them to be faithful to their military service so as to become excellent soldiers.

While inspecting the frontline units of the KPA in the central part of the front in early August that year, he met twin soldiers who hailed from Pyongyang.

When he had met a writer some years ago, he had learnt that the writer had twin sons, and told him to have his sons join the army when they became grown-ups, and promised that when they joined the army he would meet them on his frontline-guidance trip. Later when the twins had written a letter of pledge to him on joining the army, Kim Jong Il gave a reply, blessing them. He had always remembered the promise.

That day he acquainted himself with their military service as well as their hopes, and highly praised them for spending the days of military service on the front line far from Pyongyang.

On August 14, 2005, a day before the 60th anniversary of Korea's liberation, Kim Jong Il said that he felt happiest when he met soldiers on the front line, that he met soldiers while inspecting the People's Army units though the weather was sultry in the hottest period of this summer, and that

he had never been particular about the weather and time when he, as the Supreme Commander, was going on a trip to see his soldiers.

Later Kim Jong Un, while talking about the painstaking efforts and devotion Kim Jong Il had made to defend the socialist country, said: Whenever we reflect on the road of Songun-based leadership the General followed shouldering the responsibility for the destiny of his country and nation, we realize how priceless and ennobling was the patriotism he possessed in defending our country, our motherland.

Thanks to the uninterrupted Songun-based leadership of Kim Jong Il, the Korean style of socialism could be defended reliably.

In a talk with senior officials of the Party, state and army on the occasion of the 60th anniversary of the founding of the WPK in October 2005, Kim Jong Il said: The WPK paved the road for the era and revolution under the banner of the Juche idea and has waged a dynamic struggle to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche, building on this land a powerful socialist country centred on the masses, ushering in a prospering era of the Workers' Party and making a great contribution to accomplishing the cause of independence of humankind; in particular, over the past decade, a period of severe trials for the Korean revolution, our Party has strengthened the single-hearted unity of the revolutionary ranks in every way and built up military deterrent firmly under the banner of Songun to cope with the prevailing situation in our country, thereby defending the sovereignty of the country, the dignity of the nation and our style of socialism and laying down valuable material foundations for the building of a thriving country; that it has brought about epochal change unprecedented in the history of the nation spanning thousands of years and laid down solid foundations for the prosperity of Kim Il Sung's country and the happiness for posterity over the past decade is the greatest of the great achievements our Party has made for the era and revolution, for the country and people.

FOR THE PROSPERITY OF THE COUNTRY

When he was asked by a foreign news agency how he would spend his leisure time, Kim Jong Il replied:

“Frankly speaking, I have a lot of work to do. Shouldering the lifetime mission of the great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung, we must build a thriving socialist country on our land and achieve national reunification as soon as possible. That reality does not allow me to waste time before we have built a thriving country and achieved national reunification.”

On October 28, 2003, saying that it would be difficult to find people in the world like the Koreans who were faithful to their Party and the leader and had a strong sense of obligation, he continued:

“Waking and sleeping, I think about how to make our people’s life richer. I intend to work wholeheartedly to ensure that our people lead, as soon as possible, a life in which they envy no one and take pride in themselves. This is our Party’s unshakeable will.”

On August 21, 2009 he said: As we followed the road of the Songun revolution braving unbearable trials and difficulties, we could conclude the Arduous March and forced march triumphantly and open up the road of march towards paradise; a saying goes that no pains, no gains; our people overcame the Arduous March and forced march and have started enjoying a happy life, recounting in this Songun era the tearful bygone days as they do an old tale; whenever I see the ever-growing people’s happiness, I harden the determination to do more work; it is the objective and pride of my life to work with devotion for the building of a prosperous country and the people’s happiness.

On February 11, 2009, he told senior officials of the Party Central Committee in the following vein: Our officials should become the roots that support the country and revolution; if a tree is to grow healthily, its roots should be strong; only then can it grow into a giant tree; if its roots get rotten, even a giant tree will die; that a giant tree stands with thick branches and luxuriant foliage is because its healthy roots continuously provide nutritious elements to it; the giant tree can be seen but its roots are not; people usually express their admiration over the giant old tree, but not many of them think about the roots that support the tree; the roots work diligently in the ground even though they are appreciated or not; the relationship between a revolutionary and the revolution can be likened to that between

the roots and a tree; if the revolution can be likened to a tree, a revolutionary can be likened to its roots; from the viewpoint of our revolution, the main thing of which is the single-hearted unity of the leader, Party and masses, you and I should become its roots; revolutionaries should be ready to become roots; when the roots that have struck themselves deep in the ground absorb nutritious elements well, the tree can grow healthily; likewise, if revolutionaries are prepared well and their ranks are united single-heartedly, the revolution can emerge victorious and the country be prosperous; you should not become leaves, but roots.

Noting that if revolutionaries are to play their role properly as roots, they should work well at their posts, he said:

“I am going to become stout roots of our revolution together with you.”

Officials expressed their determination to become the roots supporting the country and carry out their duties responsibly.

Glancing at them, he appreciated their determination, encouraging them to work hard with one mind and purpose.

To realize his plan for building a thriving country, Kim Jong Il continued his field guidance trip. The trip filled with patriotic devotion was super-intensive forced march.

Within no less than ten days since his inspection of the Seoul Ryu Kyong Su Guards 105th Tank Division of the KPA in early January 2009, he visited Wonsan, Taeon, Kiyang, light-industry factories in Pyongyang, a sub-unit of a KPA unit and the Ryongaksan Recreation Ground. In early February on his way for field guidance at South Hamgyong Province, he inspected a sub-unit of a KPA unit and looked round the newly-built Unit 1 of the Ryesonggang Youth Power Station.

In South Hamgyong Province he visited the Tongbong Cooperative Farm in Hamju County, February 8 Vinalon Complex, Ryongsong Machine Complex and headquarters of a KPA unit in a few days. While inquiring about the progress of the project of new-style gasification in the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex, he learned that the knotty problem in the project was a large-size oxygen plant.

He consulted the officials about the ways for the project and solved

knotty problems. He then told officials accompanying him that he had to go to Ragwon once again even though it might be tiring.

Officials asked him not to overwork himself, but to take a rest.

He told them that to solve the food problem for the people by turning out fertilizer in large amounts, he should go to the Ragwon Machine Complex and motivate the workers there to ensure that they manufacture the oxygen plant as quickly as possible.

He covered hundreds of kilometres from east to west and arrived at the complex. At the production site of the oxygen plant of the complex, he consulted with the officials of the complex and the plant about the issue and specified the tasks and ways for manufacturing the oxygen plant without delay. He told the technicians, workers and officials of the complex: Whether or not the fertilizer production line at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex is put on a modern footing depends on whether or not you manufacture the oxygen plant and send it to the fertilizer complex in time; only when the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex is modernized can the problem of fertilizer be solved, and only when the fertilizer problem is solved can the food problem be solved; as this complex produces even hydraulic excavators without difficulty, it will not be so difficult for it to produce an oxygen plant.

Hearing the pledge of a senior official of the complex that his enterprise would prove itself worthy of his trust, Kim Jong Il said that he believed that the workers of Ragwon would carry out the task without fail, and that as they pledged to implement the task he gave that day, he would not worry about it any longer.

That day he left Ragwon, and continued his on-site guidance trip in Wonsan, the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex, Ranam and Musan.

His field guidance trip continued even in the coldest days of winter and in the hottest period of summer.

As his first field guidance in 2010, he visited the construction site of the Huichon Power Station in January when the mercury was registering 30 degrees centigrade below zero, and encouraged the soldier builders. In the midsummer of that year he visited machine factories in Jagang Province and light-industry factories and enterprises in Kanggye one after another.

By dint of patriotic devotion, he improved the appearance of the country and provided an eternal cornerstone for the building of a thriving nation.

While giving field guidance at the then Wonsan University of Agriculture on April 26, 2009, he expressed his satisfaction over the fact that the university was exemplary in afforestation. On learning that branches of a tree standing at the entrance of the road to the greenhouse had been cut for easy traffic on the road, he looked at the tree over and over again, hardly moving from it, and said: It is a great pity that you cut the branches; if cars cannot move on because of the branches, people should get off and walk.

Paying close attention to building up the modern Central Tree Nursery under the Ministry of Land and Environment Protection, he visited it in October 2009 and in October 2011. On learning that the nursery had solved many scientific and technological problems arising in introducing scientific, industrial and intensive methods in growing saplings, he said that he could see the future of the country, which would be covered with thick forests.

Thanks to his patriotic devotion, the natural environment of the country assumed a fresh appearance: The waterfalls and ponds in the area of the hitherto-unknown Ullim Falls, Mts Chilbo, Kuwol and Ryongak, the hitherto-unknown underground caverns and other famous mountains and scenic spots were laid out into world-class resorts for the people, and mountaineering paths were built on Mt Myohyang; hundreds of thousands of hectares of crop land were rezoned, and the Kwangmyongsong Salt Works was built in an eastern coastal area, where it had been said that salt could never be produced, followed by the construction of the Wonsan Salt Works and Odaejin Youth Salt Works on the east coast; gravitational waterways were built from Kaechon to Lake Thaesong, from Paengma to Cholsan and on Miru Plain; bases for the people's cultural and emotional life like Majon Hotel and Kalma Theatre, numerous beautiful socialist villages, the amusement park in Kaeson Youth Park and Pothongmun Street Fish and Meat Shop were built.

Kim Jong Il made painstaking efforts to consolidate the independent economic foundations of the country. The efforts he made to this end found a concentrated expression in the introduction of CNC technology that had

brought about an industrial revolution of the Korean style in the new century.

It was during the days of the Arduous March that he matured his plan for introducing this technology and began to put it into reality. He was concerned much with the people, who were suffering difficulties for lack of grain, but he decided to allocate the precious funds of the country for the introduction of the technology for the sake of the country's future prosperity. In those days he reminded himself of the image of President Kim Il Sung, who, in the days of postwar reconstruction when factionalists had claimed that machines could not turn out rice, had said that machines would turn out rice, cloth and various other things.

The decision he made shedding tears of blood to spend the precious funds, which were virtually everything in the country's coffers, on introducing CNC technology was a courageous action and best choice born of his patriotic will to raise the international profile of his country further by fostering its might, not by importing others' showy machines.

CNC technology was a virgin territory, and introducing it demanded much effort. Pioneering the field of the technology, including developing Korean-style operating system, was difficult; what was more difficult was to enlighten officials, who had not been informed of the word *CNC* until then.

While teaching these officials patiently, Kim Jong Il started introducing the technology into factories and enterprises; when they carried out tasks for a certain stage, he would give them tasks for a higher stage. In this way, the country could rank in the advanced countries in machine-building industry in a matter of ten years.

Whenever he heard the song *Break through the Cutting Edge*, he would shed tears as he recollected the arduous road he had travelled and the mental agony he had overcome while introducing CNC technology.

CHAPTER 54

HIS LAST YEAR OF GREAT DEVOTION

1. AT THE OUTSET OF THE YEAR 2011

Greeting the year 2011, Kim Jong Il gave instructions to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee over the tasks facing the Party in the new year.

He stressed the need to concentrate efforts on light industry, which was set as the major thrust area in the year's general offensive for building a thriving nation, so as to effect a radical turn in improving the people's living standards, calling it a year of decisive importance in this regard.

He said that the previous year he inspected over 60 units including light-industry factories in the capital city and provinces and other relevant industrial establishments and service centres related to the improvement of the people's living standards. He noted that in the course of this he had a good understanding of the overall situation in the sector of light industry and found ways for improving the people's livelihood.

He resumed:

“Raising it as the top priority and ultimate objective to improve the people's standard of living and making persistent efforts to achieve this objective is my firm stand and determination.

“This year the sector of light industry should radically boost the output of consumer goods and improve their quality, thereby making this year one in which light industry thrives and our people benefit from it.”

He continued to advance tasks and methods to this end—increasing the production capacity of light-industry factories, maintaining regular production on a high level and making sustained efforts to put the production of consumer goods on a modern and scientific footing.

Stressing that officials in this sector should enhance their sense of responsibility and role, he said that they should orient all undertakings, which they were planning for the year, to implementing the Party's grand strategy for improving the people's livelihood and they should make more efforts than their counterparts in other sectors. He emphasized that they should not merely support Party policy but carry it through, thus proving through their example what kind of people are the true revolutionaries who support the Party.

At the outset of the new year, as he had done over the past decades, he was on the road for his people.

On January 12, as the first leg of his inspection trip for the year, he visited the Nampho Glassware Branch Factory under the Taeon Friendship Glass Factory.

The Taeon Friendship Glass Factory was well known around the country but few people knew about its branch factory, with the exception of the residents in the region. The management and employees of the branch factory had not thought that they could play an important role in building a powerful country. Furthermore, they never expected that Kim Jong Il would visit their factory as the first leg of his inspection trip for the new year.

This branch factory was built according to the instructions President Kim Il Sung had given on July 16, 1971 and it specialized in the production of glass bottles with the raw materials abundant in the country. Kim Jong Il was well acquainted with the situation in the factory.

During his visit to the newly-built Taedonggang Beer Factory in mid-June 2002, he had said to the officials: The production of bottled beer should be increased; bottled beer should be turned out in large quantities to supply them evenly to households; now beer is supplied in barrels, so the people drink it only at the pubs, and this is not enough; bottled beer should be supplied to households, so that the people can drink it anytime. He emphasized that to boost the production of beverages it was very important to increase the output of glass bottles.

When he visited the newly-built Taeon Friendship Glass Factory he was satisfied that it was mass-producing plate glass. Noting that the problem of plate glass was solved with the inauguration of the factory he stressed the need to set up a line for the production of glass bottles.

This was how the glass bottle production line was set up in the Nampho Glassware Branch Factory.

That day Kim Jong Il was briefed on the history of the factory and then looked round the production lines.

After that, he was guided to the indoor loading bay where various sizes of bottles were piled up. He said that he was pleased to see the piles of glass bottles, expressing satisfaction over the fact that the factory was mass-producing glass bottles.

He continued: Glass bottles are in urgent demand in both foodstuff industry and chemical industry and they are widely used in the people's everyday life; the factory should play the leading role in satisfying the country's growing demand for glass bottles; to improve the quality of glass bottles and boost their production, it should put the equipment on a highly modern and scientific footing, introduce advanced technology, pay close concern to the technical management and maintenance of equipment, and steadily improve the workers' and technicians' level of technical knowledge and skills.

Listening to the pledge made by the officials in Nampho and at the factory, he praised them for hardening their resolve to bear in mind the significance of his inspection trip and work harder true to the Party's intention.

On January 20 he paid a visit to the Ryongaksan Spring Water Factory. Ryongaksan spring water contains an assortment of minerals and ions, so it is well known as being efficacious for medical treatment and longevity. This factory was inaugurated in May 2007. Recalling the day of its inauguration four years back, Kim Jong Il said that as several units had been exporting precious spring water to earn a small amount of forex, he made sure that its export was prohibited and it was supplied to Pyongyang citizens.

He studied a table comparing the ingredients of Ryongaksan spring water with those of several world-famous brands. He said with a broad smile that selenium and fluorine good for human health were not contained in world-famous spring water but Ryongaksan spring water had a fair content of these elements.

After looking round the assembly line, he had a taste of spring water and commented: It has a good taste. I examined the analysis data of the Ryongaksan spring water to find that its raw water is similar to the Komsan spring water and the processed water to the Sindok mineral water. But I think the Komsan spring water had a better taste. It is necessary to compare it with the mineral water in Yangdok County.

He continued that little was known of the Ryongaksan spring water as the factory did not mass-produce it because of the shortage of containers and as it was supplying the water to Mangyongdae District and a few other districts, adding that if it was supplied in plenty to Pyongyang citizens it would be widely known. Then he took steps to resolve the problem of containers.

That day he emphasized that the management and employees of the factory should cherish the spirit of devotion to the people and increase the production of spring water in a systematic way to provide Pyongyang citizens with larger amounts of quality water and serve the people more faithfully.

As part of his endeavour to improve the people's diet, he visited the foodstuff factories in Sariwon on January 21.

Early in the morning he arrived at the Jongbangsan General Foodstuff Factory.

To the officials who thanked him for visiting the factory despite the biting cold, Kim Jong Il said that he appreciated their concern about his health and the factory was associated with President Kim Il Sung's leadership exploits. And he recollected the President's achievements with deep emotion.

He spoke highly of them, saying that when the Party advanced in 2009 the task of building general foodstuff-processing bases such as the Samilpho Specialties Factory, the officials and other working people in the province made concerted efforts to upgrade the factory into a general foodstuff-processing base in a matter of seven months. He stressed that with the inauguration of the Jongbangsan General Foodstuff Factory, the Party's intention was translated into reality. When looking round the exhibition room and the shop-floor, he spoke highly of them for having provided the local

people with a variety of quality foodstuffs. Then he set out the task of putting production on a normal footing and improving the quality of products.

Upon learning that the sweets-packaging machine was not working properly, he promptly identified the cause. He explained that if the shop-floor temperature was low, the machines would not be operating properly and necessary measures should be adopted to raise the temperature.

A senior official of the province suggested that the temperature might go up if the shop-floor was partitioned. Kim Jong Il asserted that it was not the way to maintain normal temperature and the factory should keep the temperature of the shop-floor by using geothermal energy as a certain factory did, advising that the officials and technicians concerned should go and see that factory.

He underlined the need to supply the people with various kinds of foodstuffs on a regular basis and to improve their quality at the same time as normalizing production. He added that it was the Party's intention and determination to provide the people with the best things.

That day he also visited the Sariwon Condiments Factory.

Upon alighting from his car, he was greeted by some officials.

He said to them: The senior officials of the province, the city and the factory are greeting me outside the factory and this is wrong. As I said before, officials do not need to receive me outside on cold days. They should greet me inside the buildings.

He made the rounds of the soy sauce shop, computer control room, bean paste shop and oil shop, acquainting himself with the modernization project and the production capacity of the factory. At the room dedicated to the history of the factory, he saw over 40 kinds of goods on display, all of which were produced by relying on locally-available raw and other materials.

Looking at the varieties of soy sauce and bean paste for a while, he inquired about the amino-acid soy sauce. He then emphasized that the factory should perfect the amino-acid soy sauce production line and improve product quality to supply it to the soldiers and residents in Sariwon.

That day, after looking round the factory, he specified tasks such as normalizing production, increasing the variety of goods and improving their

quality, providing raw materials in time, and replenishing and upgrading production equipment, and clarified ways to this end.

He also visited the Sariwon Jongbang Foodstuff Production Cooperative, which had been well known for its pickles.

After doing the rounds of the vegetable-processing equipment and lines, he moved to the entrance hall in which various products were on display. He was pleased to see pickled green pepper and pickled parsley among them. He told officials that they should turn out all products on the basis of a scientific and technological calculation and improve their quality, so as to make them exclusive products in their own province.

He stopped at a workbench where some workers were making pickled vegetables. There he picked up a packet of *jongbangchae*, which had been named after the cooperative by the President during his visit on May 4, 1971.

He commented that its plastic packaging looked good, before asking where the product was supplied. An official replied that the product was supplied to the residents in Sariwon, travellers and war veterans. Kim Jong Il asked again whether the people liked it. The official answered yes.

Kim Jong Il said: I am not sure whether the people really like it. They may say so, because production was suspended during the Arduous March and forced march, but now it is going up and they are supplied with a variety of goods. The cooperative should put production on a normal footing and further improve the quality of goods. It should review all the indices for the production of foodstuffs to put production on a standardized footing.

Kim Jong Il visited the Hamhung Woolen Textile Mill in March, Susongchon General Foodstuff Factory in Chongjin in April, and the then Pyongyang Textile Mill, Pyongyang Mechanical Pencil Factory, Rangnang Ponghwa Garment Factory and Ponghwa Soap Factory in Pyongyang in May.

As part of a measure to inspire the units in light industry to compete with one another in improving the quality of consumer goods, he arranged the second trade fair at the Pyongyang Department Store No. 1, and visited the exhibition hall on July 10.

Displayed at the exhibition hall were over 3 500 000 pieces of consumer goods in some 1 400 kinds from a few hundreds of units in Pyongyang and provinces.

That day he made the rounds of the first, second and third floors to see all the exhibits.

The officials of the department store thanked him for visiting it on Sunday despite the sultry weather.

Kim Jong Il told them that he would come again at any time to look round the department store.

Upon returning from his tour of Siberia and Far East of Russia and Northeast China, he visited the construction site of the Huichon Power Station. To encourage the workers in light industry to increase the output of quality consumer goods, he visited many factories: the Pyongyang Phalwol Grass Processing Factory, pastry workshop in the Kumsong Foodstuff Factory and Pothongmun Street Fish and Meat Shop on September 8; Rangnang Disabled Soldiers' Essential Plastic Goods Factory and Phyongsong Artificial Leather Factory in October; and Hamhung Knitwear Factory and Hungnam Leather Shoes Factory in December.

2. TO SOLVE THE FOOD PROBLEM

In 2011 Kim Jong Il focused on crop cultivation, animal husbandry, fish farming and pomiculture to solve the food problem.

On January 28 he had talks with senior officials of Party and state economic organs over the importance of bringing about a radical turn in agriculture to solve the food problem.

Stressing the need to demonstrate the nation's spirit that Korea does what it is determined to do by developing agriculture and solving the food problem, he set forth tasks and ways to this end. He expressed his conviction that the officials of state economic organs, officials in the agricultural sector and all agricultural workers would prove themselves worthy of the Party's trust and expectation by turning out as one in the effort to make great innovations in this year's farming in answer to the Party's appeal.

That year he visited many cooperative farms, fish farms, fruit farms and duck farms.

On July 6 he visited the Sinam Cooperative Farm in Ryongchon County.

He had visited this farm on several occasions, so he had many acquaintances there.

As he arrived at the farm, an official greeted him. He said, “We have been longing to see you. Three years ago, when you were here, you promised that you would come again in autumn that year.”

Kim Jong Il said to the official:

“In June 2008, when giving on-site guidance at the Sinam Cooperative Farm, I promised you that I would come again in autumn. But I could not afford time, so I have come today.”

The chairman of the farm management board gave a full account of the previous year’s harvest and the farm’s long-term plan.

He said that they carpeted the paddy and non-paddy fields with humus soil by means of the ten tractors sent by him and ploughed deep the fields for the first time in the autumn of the previous year. He added that this year, despite the unfavourable climate conditions, they grew healthy seedlings and finished rice transplantation within ten days and helped other farms.

Gazing around the accompanying officials, Kim Jong Il said that it was worthy of the title of Model Farm in the Songun era.

After listening to what the official of the farm had to say, he said that he did not need to worry so much about farming in North Phyongan Province.

That day he looked round the room dedicated to the history of the farm and then the youth sub-workteam.

On October 17 he visited the Tongbong Cooperative Farm in Hamju County. He spoke highly of it for having fulfilled the cereals production plan despite the unfavourable conditions in the east coast that was severely affected by the cold weather and less hours of sunshine.

He looked round the village where biogas was introduced. He said that strict measures should be adopted against the unfavourable natural and climatic conditions to raise good crops in the cooperative farms along the east coast, and specified ways to boost the production of cereals.

On May 11 he visited the Kujang Fish Farm.

President Kim Il Sung once said: After the country's liberation I went to Kujang in North Phyongan Province; the local people tried to catch all the rainbow trouts in a pond because they were raised by the Japanese; I dissuaded them, saying that they should raise them on an extensive scale; if I had not been there, the fish would have become extinct in our country.

Enjoying the view of the fish farm, Kim Jong Il said that it was transformed beyond recognition, adding that it looked more graceful as the auxiliary buildings that sat beyond the pond when he visited it in 2009 were moved to the lower part of the pond, and that the scenery of the area was really wonderful.

In fact, the fish farm had not increased the output of rainbow trouts. Worse still, there remained only a few scores of mother fishes during the Arduous March. Kim Jong Il had vehicles and feed sent to the fish farm so as to revitalize production.

All the employees turned out in the effort to put the fish farm on a modern footing, making headway in raising sturgeon, rainbow trout and other species of fish.

Referring to the fact that he had fixed the annual output for the fish farm two years before, Kim Jong Il asked about the previous year's output.

Told that the fish farm had failed to attain the set goal, he said that it must produce the set amount of fish with no conditions attached.

He stressed the need to ensure the domestic production of feed so as to establish the Juche orientation in fish farming.

He said:

“We should rely on our own efforts to solve the feed problem and boost the production of fish, so as to make sure that our people reap a substantial benefit from fish farming.”

On November 10 the same year he visited the Ryongdam Fish Farm. He set out such tasks as breeding the species which would consume less feed and grow fast and raising them on an extensive scale, and renovating the fish farm.

To provide the people with plenty of fruits, he visited the then Toksong Fruit Farm and Ryongjon Fruit Farm on May 18 and the Kosan Fruit Farm on June 2.

While giving field guidance at the Kosan Fruit Farm in June 2009, he had adopted measures to increase its production capacity. He commented that the fruit farm was transformed beyond recognition in two years, praising that it was really splendid.

During his previous visit, he saw the houses and production-related buildings still sitting in the fields. He encouraged the officials of the fruit farm to work in a bold and revolutionary way, not in a passive manner, saying that if such buildings remained as they were, many pathways would appear, it would be difficult to introduce machines and there would be some other disadvantages. He continued to point out that the construction of the fruit farm should be launched after he examined the design, underlining the need to build it into a modern “youth” farm within a few years. This was how a sea change took place in the appearance of the Kosan Fruit Farm.

Kim Jong Il said:

“We call this an eye-opening change. In the past it was called Jinkosan because of its wet land or Phungkosan because of a strong wind. It had been widely known as being unfit for human habitation. In the era of the Workers’ Party it is noted as a socialist fairyland.”

Doing the rounds of the fields, pumping station and roofing tile factory, he was satisfied that the builders turned the Kosan Fruit Farm into a modern fruit production base in a short period by giving full play to the spirit of devoted service to the people.

Learning that the transportation of fruits would be a knotty problem facing the farm in the years ahead, he advised that fruit juice might be evaporated and stored before being sent to the processing plant and it was necessary to set up a production line of dried fruit slices. He also emphasized that barbed-wire fences must not be imported from other countries and it was indispensable to build a new plant to produce such fences for the farm. Noting that to boost production, production cycle should be introduced to combine fruit farming with animal husbandry, he underlined the need to apply plenty of manure to the fields. He continued to stress that all the processes, including the management of soil, the manuring and cultivating of fruit trees and fruit processing, should be mechanized.

He went on to say: Today I am greatly happy to look round the Kosan

Fruit Farm; I am most pleased to see the fields laid out well; recently, large-scale fruit production bases including Wonhung in Pyongyang and Pukchong County have assumed a new appearance amid the flames for a great upsurge flaring up across the country; this eye-opening transformation heralds the dawn of a powerful country to be built in the near future.

He added that he was greatly satisfied that the people in Kosan County including the shock brigade members and employees of the Kosan Fruit Farm turned the farm into a large-scale, modern fruit production base in a short period by displaying the spirit of devoted service to the country and the people. Speaking highly of them for their feats of labour, he said that all the shock brigade members were heroes and all the heroes of the country seemed to have gathered there.

Later he inspected the Taedonggang Combined Fruit Farm, Taedonggang General Fruit Processing Factory and Ryongjon Fruit Farm, stressing that they should boost production to provide the people with plenty of fruits.

On October 11 he inspected the Tudan Duck Farm that had been renovated.

He looked round the hatching shop, computer control room for the production of compound microorganism fermenting agent and other production lines, praising the employees for setting them up in an excellent fashion.

He was told that the teachers and researchers of Kim Il Sung University and Kim Chaek University of Technology cooperated in the modernization of the duck farm.

He said:

“Recently the teachers and researchers of such universities as Kim Il Sung University and Kim Chaek University of Technology have worked hard to solve the scientific and technological problems arising in the ongoing projects. When I visit factories, enterprises or farms, I can see more teachers and researchers of universities and colleges than the staff of research institutes.”

He continued: Those who neglect reality and are unwilling to leave their

offices or labs can be called desk-bound people; the teachers and researchers of universities and colleges and the staff of research institutes should be enlisted in the effort to solve the scientific and technological problems arising in several fields of the national economy.

That day, he was pleased to learn that the duck farm had achieved a great deal and extended his thanks to the meritorious officials, employees, builders, volunteers and teachers and researchers of several universities, before posing for a photo with them.

3. KINDLING THE FLAMES OF HAMNAM

Kim Jong Il raised South Hamgyong Province as a model in building a powerful country and led it to kindle the flames of a great upsurge.

The province is essential to the national economy as it has a high concentration of major industrial establishments.

In 2011 alone, given the importance of the province's role in building a powerful country, Kim Jong Il visited scores of factories, mines and cooperative farms there, with a view to effecting an uninterrupted upsurge in production and construction.

He visited the February 8 Vinalon Complex on January 30, April 24 and August 8. When he visited it for the third time, he said that he came again to see the workers of the complex who were kindling the fierce flames of increased production in answer to the Party's call for enlisting everything in bettering the people's livelihood.

He inquired about how production was going. After being briefed on the renovation and expansion project by the general director of the complex, he highly praised them and stressed that the air-tight carbide electric furnace, the key to regular production, should be built as soon as possible. And he saw the samples of chemical products on display, speaking highly of their better quality.

He was greatly satisfied to see the machines in the vertical spinning shop operating at full capacity and the strips of vinalon fibre piled up in the storehouse.

That day he expressed his belief that the officials, workers and technicians of the complex would increase the production of quality chemical products, thus demonstrating its might as a model factory in Juche-based industry.

On October 16 he visited the complex for the fourth time that year.

He said that the complex was the lifeline in developing the country's light industry and improving the people's livelihood, so he had visited it on 22 occasions, adding that he came there to see the newly-built short fibre production line and the vinalon cotton being churned out.

At the spinning shop he saw the vinalon cotton produced through the horizontal spinning process, saying that it was good and it was the major material for textile industry.

Going round the horizontal and vertical spinning processes, he said: The February 8 Vinalon Complex is directly linked with the people's living conditions and its mission and role are very important; only when the complex runs properly, is it possible to resolve many problems arising in improving the people's livelihood; the renovation project should be carried out perfectly; what is of paramount importance in operating the complex on a regular basis is to ensure enough supply of coal.

Then he took necessary steps to provide the complex with coal on a priority basis. He continued to praise that the horizontal and vertical spinning processes were excellent and the complex performed a great feat.

He said:

“I feel a strong attachment to the February 8 Vinalon Complex. The complex can be called my spiritual home. I will come to the complex at any time and you should leave the gate wide open so that I can see its products being churned out.”

Following this inspection trip, the people in South Hamgyong Province buckled down and effected an upswing in production and construction.

To implement the instructions he gave during his visit on August 3 the previous year the management and employees of the Ryongsong Machine Complex launched a dynamic campaign to produce the first set of ordered equipment for the gasification project of the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex before the 65th anniversary of the Party by increasing the output of castings at the Songun Casting Factory.

In a little more than one month and a half since December of the previous year they manufactured 85 machines of 27 kinds needed for the above gasification project, as some countries forbade the export of such machines, claiming that they were dual-purpose equipment. They also transformed the nitrogen compressor and supplied it as scheduled.

On January 30, 2011 Kim Jong Il visited the complex again.

After acquainting himself with the feats of labour performed by the workers, he said: The complex has achieved a lot in the meantime. That the complex produced the equipment needed for the gasification project of the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex is a valuable fruition of the workers' spirit of self-reliance. The complex should introduce CNC technology to upgrade its equipment as demanded by the 21st century. To introduce CNC technology in the production lines and achieve their full automation is a decisive guarantee for developing the machine-building industry onto a new high.

Kim Jong Il stressed that in order to produce a greater number of modern machines at the complex it was necessary to promote creative cooperation between workers and technicians and steadily improve their technical skills, encouraging them all to work harder.

He visited the complex on April 24 and then on October 16.

That day he said: I am glad to see the officials of the complex including the general director; this is my 15th visit to this complex in the new century; when I visited it in April, I saw the assembled 400kW geothermal equipment; today I am going to see that equipment running.

Kim Jong Il commended the complex for having newly designed and manufactured the screw compressor rotator in the course of developing the 1 000kW geothermal equipment, before praising the tube-well system based on hydraulic drilling which was introduced in the building of an underground-water well when setting up the area for the trial operation of the geothermal equipment.

He continued: The workers of the Ryongsong Machine Complex produced many small- and medium-sized equipment for power generation in the days of the Arduous March; in recent years it turned out many equipment needed for the new projects at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex and the February 8 Vinalon Complex; there is nothing impossible for this

complex and it has performed a heroic feat; it is important to guard against the indiscriminate import of equipment; the compressors brought in from abroad are working properly at first but their defects are revealed in one or two years; geothermal equipment cannot be manufactured in the same way as air compressors so the complex should build a base which specializes in the production of geothermal equipment.

He emphasized that the workers, scientists and technicians who rendered a great contribution to developing geothermal equipment deserved high commendation and he felt reassured all the time as he was supported by the workers of the complex.

On October 3 he visited the Tanchon Magnesia Factory. He praised the factory for building the ball ore shop to produce light burned magnesia with ore dust that had been considered useless. Looking round the roofing tile and container shops, he said that as the factory was occupying an important position in improving the people's livelihood, the management and employees should achieve better results in making the magnesia industry Juche-based.

After winding up his visit to the factory, he went straight to the construction site of the Port of Tanchon. He spoke highly of the builders for doing 85% of the total amount of construction in a couple of years following the ground-breaking ceremony, saying that the construction site was transformed beyond recognition as compared with his December visit.

He expressed his conviction that the officials of the Ministry of Land and Maritime Transport and the shock brigade members at the construction site would complete the project on the occasion of the Day of the Sun the next year that would see the centenary of the birth of President Kim Il Sung.

The workers of the Taehung Youth Hero Mine adopted a new mining method to boost the output of ores, built two branch factories for the production of light burned magnesia with ore dust, and produced magnesia clinker by making coal briquettes with anthracite abundant in the country, thus rendering a substantial contribution to making the refractory industry Juche-based.

On October 15 Kim Jong Il visited this mine. He saw the relief map of

the mine and its products on display, before making the rounds of several production lines.

He praised the workers for having made persevering efforts over the past three years to repay the great trust of the Party that raised them as pioneers in making the magnesia industry Juche-based and as heroic workers admired by all other people in the country. He was satisfied that they completed all the tasks he had set out during his previous visit and established the Juche orientation of the country's magnesia industry on a new, higher plane.

He also spoke highly of the workers for building a production line of the binder and coal briquettes to solve the problem of fuel that was essential to the production of magnesia clinker. Seeing a sample of magnesia clinker, he said: You say that this is of better quality than what has been produced using coking coal. This is what I want. This time the officials and workers of the Taehung Youth Hero Mine have proved in practice, as demanded by the Party, that they do not think that they broke with coking coal but coking coal is no longer available. This is an outstanding success.

That day he said he would see everything they wanted him to see.

The next leg of his inspection trip was the Ryongyang Mine.

Learning that the workers of the mine scrapped the conventional tunnelling method and adopted a full-scale caving method, he praised them for making a miraculous achievement in the production of minerals.

After watching a video about the history of the mine and its actual conditions he praised the workers for building a general control room and establishing a system of surveying, controlling and directing the major production lines to ensure the accuracy and promptness of production control. He was pleased that the mine obtained plenty of tunnelling and transportation equipment and was increasing the production of ores.

He went down into a pit with a safety helmet on. He said that as the modernization of the pit left electric cars, mine cars and rails redundant, he wanted to be guided to the crushing ground because the ores carried by truck from the pit were fed into a roaster and then crushed before being transported to the ore yard by a conveyer belt.

He continued: The Ryongyang Mine has introduced large, modern machines in tunnelling to mass-produce ores. It has achieved a lot. And its

Party committee has paid close concern to supply service for the workers and other residents, regarding it as part of its work.

Saying that he was very pleased, he suggested posing for a photo with the officials and workers of the mine.

He underlined that all sectors and all units should learn from the revolutionary spirit and stamina displayed by the workers of the Taehung Youth Hero Mine and the Ryongyang Mine, so as to perform proud feats which would be recorded in the history of the country while stepping up the revolutionary onward march to mark the centenary of the birth of President Kim Il Sung in 2012.

On October 16 he visited the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex.

Before receiving greetings from the officials of the complex, he said to them:

“I congratulate the workers of the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex for succeeding in the trial operation of the first-stage process for ammonia production based on lignite gasification.”

Some years before, he advised that the complex must produce ammonia through coal gasification and if it built an ammonia production line, it could produce fertilizer and economize on electricity, adding that it was greatly beneficial in many aspects. In August 2010 and on January 30 and March 10 in 2011, he visited the complex to solve knotty problems, encouraging the workers of the complex to press on with the construction of the gasification process aimed at establishing the Juche orientation in fertilizer production, by giving full play to the spirit of self-reliance.

The workers, scientists and technicians of the complex and other workers in the factories that were charged with the production of ordered equipment made proactive efforts to implement his instructions.

Kim Jong Il was pleased to say that the workers in Hungnam succeeded in the trial operation of the first-stage process for ammonia production based on lignite gasification, demonstrating once again to the world the might of Juche-based industry and paving the way for boosting fertilizer production by relying on local materials and technology.

He then proposed posing for a photo against the background of the carbon dioxide adsorption towers.

He said:

“The carbon dioxide adsorption towers are a product of self-reliance.”

Surveying the towers, he continued: The senior officials of the South Hamgyong Provincial Party Committee say that they, bearing in mind my advice that if a man is steeped in flunkeyism he will not freely use the money in his own pocket, enlisted the mental strength of the workers in building the carbon dioxide adsorption towers. You are laudable indeed. Our workers do what they are determined to do.

Looking round the compound of the complex, he inquired in detail about the new structures.

Then he moved towards the control room for the fertilizer shipping area.

Through the window in the control room he saw bags of fertilizer piled up in a storehouse. They were produced in the course of the trial operation that had been undertaken the day before.

Kim Jong Il said:

“Urea fertilizer has been produced at last. I was told that such trial operation would take others more than six months, but the workers of the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex succeeded in the operation within 40-odd days and produced the first batch of fertilizer bags.”

He continued that the amount of fertilizer was still small, stressing that it should be produced in large amounts to be sent to cooperative farms by truck and by train. He then suggested having a photo taken with the meritorious people who performed feats of labour in the construction of the first-stage process for ammonia production based on lignite gasification at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex.

Before leaving the complex, he said that the officials and workers who took part in the gasification project achieved a great deal, and he expressed his belief that they would work harder in the future as well.

On the evening of October 16, 2011, he said to the officials concerned: This time I have inspected several factories and enterprises in South Hamgyong Province; the officials and workers in the province have done a lot of work; credit for the recent successes made in the province should go to the provincial Party committee that conducted effective Party work with ideology as its major instrument.

He went on:

“In the past the torch of Ranam and the torch of Songgang were kindled in North Hamgyong Province. Now fierce flames of a great upsurge are flaring up in the factories and enterprises in South Hamgyong Province. Just as we encouraged the people to make innovations in the revolution and construction under the torch of Ranam and the torch of Songgang, so we should inspire the whole country to further efforts amid the flames of a great upswing flaring up in South Hamgyong Province, that is, the flames of Hamnam.”

4. TO HIS LAST DAY IN DECEMBER

Following his visit to the Nampho Glassware Branch Factory under the Taeam Friendship Glass Factory at the outset of 2011, Kim Jong Il inspected many other units across the country. That year he also paid a visit to Siberia and Far East of Russia and Northeast China.

At the beginning of December the train carrying Kim Jong Il was running to South Hamgyong Province.

This was his ninth visit to the province in the year. Some days ago, doctors told him that he should pay special concern to his health until the 25th of the month.

When he was setting out on this inspection trip, they begged him, through their tears, to cancel the trip. They went to great lengths to dissuade him, but to no avail.

Kim Jong Il could understand why, as he knew that his health was worsening. He was unwilling to tell doctors about his pain but he felt his heart aching more frequently. He also found that his fatigue did not wear off soon after burning the midnight oil. Such symptoms had not been noticed before.

On December 9, 2011 he looked round the new vegetable greenhouse workteam of a cooperative farm in Hoesang, Hamhung.

Seeing the vegetables cultivated in the greenhouses, he praised that it was a great success that they produced over 760 tons of vegetables a year.

He said: Today I have looked round the greenhouses of this cooperative farm in Hoesang. They are very good. Such solar-powered greenhouses cannot be found elsewhere on the east coast. I will give these greenhouses ten out of ten.

That day he visited the Hamhung Knitwear Factory. At the exhibition hall he saw such products of vinalon as pullover, fabric, cotton-knit underwear and blended-fabric sweater, and commented that the quality of the products was good and the cloth was durable. Feeling an undergarment for men, he said that cotton-knit underwear had good quality and the factory could be said to have secured a monopoly of them.

On December 10 he visited the February 8 Vinalon Complex for the fifth time that year and spoke highly of the service personnel for having removed in a matter of six days the decades-old mud from the settling basin of the water-supply station.

That day he inspected several units, praising the officials and workers for their achievements and posing for a camera with them.

On the evening of December 11, after winding up his tour of Hamhung, he summoned a senior official of the province to his train. The latter pledged to carry out the tasks the Party entrusted to him by displaying his courage and youthful stamina, and Kim Jong Il said he believed he would do so without fail.

On December 13, following his inspection trip to South Hamgyong Province, Kim Jong Il guided the firing exercise by an army unit.

He was pleased with the fact that all the service personnel of the unit were fully prepared for defeating any surprise attack by the enemies and defending the socialist country. He said that they should remain on tenterhooks and step up preparations for possible war, always bearing in mind that victory and prosperity are unthinkable apart from armed might.

On December 15, though he was seriously ill, he visited the Hana Music Information Centre in Thongil Street and the Kwangbok Area Supermarket.

He was satisfied to learn that the centre was built into a hub of artistic information and expressed his expectation that the management and employees of the Hana Electronics J.V. Company would strive harder for the good of the people.

At the Kwangbok Area Supermarket he said that he was very pleased to see the new commercial outlet devoted to the improvement of the people's livelihood. Seeing a rich assortment of goods in the supermarket, he said that though it was cold outside, he felt warm in his heart.

He went on:

“The happiest moment of my life is when I have done something for the good of the people. The people's happiness and pleasure is just mine. It is my unshakeable will and determination to provide them with the best things.”

On the night of the following day he sat at his desk on which there was a host of documents. After being lost in deep thought for a long while, he chose a document among those of great urgency. It was related to the supply of fish to Pyongyang citizens.

In former years pollack, herring, flatfish and other species of fish were in abundant supply, but the Arduous March and forced march led to a radical decrease in the catch of fish. For example, even pollack was not readily available.

To cope with this situation Kim Jong Il had adopted measures to boost the catch of fish and, since some years ago, had them imported from other countries.

In 2011, too, he made sure that pollack and herring were imported to be supplied to Pyongyang citizens on the occasion of New Year's Day.

On December 15, after inspecting several units in Pyongyang, he said that the previous year he had pollack and herring imported and sold to Pyongyang citizens. Noting that the citizens were very pleased about it, he added that his happiest moment was when the people felt happy.

He went on to say: I am planning to have pollack and herring imported and sold to Pyongyang citizens on the occasion of New Year's Day as I did last year. I have been told that the vessel carrying the fish will arrive at the Port of Wonsan on the 19th or 20th of December. If the vessel arrives at the port, the fish should be promptly transported and sold to Pyongyang citizens.

He said:

“Until now I have done everything I can for the good of our people.”

The officials submitted to him a plan for providing Pyongyang citizens with the fish before New Year's Day.

This was just the document he was going over at night.

He took steps for the train transport of the fish from the Port of Wonsan to the relevant railway station, and then ratified the document at 9:13 p.m.

Then he had a train prepared for another inspection trip.

The officials concerned were at a loss what to do because they were well aware that they must dissuade him from setting out on the trip and that they were unable to alter his plan.

They did all they could to dissuade him, and he knew that his mental and physical stress had surpassed normal limits.

At last, the train carrying him left Pyongyang for the northern part of the country, and the last moment of his life was drawing nearer.

CHAPTER 55

IMMORTALIZATION OF THE SONGUN SUN OF JUCHE

1. GREAT LOSS TO THE NATION

At 10:00 on December 19, Monday, the TV and radio stations of the DPRK announced that a major news item would be broadcast at 12:00.

After the demise of President Kim Il Sung, the Korean people had felt anxiety at the mention of *Major News*. But after the KPA Supreme Commander's order on building Chongnyu Bridge and Kumnung Tunnel No. 2 was broadcast as a major news item, they had regarded it as a most meaningful and glad news item.

Therefore, people sitting in front of TV sets were waiting in suspension for the announcement of another noteworthy event.

At 12:00, the Korean Central Television announced, *To All the Party Members, KPA Service Personnel and People*, which begins:

“The Central Committee and the Central Military Commission of the Workers' Party of Korea and the National Defence Commission, the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly and the Cabinet of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea report in the bitterest grief that the great leader Comrade Kim Jong Il, General Secretary of the Workers' Party of Korea, Chairman of the DPRK National Defence Commission and Supreme Commander of the Korean People's Army, passed away from a sudden attack of illness at 08:30 on December 17, Juche 100 (2011) during a trip for on-site guidance.”

It then dwelt on the history of his imperishable revolutionary career, and made public the list of members of the National Funeral Committee and Notice of the National Funeral Committee.

The Notice stated that, first, the body of General Kim Jong Il would be

laid in state at the Kumsusan Memorial Palace; second, the period from December 17 to 29, Juche 100 (2011) would be set as the period of mourning, and the mourners would be received from December 20 to 27; third, a ceremony of bidding the last farewell to him would be held solemnly in Pyongyang, the capital city, on December 28; fourth, a national memorial service for him would be held on December 29, and at the time of the national memorial service in Pyongyang artillery salute would be fired in Pyongyang and every provincial seat, the people across the country would observe a three-minute silence, and the locomotives and vessels would blow whistles all at once in memory of him; fifth, all the institutions and enterprises in the country would hold memorial events during the mourning period, and all provinces, cities and counties would hold memorial services at the time when the national memorial service was being held in Pyongyang; sixth, the institutions and enterprises would hoist flags at half-mast, and musical and all other entertainments would be refrained; and seventh, foreign mourning delegations would not be received.

And a medical analysis on Kim Jong Il's diseases and cause of his death was issued. It reads in part:

“He had been under medical treatment for his cardiac and cerebrovascular diseases for a long period.

“He suffered an advanced acute myocardial infarction, complicated with a serious heart attack, on a running train on December 17, Juche 100 (2011) owing to excessive mental and physical exertions he had made in the days of his high-intensity forced march for leading the drive to build a thriving country.

“Every possible first-aid measure was taken immediately, but he passed away at 08:30 on December 17, Juche 100 (2011).”

From the moment when the major news was made public, a bolt from the blue, the whole country was turned into a sea of tears.

People went outside, but there was no place they could go. For there was no statue of Kim Jong Il as he had prevented such statues from being set up in the country.

They crumpled on the cold ground weeping; then, they went to the statues of President Kim Il Sung, monuments set up to commemorate

Kim Jong Il's on-site guidance and mosaic murals portraying Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il. Calling him, they beat the ground and cried their hearts out, some fainting from the unbearable mental shock.

Venues for memorial service were laid out in KPA units and institutions, factories, farms and schools across the country, and memorial functions took place day and night.

On December 19, the day when the major news was released, some trains ran with people standing closely with one another even in the vestibules, and some others with no passengers as they had all got off at way stations, like on the day of 17 years previously when President Kim Il Sung had died.

Meanwhile, inpatients left hospitals in a hurry; all hospitals in the country became vacant in a moment, except emergency cases.

Around this time, Supreme Leader Kim Jong Un saw to it that portraits of beaming Kim Jong Il were put up at outside venues for memorial service in Pyongyang and provincial seats.

Third-year students of Phyongri Secondary School in Sunchon in South Phyongan Province started a march to Phyongsong along a 20km-long snow-covered road on hearing that a portrait of his beaming image was put up in the provincial seat. They presented flowers in front of the portrait and stood guard by the portrait all night.

Such a scene could be witnessed all over the country. Officials and students covered wreaths with their padded overcoats lest they become wet at snowing dawn; employees of the Pyongyang Spectacles Shop made hundreds of thousands of white paper flowers at nights in tears and gave them to the mourners; secondary school students in Sangwon County made an ice sculpture of Kimjongilia and inscribed the word *Immortality* on its base, burning the midnight oil on the day when the news of his death was released; some primary school students stood guard until late at night and returned to the venues of memorial service at 04:00 next day to remove the fallen snow.

Working people in some local cities and counties went to the provincial seats, over 40km away, to pay tribute to the memory of their late leader.

On December 20, a mourning service was held before the bier of Kim Jong Il in the Kumsusan Memorial Palace.

Kim Jong Un, with senior Party, state and military officials, visited the

bier of Kim Jong Il and mourned his death with bitterest grief.

The bier covered with a red flag was lying among flowers. The front of the bier bore the emblem of the DPRK and *1942-2011* portraying his life. Placed in its front were a pair of shoulder straps of DPRK Marshal, Order of Kim Il Sung, Kim Il Sung Prize, medals of DPRK Hero and many other orders and medals he had been awarded. A wreath sent by Kim Jong Un was lying beside the bier. Standing beside the bier were members of the National Funeral Committee and honour guards of the KPA three services and Worker-Peasant Red Guards.

Amid the playing of the funeral music, Kim Jong Un entered the hall where Kim Jong Il was lying in state.

Accompanied by senior Party, state and military officials, he paid tribute to the deceased and looked round the bier.

From that day the venue of the mourning service in the Kumsusan Memorial Palace was opened to the public.

During the period of mourning people, numbering 260 million in total, visited the venues of mourning service across the country.

Busy as he was with presiding over the mourning functions, sometimes standing guard over the bier of Kim Jong Il, Kim Jong Un, worried about the people paying tribute to the memory of their late leader in the biting cold outside, sent a letter concerning the people taking part in mourning functions, and took emergency measures so that Party organizations at all levels and officials would give top and absolute priority to their comfort.

As a result, 30 000 snack counters and 10 000 medical service posts were set up across the country for the supply of soya milk, honeyed water, warm water and medical assistance. Temporary structures equipped with air-conditioning facilities were built and “warm buses” parked in various places. Flower stalls run by horticultural agencies supplied flowers to those who were on their way to pay tribute to the memory of Kim Jong Il, and all means of public transport provided 24-hour service. And fishes associated with Kim Jong Il’s benevolence were supplied to the people living in the capital city and Hamhung.

South Korean compatriots also expressed condolences over the death of Kim Jong Il.

Despite the obstructive moves by the authorities, newspapers carried articles on mourning in their front pages every day, and TV stations broadcast live the mourning functions in Pyongyang, later re-broadcasting them several times upon the request of the audiences. In one hour after the broadcast of the major news in Pyongyang, 120 000 writings, like *The sky has collapsed. Heartbreaking death of the National Defence Commission Chairman, Regretful. I'll mourn with them, Praying for the soul of Chairman Kim Jong Il of the National Defence Commission and General Kim Jong Il will be admired for ever in human history*, were posted on the five major websites. Mass media highlighted the fact that Kim Jong Il died on a running train while continuing high-intensity forced march of on-site guidance with superhuman passion until the last day of his life, describing his on-site guidance as *broad-spectrum march, lightning on-site guidance and self-sacrificing spirit*.

Roh Moo Hyun Foundation praised Kim Jong Il as a veteran of the reunification movement, who gave birth to the historic October 4 Declaration for the improved inter-Korean relations. Former minister of unification and other personages, who had met Kim Jong Il even once in his lifetime, voiced deep sorrow and recollected the days when they had met him.

The widow of the former President Kim Dae Jung, the chairperson of the Hyundai Group, South Side Committee for the Implementation of the June 15 Joint Declaration, bereaved families of Rev. Mun Ik Hwan and former President Roh Moo Hyun, and various civic organizations formed delegations of callers for condolence and submitted applications to the Ministry of Unification for a visit to the north, urging the authorities to send their official delegation to the north in line with etiquette. All opposition parties including the Democratic United Party and United Progressive Party expressed condolences, and expressed their official stand that the government must express condolences over the death of the leader of the north, continuing: If it cannot, it must send a delegation in the name of the National Assembly; if that is also impossible, it must send a non-governmental delegation in the name of the All-People Council for National Reconciliation and Cooperation; the authorities must dispatch a delegation of mourners to the north without fail.

But claiming about a “danger to the stability on the Korean peninsula”

following the “sudden turn of events,” President Lee Myung Bak issued an “emergency plan” and “B-class emergency order” to the army and police, and ordered the presidential office, government and even diplomatic missions in other countries to take a 24-hour emergency duty posture.

Accordingly, the military authorities set up an emergency measure group in the Defence Ministry and the Joint Chiefs of Staff at 12:10 on December 19, began operating an early response group at 12:20, and at 12:30 ordered B-class Emergency Posture to all army units, so that they took a war posture and conducted intensive spying and surveillance with regard to the areas of the north.

In this situation, the honorary chairman and advisors of the south headquarters of the Pan-National Alliance for Korea’s Reunification, though old, marched as far as the Military Demarcation Line with a placard, reading *We’re going to make a call of condolence reflecting the will of June 15*, in their front. When the soldiers blocked their way, they fought with them, shouting, “We’re going to make a call of condolence over the death of Chairman Kim Jong Il. Get out of the way.”

In the midst of growing sorrow among the south Korean people, the flag on the national flag pole south of the Military Demarcation Line just in front of Phanmun County was hoisted at half-mast before anyone could notice it.

On December 20, the Central Committee of the Anti-Imperialist National Democratic Front sent a message of condolence to Kim Jong Un.

Ri Hui Ho, widow of former President Kim Dae Jung and director general of the Kim Dae Jung Peace Centre, Hyon Jong Un, chairperson of the Hyundai Group, and their parties, who had embarked on a visit to Pyongyang despite all manner of pressure and appeasement by Lee Myung Bak, arrived in the Kumsusan Memorial Palace on December 26; on December 27, Hwang Hye Ro, co-representative of the Korea Solidarity for Independent Reunification and Democracy, on her visit to Pyongyang, laid a wreath before the bier of Kim Jong Il and paid tribute to his memory.

Though she was wheelchair-ridden for advanced age, Mrs Ri Hui Ho walked into the hall supported by others, observed a moment’s silence before the bier and expressed her deep sympathy.

Chairperson Hyon Jong Un was also grief-stricken, as she was reminded

of her meeting with Kim Jong Il on Mt Kumgang, where he had spoken highly of her for doing a great share in the north-south cooperation true to the will of her late father-in-law Jong Ju Yong, honorary chairman, and her late husband Jong Mong Hon, chairman of Hyundai Asan, and told her to inform him when her daughter was getting married.

Kim Jong Un, who was standing guard over the bier of Kim Jong Il, expressed thanks to them.

Overseas Korean compatriots, too, expressed condolences over the death of their national leader.

The Central Standing Committee of the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan sent a message of condolence to Kim Jong Un, and delegations of Koreans in Japan came to the motherland.

Memorial services were held every place in Japan where Koreans were living. The venue of the central memorial service was packed to its capacity with Koreans—men and women, young and old. A Japanese politician, who was present there and saw Koreans shedding tears of blood over the death of their national leader, said that the reality of the Korean community in Japan had a great impact on him, adding, “I’ve heard Korea is a large family with Chairman Kim Jong Il as the father. It seems it is the same case with the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan. If one sees Koreans living abroad, not in their motherland, grieving as one, one may fully understand the blood-sealed ties between them and their national leader.”

Many Koreans living in China and Russia visited the places of memorial service laid out in the DPRK missions in Beijing and Shenyang in China and Moscow and Nakhodka in Russia. A Korean living in Russia, Jong Il Sim, aged 90, burst into tears, saying, “Can the Sun set? Is this a dream or a real world? If it’s a dream, I will awake from it. Unable to believe the sad news, I rushed here. The heaven and earth shed tears over your death.”

Moon Hyong Jin of the World Peace Federation heard the sad news in a plane which he had embarked in Beijing on his way back home from a visit to Pyongyang. His father, Moon Sun Myung, president of the World Peace Federation, reproached him for leaving even after hearing the news, and asked him to pay a visit to the bier of the great man and convey condolence money to the north. The son returned to Pyongyang and, together with his

father's mind, expressed condolences. During his stay he abstained from eating and drinking, and bowed one thousand times in front of the portrait of Kim Jong Il every day, praying for the soul of the deceased.

Koreans living in Uzbekistan and Germany knelt down in front of the portraits of Kim Jong Il, and bowed, shedding hot tears and saying General Kim Jong Il had been an outstandingly great man. Those living in the United States, seeing the performance of the immortal revolutionary hymn *Song of General Kim Jong Il* by a philharmonic orchestra, looked back upon his great career.

The bitterest grief felt by overseas Koreans was reflected in over 1 500 letters and messages of condolence sent from the United States, Canada, France and all other countries where they were living. Their organizations held emergency meetings and formed delegations, which came to their motherland carrying wreaths with them. The director of the US-based Institute of Reunification Studies, the representative of the news service *Minjok Thongsin* and other compatriots posted on the websites and newspapers such writings as *Chairman Kim Jong Il of the National Defence Commission and the Destiny of the Motherland, Though Night Advances, Tears Continue to Flow Down, and Increasing Number of Overseas Compatriots Visiting to Express Condolences*.

A compatriot in the United States wrote to *Thongil News*:

“Can we find a leader in any country and in any time, who died in early morning on a train bound for on-site guidance, as Chairman Kim Jong Il did? Can we ever see such a leader as he, who drove the haughty United States, which as the ‘sole superpower’ dominated not only the whole planet but outer space and lorded it over, into a bottomless abyss of humiliation and defeat?”

2. THE NEWS SHAKES THE WORLD

Death of Kim Jong Il shook the world in an instant.

Between December 19 and 20 TV and radio stations of more than 100 countries reported the news of his death.

Memorial services were held in many countries.

Leading cadres of the Chinese party and government, including the nine members of the Standing Committee of the Political Bureau of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of China, visited the DPRK mission in Beijing between the two days of December 20 and 21, and expressed condolences in the name of the party, government and people of China. Party, government and military cadres of 2 000 units of China, including the Central Military Commission, the State Council and the Ministry of National Defence, and personages and people from all social standings visited the embassy and other missions of the DPRK in China. Among them were a teacher at Northeast University, who had proposed observing a three-minute silence, before giving a class, saying, "I express greatest sorrow over the death of the great Comrade Kim Jong Il," and a student of Shenyang Middle School No. 1, who said he had come with flowers as he wanted to pay tribute to the memory of the great man who had shown moral excellence for the good of the people. In Dandong, a city bordering the DPRK, 4 000 personages and people from all walks of life visited the DPRK mission there in the period of mourning.

Families of anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters and persons related with the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle in China also mourned over the death of the DPRK leader. Bereaved families of Zhou Baozhong, Feng Zhongyun and Chai Shiyong embarked on a Pyongyang-bound plane without any air ticket. After participating in a memorial service held in the Kumsusan Memorial Palace, family members of Zhang Weihua said that the death of the great General was a loss to the Korean nation, and the world socialist movement lost its outstanding leader and its benevolent father. A former guard of Zhou Baozhong, who had fainted after hearing the news, prepared a wreath and bouquet in the hospital and asked others to present them in front of a portrait of Kim Jong Il.

Russian President Dmitri Medvedev expressed deep condolences in his letter to Kim Jong Un.

Cuban leader Raul Castro visited the DPRK embassy in Havana. He was the first to send a letter of condolences to Kim Jong Un among heads of state; breaking the convention of setting one day of mourning for the death of the leaders of countries friendly towards Cuba, he ensured that three days

of mourning were set, starting from December 20, and that flags were hoisted at half-mast. Many people including officials and workers came to Havana 40km away from their workplaces, and presented flowers in front of the portrait of Kim Jong Il.

The Laotian president, on hearing the news on his way for a trip to regions, first organized the work for expressing condolences, cancelled the trip, and returned to the capital city to express his condolences.

Busy as he was with guiding rehabilitation in flood-stricken areas, the prime minister of Thailand visited the DPRK embassy in Bangkok and laid a wreath in front of the portrait of Kim Jong Il. In Thailand, flags were half-masted at all government buildings, state-run enterprises and its missions in foreign countries for three days.

In Cambodia, the royal flag was hoisted at half-mast at the Royal Palace on December 28, when the ceremony of bidding the last farewell to Kim Jong Il was being held in Pyongyang.

At a plenary meeting of the 66th Session of the UN General Assembly and the officers meeting of the UN Food and Agriculture Organization, participants observed a minute's silence. Meanwhile, flags were hoisted at half-mast at the UN headquarters, the UN Office in Geneva and other buildings of UN organizations. The World Food Programme, free from its usual practice, flew its flags at half-mast in the garden of its building as well as on its roof for the first time in its history.

On December 19, the UN Secretary General, through his spokesman, expressed heartfelt sympathy with the Korean people who were in great grief, and sent a message of condolences to the DPRK on December 23. The president of the UN General Assembly and representatives of several countries to the UN paid a visit to the DPRK mission to the UN. On December 20, the director general of the UN Office in Geneva and his party, acting executive director of the WFP, acting general secretary of the International Telecommunication Union and the regional development director of the UN training institute visited the DPRK permanent mission to the UN Office and other international organizations in Geneva and the DPRK embassy in Rome. That day representatives of many countries to the UN Office and international organizations in Geneva visited the DPRK mission in Geneva.

The Secretariat of FAO suggested that chairmen of meetings of technical and working committees propose paying silent tribute to the memory of the late DPRK leader at their meetings.

A silent tribute was paid by hundreds of participants including MPs and other political, social and cultural figures in the opening ceremony of the 28th Golden Circus international festival held in Rome, Italy.

The chairman of the Central Committee of the German Communist Party, who visited the DPRK embassy in Berlin upon hearing the news in hospital, the secretary general of the German Heart Centre and the chairman of the Communist Party of Nepal (Marxist-Leninist-Socialist) said that they had felt confident and the worth of living as there was Kim Jong Il, but now were feeling heartbroken as he had passed away so early.

The Central Committee of the Communist Party of Venezuela, a regional hospital in Mozambique and other political parties, organizations and enterprises in several other countries laid out places for memorial service in their buildings.

The International Alliance of Societies for the Study of the Juche Idea and Songun Politics in East Europe and Central Asian Regions held a joint emergency meeting and adopted a resolution on holding functions in memory of Kim Jong Il and conducting various activities to give wide publicity to his career and exploits.

The Korean Friendship Association, which has its branches in scores of countries, organized an online symposium on December 24 on the imperishable exploits Kim Jong Il had performed, and posted a special edition, *The Great Leader Comrade Kim Jong Il Will Always Be with Us*, on its website.

Marshal Yazov, defence minister of the former Soviet Union, said that he had met Kim Jong Il several times, and that he still remembered the details of his meetings with him, saying, “Comrade Kim Jong Il was a great man and a great statesman who loved his people sincerely; he was their father. He was a true general who led the Korean people and the Korean People’s Army to great victory. He will live for ever in the hearts of not only the Korean people but the progressive mankind the world over.”

Pulikovsky, former presidential envoy to the Far East of the Russian

Federation, who had had intimate relationship with Kim Jong Il, visited the DPRK embassy in Moscow, and said that it was the greatest honour and happiness in his life to have met and talked to him.

The head of the Ensemble of the Interior Force of the Russian Interior Ministry said: Comrade Kim Jong Il met us several times and expressed great trust in us; he remembered the names of major actors of my ensemble; it is a source of great honour and happiness for us; all the members of the ensemble expressed condolences over his death; this is a duty and obligation becoming to a human being; he will live for ever in the hearts of all members of my ensemble.

Giancarlo Valori, chairman of the General Investment Group of Italy, closed his business in the period of mourning, and visited the DPRK embassy in Rome almost every day. Seeing on TV the sea of the Korean people kneeling down and bursting into tears, he said to the staff members of the embassy: I cannot help shedding tears from the heartbreaking pain of losing a great man and from endless yearning for him; His Excellency Kim Jong Il was indeed a heaven-sent, great man and an outstanding politician recognized even by the West.

Having set a mourning period for his family, the chairman of the board of directors of the Italian International Exchange and Financial Group gathered his family members in the evenings, and recalled how Kim Jong Il had sent *insam* and other tonics to his father for medical treatment.

Humberto Ortiz, general manager of Voluntad Publishing House of Ecuador, set a mourning period in his family and held memorial services.

Vishwanath, secretary general of the International Kim Il Sung Prize Council, said: Comrade Kim Jong Il had descended on the earth to serve the people; such a great man is born once in centuries.

The director-general of the International Kim Il Sung Prize Foundation expressed his heartfelt condolences, saying that Kim Jong Il was a veteran statesman of the world and a great saint in that he performed great exploits that would shine for ever in human history.

Jindallae, daughter of Mustafa al-Safarini, chairman of the Arab Information Centre in Beijing, on her visit to the DPRK embassy in Beijing on the morning of December 20, wrote on mourners book:

“I express deepest condolences over the death of my dearest father.

“How can I forget even a moment father General, who named me after my birth in the Pyongyang Maternity Hospital?

“Some time ago, after the lapse of 20 years, I have been to Pyongyang, my native place, with the hope of seeing him.

“When I heard the bolt from the blue, I felt my heart breaking and I did not know what I should do. I pray for his soul. He will live in my heart for ever.”

Unable to keep back the tears rolling down her cheeks, she knelt down in the place of memorial service, and repeatedly said that he would live in her heart for ever.

Condolences were voiced in countries that were hostile to the DPRK.

Former US President Jimmy Carter, in his message of condolence, extended sympathy to His Excellency Kim Jong Un and the Korean people over the death of His Excellency Kim Jong Il, wishing Kim Jong Un every success as the leader of his country and looking forward to another visit to Pyongyang.

Former Japanese Prime Minister Junichiro Koizumi also sent a message, in which he expressed heartfelt condolences over the sudden death of Chairman Kim Jong Il and hoped for comprehensive solution to the Japan-DPRK problems and for normalized relations between the two countries. Saying that he wanted to “express condolences from the bottom of my heart,” he visited the hall in the building of the Central Standing Committee of the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan, and laid a flower in front of the portrait of Kim Jong Il.

Even a country which had no diplomatic relations with the DPRK took a step of suspending the planned live shell firing and missile launching drill as a show of condolences to the Korean people.

During the period of mourning leaders of political parties, states and governments, political parties and social organizations, political, social, military and economic figures, international organizations, Juche idea study groups, and representatives of friendship and solidarity organizations from over 120 countries sent messages and letters of condolence, numbering 3 000, just a few hours after the release of the news of the death of Kim Jong Il. And the wreaths and flower baskets presented in the name of

party, state and government leaders, political parties, institutions, organizations and individual figures totalled 4 100.

In this period 10 000 media organs of 150 countries and regions gave real-time coverage of the memorial functions free from their practices of covering memorial functions for a late head of state.

With regard to the reaction of various countries to the death of Kim Jong Il, a Chinese publication wrote:

Whether condolences were expressed or not, it reflected the important place Comrade Kim Jong Il occupied in the international political arena; it is quite natural that the Korean people shed tears in memory of such a great man. His friends' condolences were from the bottom of their hearts, and his enemies' respect was for the great country, the great nation. The man who had become really strong by firmly relying on the people and by motivating them ought to be respected by the world.

3. FUNERAL CEREMONY AND DEMONSTRATION OF THE INTEGRATED WHOLE

December 28 broke, when the Korean people had to bid the last farewell to their late leader.

From 00:00 it began to snow. The snow fell so heavily that people on streets lost their bearings and felt difficult to recognize one another.

People in Pyongyang swept the roads repeatedly from dawn, but the snow lay thick. Even children removed the snow, wiping away tears. Failing, people began to cover the roads with their overcoats and scarfs. Some rushed to their houses and brought blankets and padded quilts to cover the roads with them. This scene was witnessed in all parts along the 40km-long course to be travelled by the hearse.

Before the departure of the funeral procession, Kim Jong Un, accompanied by senior Party, state and military officials, paid silent tribute in front of the bier of Kim Jong Il, and looked round it.

Then, the ceremony of bidding the last farewell was held in the plaza of the Kumsusan Memorial Palace.

Amid the playing of the funeral music, Kim Jong Un, accompanied by senior Party and military officials, entered the plaza with the hearse guarded by a column of the colours of the Korean People's Army.

The commander of the guard of honour of the KPA three services and the Worker-Peasant Red Guards made a salute to Supreme Commander Kim Jong Il.

After the playing of the national anthem the hearse rolled past the guard of honour and a column of the colours of the KPA three services and the Worker-Peasant Red Guards, with Kim Jong Un, together with members of the Political Bureau of the Central Committee of the WPK, putting his hand on the hearse.

At last the hearse, accompanied by Kim Jong Un and other members of the National Funeral Committee, left for the streets of Pyongyang, where millions of people from all walks of life, including service personnel, and foreigners staying in the DPRK were waiting to bid their last farewell to Kim Jong Il.

As the hearse appeared following a car carrying a portrait of beaming Kim Jong Il on its roof, people burst out sobbing.

When the motorcade was passing by the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium, the crowds, who were beating their chests and trying to keep pace with the motorcade in tears, lost self-restraint and rushed into the road. The orderly lines of people broke in an instant, and people surrounded the hearse rolling in the middle of the road.

One shouted:

“What is all this about, General? You were undaunted in front of the enemy, one million strong, and were on field guidance trips always filled with confidence and optimism, and now you are going away on this snow-covered road leaving behind your crying children.

“Today, when victory is in sight, why have you set off along a road of no return? No, you can't. You can't go leaving behind the people and service personnel you have brought up and loved with such great care.”

In the waves of crowds, the motorcade which had been advancing in two lines after the hearse had to move in one line, and the line was cut into pieces at last. The cars looked like vessels voyaging through a turbulent sea.

In the Songyo area the motorcade could not move any further.

Surrounded by crowds, it was difficult even to open car doors.

As officials grew worried with the surprising scenes that unfolded until the motorcade approached Kim Il Sung Square, Kim Jong Un said: This is neither an accident nor a disorder; this is a natural explosion of our people's sorrow and grief over the death of the General; seeing our service personnel and people who yearn for the General more strongly and are willing to hold him up as the eternal leader of our Party and revolution, I have been deeply moved and gained great strength and courage.

Later that day he said that many people cried so much that they fainted along the 40km-long roads, and ensured that measures were taken to give medical treatment to them at hospitals in Pyongyang.

A south Korean professor, who witnessed the ceremony, contributed an article to *Jaju Minbo*, titled, *Ceremony of Bidding the Last Farewell to Chairman Kim Jong Il: The Heaven and the Earth Shed Tears*.

“From December 27 the cold decreased in severity, and the cold wind stopped blowing. Was even the heaven sharing the great sorrow and pain with the compatriots in the north?”

“The heaven must have been moved by the tale of love between the leader and his people that cannot be heard without shedding tears, a tale that cannot be found in human history.

“I went to Kim Il Sung Square around 22:00 on December 27; many people were there as they had been every day since December 19.

“On the early morning of December 28, when the ceremony of bidding the last farewell was to be held, countless Pyongyang citizens began to stream to the 40km roads in Pyongyang, including Yongung and Thongil streets, along which the hearse was to pass.

“They covered the roads with their padded coats and scarfs without hesitation lest the hearse slip. As the snow fell without let-up, they removed the snow continuously and some were holding their unfolded coats over the roads.

“Because of these people, vehicles carrying staff members of foreign missions in Pyongyang and overseas Koreans to the Kumsusan Memorial Palace had to thread their way through them.

“The hearse and the following cars had to experience difficulties beyond comparison to that.

“Pyongyang on December 28 resounded with wailing, grief and sorrow. People who were wailing checked the advance of the hearse, crying, ‘You can’t go, General.’

“Seeing the ceremony, I thought, ‘Where on earth could one hear such a story of genuine love between a people and their beloved leader as that between the people of the north and Chairman Kim Jong Il? Would there be in human history spanning tens of thousands of years such a great epic, which defies description in written and spoken language, which is beyond imagination, which cannot be recounted without shedding tears?’”

Amid the people’s tearful send-off, the motorcade returned to the Kumsusan Memorial Palace.

The commander of the guard of honour of the KPA three services and the Worker-Peasant Red Guards made a salute to the hearse. It was the last reviewing of them by Kim Jong Il.

The national anthem was played, and the guard of honour of the KPA three services and the Worker-Peasant Red Guards saluted the hearse.

Then Kim Jong Un saluted the bier.

The moment when the bier was being laid, rifles and guns fired a volley of 21 rounds.

On December 29, the next day, a national memorial service was held in Kim Il Sung Square in the capital city, and similar meetings were held in provinces, cities and counties across the country simultaneously.

*

*

*

Supreme Leader Kim Jong Un said:

“We should maintain a pure conscience and a sense of moral obligation in pushing forward all undertakings that are aimed at holding General Kim Jong Il in high esteem for all eternity and realizing the cause of immortalizing him.”

Kim Jong Un devoted all his sincerity to holding up Kim Jong Il as the eternal Sun of Songun and adding lustre to his revolutionary ideas and exploits for ever.

He advanced the slogans **“The great Comrades Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il will always be with us”** and **“Let us arm ourselves thoroughly with the revolutionary ideas of the great Comrades Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il!”**

He ensured that the instructions Kim Jong Il had given in his lifetime were carried out. He also saw to it that the Kumsusan Memorial Palace was renamed the Kumsusan Palace of the Sun, that Kim Jong Il was preserved there in his lifetime appearance, that the Law of the DPRK on the Kumsusan Palace of the Sun was adopted, and that the Kim Il Sung-Kim Jong Il Foundation was set up, thus exalting the brilliance of the Kumsusan Palace of the Sun as the eternal spiritual mainstay of the Korean people, a symbol of their victory and eternal sanctuary of the Sun.

On January 12, 2012, the Political Bureau of the Central Committee of the WPK released a special report on designating February 16, when Kim Jong Il was born, as the Day of the Shining Star and setting up a statue of Kim Jong Il. On February 3 a decree on instituting the Order of Kim Jong Il, Kim Jong Il Prize, Kim Jong Il Youth Honour Prize and Kim Jong Il Children Honour Prize, the highest order and prizes in the country together with the order of Kim Il Sung, Kim Il Sung Prize, Kim Il Sung Youth Honour Prize and Kim Il Sung Children Honour Prize, was issued.

On December 19, 2011 Kim Jong Il was awarded the title of Hero of the DPRK, and on March 29, 2012, the Order of Kim Il Sung and Kim Il Sung Prize. On February 14, 2012, the Central Committee and Central Military Commission of the WPK, and the National Defence Commission and Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK released a joint resolution on awarding the title of Generalissimo of the DPRK to Kim Jong Il. The Fourth Conference of the WPK and the Fifth Session of the Twelfth Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK held in April 2012 decided to hold up Kim Jong Il as the eternal leader of the Korean revolution, as the eternal General Secretary of the WPK and as the eternal Chairman of the National Defence Commission of the DPRK. Accordingly, the Rules of the WPK and the Socialist Constitution of the DPRK were revised and supplemented.

As a reflection of the exploits Kim Jong Il had performed in developing the great Kimilsungism as demanded by the times and the developing revolution, Kim Jong Un formulated Kimilsungism-Kimjongilism as the guiding ideology of the WPK and proclaimed modelling the whole society on this ideology as its highest programme, thus illuminating the road for carrying forward and accomplishing the Juche-oriented revolutionary cause of Songun.

In the speech *Let Us March Forward Dynamically towards Final Victory, Holding Higher the Banner of Songun* he delivered at the military parade held in celebration of the centenary of the birth of President Kim Il Sung on April 15, 2012, and in the work *Let Us Add Eternal Brilliance to Comrade Kim Jong Il's Great Idea of and Achievements in the Songun Revolution* he published on August 25, 2013, he declared at home and abroad his will to carry forward the revolutionary idea of Songun and Songun politics of Kim Jong Il.

As they are led by Kim Jong Un, the Korean people could hold up Kim Jong Il as their eternal leader and the eternal leader of the WPK and they are making efforts to carry forward and accomplish down through the generations his revolutionary cause of Songun.

Kim Jong Il will live for ever in the hearts of the Korean people and the progressive people of the world as the Songun Sun of Juche.

E-mail: flph@star-co.net.kp

<http://www.korean-books.com.kp>

ISBN 978-9946-0-1590-3



9 789946 015903 >